CHARDENAL'S COMPLETE FRENCH COURSE

REVISED EDITION

George G. Lowa

Sept. 24, 1918.

George G. Lower.
2342 W. Tioga St.
Phila. Pa.
U.S.A.

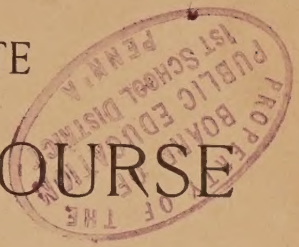
GEO. G. LOWER,
2342 W. TIOGA STREET,
PHILA., PA.

MAR 18 1919

CHARDENAL'S

COMPLETE

FRENCH COURSE



New Edition

REVISED AND REWRITTEN BY

MARO S. BROOKS

HEAD OF THE MODERN LANGUAGE DEPARTMENT IN THE HIGH SCHOOL, BROOKLINE, MASSACHUSETTS

ALLYN AND BACON

Boston and Chicago

COPYRIGHT, 1907, BY
ALLYN AND BACON

PDM

PREFACE

For many years Chardenal's Complete French Course has been the most popular and the most successful of the many text-books for elementary instruction in French. Its success is owing largely to its simplicity and its thoroughness. In revising the book for a new edition the editor has endeavored to retain both these excellent qualities, and to make the book still more acceptable by the following changes.

The order of presentation has been altered so as to secure from the outset greater variety in the exercises. Among many other changes may be mentioned the early introduction of verbs and their presentation by tenses instead of by conjugations; the treatment of verbs in *-oir* as regular verbs of the third conjugation and those in *-re* as regular verbs of the fourth; the early introduction of personal pronouns, together with the rule for the agreement of the past participle used with the verb *avoir*.

The practical value of the vocabulary has been increased by the insertion of many words and phrases of frequent occurrence in ordinary conversation.

The sentences for translation have been made lively and colloquial. To many of the lessons there have been added whole exercises consisting of questions only. These questions are intended as a basis for conversational work in the classroom, and may all be answered from the

material furnished by the preceding lessons. To stimulate conversation still further, a list of expressions for classroom use has been prepared.

While as a rule one topic at a time has been presented, every subject will be found completely summarized in a single lesson.

The editor's thanks are due to Professor Charles H. Grandgent, of Harvard University, and to many others, for valuable criticisms and suggestions.

DECEMBER, 1907.

CONTENTS

INTRODUCTION

PAGE

The Alphabet 1
Orthographic Signs 1
Pronunciation 3
Division of Syllables 12
Words for Practice 12
The Linking of Words (**Liaison**) 14
Capital Letters 15
Marks of Punctuation 16
Expressions for Classroom Use 17

EXERCISES

1. The Article 21
2. **Avoir**: Present Indicative, Affirmative 22
3. **Avoir**: Present Indicative, Interrogative 23
4. **Être**: Present Indicative, Affirmative 24
5. **Être**: Present Indicative, Interrogative 25
6. Plural of Nouns 26
   Avoir: Present Indicative, Negative 26
7. Possessive Adjectives 27
   Avoir: Present Indicative, Negative Interrogative . 28
8. Agreement of Adjectives 29
   English Possessive 29
   Être: Present Indicative, Negative 29
9. Agreement of Adjectives (*continued*) 30
   Être: Present Indicative, Negative Interrogative . 30

PAGE

10. The Past Indefinite Tense 31
11. Numeral Adjectives 33
12. Ordinal Numbers 34
13. Contraction of the Preposition **à** 35
14. Contraction of the Preposition **de** 37
15. Possessive Pronouns 39
16. Comparison of Adjectives 41
17. Relative Pronouns 42
18. Demonstrative Adjectives 43
19. Demonstrative Pronouns 45
20. Demonstrative Pronouns (*continued*) 46
21. Cardinal Numbers 48
22. Cardinal Numbers (*continued*) 50
23. Ordinal Numbers and Fractions 51
24. Names of Days and Months 52
25. Past Participles with **être** 54
26. Personal Pronouns with Prepositions 56
27. The Adjective **tout** 58
28. The First Conjugation 59
29. Personal Pronouns as Direct Objects 62
30. Past Participle with **avoir** 65
31. Plural of Nouns and Adjectives 67
32. The Second Conjugation 69
33. Nouns Used in a General Sense 71
34. Nouns of Quantity 72
35. The Third Conjugation 74
36. Adverbs of Quantity 76
37. The Pronoun **en** 78
38. Partitive Article and Pronoun 80
39. The Fourth Conjugation 82
40. The Partitive after a Negative 85

PAGE

41. The Partitive with Adjectives 87
42. The Imperfect Indicative 89
43. Position of Adjectives 92
44. Comparison of Adjectives 94
45. **C'est** and **ce sont** 96
46. Relative and Interrogative Pronouns 99
47. The Future Tense 102
48. The Future Tense (*continued*) 104
49. Interrogative Adjectives 107
50. Time of Day. Dates 108
Conjugation of **aller** 110
51. The Seasons 112
Conjugation of **faire** 112
52. Ages. Dimensions 114
Conjugation of **savoir** 115
53. The Interrogative Pronoun **lequel** 116
Conjugation of **dire** 116
54. The Relative Pronouns **lequel** and **dont** . . . 119
Conjugation of **voir** 120
55. **Ce qui, ce que**, and Other Relatives 122
56. Feminine of Adjectives 125
57. Feminine of Adjectives (*continued*) 128
58. Position of Adverbs 130
59. Idioms with **avoir** 133
60. Conditional Mode 136
61. Interrogative Adverbs 140
62. Personal Pronouns 142
63. Order of the Pronouns 146
64. Personal Pronouns (*continued*) 148
65. Pronominal Verbs: Reflexive Use 151
66. Pronominal Verbs: Reciprocal Use 155

PAGE

67. Compound Tenses 157
68. The Pronouns **en** and **y** 160
69. Personal Pronouns: Summary 163
70. The Definite Article: Summary of its Use . . . 166
71. The Definite Article (*continued*) 169
The Indefinite Article 171
72. Duration of Time 174
73. The Past Definite Tense 177
74. Peculiarities of the First Conjugation 180
75. Verbs Ending in **-yer**, **-cer**, or **-ger** 184
76. The Subjunctive Mood 188
With Impersonal Verbs 189
77. Formation of the Present Subjunctive 191
78. The Subjunctive after Negative or Interrogative Verbs 194
Conjugation of **croire** 195
79. Subjunctive after Verbs Expressing Emotion . . 197
Conjugation of **vouloir** 197
80. The Subjunctive with **ne** after Certain Verbs . . 200
Conjugation of **craindre** 200
81. Subjunctive in Adjective Clauses 202
Conjugation of **connaître** 202
82. Subjunctive in Adverbial Clauses 204
83. Summary of the Uses of the Subjunctive . . . 206
84. Sequence of Tenses of the Subjunctive 209
The Imperfect Subjunctive 210
85. Further Drill on the Subjunctive 212
Conjugation of **falloir** and **pleuvoir** 212
86. Subjunctive in Independent Clauses 214
87. The Subjunctive with **que** 217
Conjugation of **venir** 217

PAGE

88. The Infinitive 219
Conjugation of **pouvoir** 220
89. The Infinitive with the Preposition **de** 222
Conjugation of **mettre** 223
90. The Infinitive with the Preposition **à** 225
Conjugation of **écrire** 226
91. The Subjunctive and the Infinitive Moods Compared 227
Conjugation of **courir** and **mourir** 229
92. Present Participle 230
Conjugation of **lire** 231
Conjugation of **rire** 232
93. The Past Participle 233
Collective Nouns 234
94. **Aller**, **devoir**, and **faire** 237
95. Formation of Tenses 242
96. Summary of Relative and Interrogative Pronouns 247
97. Position of Adjectives 251
98. Negation 256
99. The Use of **de** 260
100. The Use of **à** 264
101. The Prepositions **en** and **dans** 268

Review Exercises 272
Sentences Selected from College Entrance Examinations 279
Selections for Reading 286

APPENDIX OF FORMS AND RULES

The Definite Article 299
The Noun:
Rule for Gender 299

PAGE

Formation of the Feminine 300
Formation of the Plural 303
The Adjective:
Formation of the Feminine 305
Possessive Adjective 306
Demonstrative Adjective 306
The Pronoun 307
The Verb:
Avoir 308
Être 314
Terminations of Regular Verbs 320
The Four Conjugations 322
The Passive Verb 330
Conjugation of a Reflexive Verb 331
Conjugation of a Reciprocal Verb 332
Irregular Verbs 334
Verbs Followed by the Infinitive without a Preposition 348
Verbs Requiring **de** before an Infinitive 348
Verbs Requiring **à** before an Infinitive 350
Adjectives which Change their Meaning with their Position 351
The Adverb 353

Official Modifications in Syntax 354

VOCABULARY 359

INDEX 421

INTRODUCTION

THE ALPHABET

a	**b**	**c**	**d**	**e**	**f**	**g**	**h**	**i**
a	*bé*	*cé*	*dé*	*é*[1]	*effe*	*gé*	*ache*	*i*
j	**k**	**l**	**m**	**n**	**o**	**p**	**q**	**r**
ji	*ka*	*elle*	*emme*	*enne*	*o*	*pé*	*ku*	*erre*
s	**t**	**u**	**v**	**w**		**x**	**y**	**z**
esse	*té*	*u*	*vé*	*double vé*		*iks*	*i grec*	*zèd*

ORTHOGRAPHIC SIGNS

Accents. — Apostrophe. — Hyphen. — Cedilla.— Diæresis.

Three orthographic marks are called accents,—the acute (´), the grave (`), and the circumflex (^).

The acute accent, **accent aigu,** is used only over the vowel *e* (**é**), which then has the sound of *a* in *late.* As **été, vérité.**

The grave accent, **accent grave,** is used chiefly over the vowel *e* (**è**), which then has nearly the sound of *e* in *met.* As **près, père.** It is used over *a* and *u* merely to distinguish certain words which are otherwise spelled alike, and does not alter the pronunciation. As **à** (*to*) from **a** (*has*) ; **là** (*there*) from **la** (*the* or *her*) ; **où** (*where*) from **ou** (*or*).

[1] In repeating the alphabet, **e** is usually pronounced like **é**; in spelling a word, an unaccented **e** is given the sound of **e** in **le.** See page 3.

The circumflex accent, **accent circonflexe**, is used on any vowel, which is then long. As **âge, tête, île, dôme, bûche.** It frequently indicates that a letter has been dropped, as in **île,** *isle;* **âme** (Latin, anima), *soul.*

It distinguishes **dû** (*owed*) from **du** (*of the*) **sûr,** (*sure*) from **sur** (*upon*), **mûr** (*ripe*) from **mur** (*wall*).

These accents do not imply any stress of voice on the syllable where they occur.

The apostrophe, **l'apostrophe,** (’), indicates that one of the vowels, **a, e,** or **i** has been dropped before a word beginning with a vowel or *h mute.*

a is elided only in the article or pronoun **la**; as **l'âme** for **la âme.**

e is elided in **le, je, me, te, se, de, ce, ne, que** (but when **je, ce, le,** and **la** come directly after the verb, either as subjects or objects, no elision takes place); in **jusque** and **lorsque**; in **puisque** and **quoique** before **il, ils, elle, elles, on, un, une**; in **quelque** before **un, une**; and in **entre** in compound words.

i is elided only in **si** before **il** or **ils.**

No elision occurs before **onze, onzième, oui, huit, huitième.**

The hyphen, **le trait d'union,** (-), marks the connection between two or more words or parts of a word.

The hyphen is used between the verb and the pronouns **je, moi, nous, tu, toi, vous, il, ils, elle, elles, le, la, les, lui, leur, y, en, ce, on,** when they are placed after a verb of which they are subjects or objects. The other cases of its use will be noticed as they occur.

The cedilla, **la cédille,** (ç), is put under **c** when it has the sound of *s* before **a, o,** or **u.** As **français, garçon, reçu.**

The diæresis, **le tréma,** (¨), is placed over the second of two vowels to show that it begins a new syllable. As **naïf** (na-if), **noël** (no-el).

PRONUNCIATION

Most French sounds have no English equivalents. In the following pages on pronunciation, intended only to supplement the work of the teacher by furnishing examples for the use of both teacher and pupil, the word *like* means *somewhat like*, when French and English sounds are compared.

Simple Vowels

a (short) has a sound between the *a* of *bar* and the *a* in *mat*. As **la**, *the;* **quatre**, *four;* **table**, *table;* **a**, *has;* **à**, *to;* **Canada**.

a (long) or **â** has the sound of *a* in *father*. The mouth should be opened wide. As **âme**, *soul;* **bâtir**, *to build;* **sale**, *dirty;* **fable**, *fable:* **pas**, *step;* **classe**, *class;* **espace**, *space;* **nation**, *nation:* **tentation**, temptation.

a is silent in **août**, **Curaçao**, **toast**, **Saône**.

é has the sound of *a* in *late*.[1] As **été**, *summer;* **vérité**, *truth;* **cédé**, *yielded;* **répété**, *repeated;* **dégénéré**, *degenerate*.

è and **ê** vary in sound between the *e* of *met* and the *ei* of *their*. As **près**, *near;* **père**, *father;* **mère**, *mother;* **tête**, *head;* **même**, *same*.

e without an accent has a sound similar to that of *e* in *the* before a consonant: *the door, the boy*, etc. As **de**,

1 When we pronounce an English vowel slowly, we really produce two sounds, a slight finish or vanishing sound being heard. A French vowel has only one sound. Practise the various vowel and nasal sounds, first placing the mouth in position, and then uttering the sound without moving lips, tongue, or jaws. Practise prolonging the sound, always stopping abruptly.

of; **je**, *I;* **venir**, *to come.* At the end of words of more than one syllable it is silent; as **dame**, *lady;* **farine**, *flour.* After two consonants, or at the end of a syllable and preceding a consonant, its sound is very indistinct, merely sufficient to pronounce the consonant before it; as **arbre**, *tree;* **samedi**, *Saturday.* It has the sound of **é** (*a* in *late*) before final **d**, **f**, **r**, **z**, when these consonants are mute; as **pied**, *foot;* **clef**, *key;* **parler**, *to speak;* **nez**, *nose.* It has the sound of **è** before **c**, **f**, **l**, **r**, **s**, **t**, **x**, not mute, before final **t** mute or pronounced, and before a double consonant; as **bec**, *beak;* **chef**, *chief;* **sel**, *salt;* **fer**, *iron;* **ferme**, *farm;* **belle**, *beautiful;* **net**, *clean;* **obje(t)**, *object;* **secre(t)**, *secret;* **regre(t)**, *regret;* **tu es**, *thou art;* **il est**, *he is.*

In **et**, **les**, **des**, **ces**, **mes**, **tes**, **ses**, the **e** is longer than **e** in **est**, *is*, but not quite so long as **e** in **nez**, *nose.*

In **femme**, *woman;* **solennel**, *solemn;* **hennir**, *to neigh;* **nenni**, *no, not by any means*, and in all adverbs ending in **-emment**, the first **e** has the sound of French short **a**.[1]

i and **î** usually have the sound of **i** in *machine.* As **nid**, *nest;* **gris**, *gray;* **île**, *island;* **fini**, *finished;* **midi**, *noon;* **ici**, *here.* In the last three of these examples the first **i** is shorter than the second.

o (open) has a sound between the *o* of *not* and the *u* of *nut.* **Robe**, *dress;* **mode**, *fashion;* **mol**, *soft;* **votre**, *your;* **école**, *school;* **bonne**, *good* (fem.); **parole**, *word.*

o (closed) has the sound of *o* in *note.* As **mot**, *word;* **côté**, *side;* **le vôtre**, *yours;* **rôle**, *roll, rôle;* **rose**, *rose;* **chose**, *thing;* **fosse**, *grave.*

o is silent in **faon**, **Laon**, **paon**, **taon.**

u is pronounced like ü in German, but has no equivalent in English. To form it, round the lips as if about

[1] Really a medium **a**.

to whistle, then without moving the lips, say *ee*. **Tu**, *thou;* **rue**, *street;* **plus**, *more;* **lune**, *moon;* **murmure**, *murmur*. It is usually silent after **q** and also when standing between **g** and **e** or **g** and **i**. As **qui**, *who;* **quatre**, *four;* **guerre**, *war;* **guide**, *guide*.

y following a consonant, or standing alone, has the sound of French **i**. As **type**, *type;* **y**, *there*.

y standing between two vowels performs the office of **iy**, the **i** uniting with the preceding vowel. As **rayon**, *ray*, = **rai-yon**; **appuyer**, *to support*, = **appui-yer**. (See below, Compound Vowels.) **Pays, paysan, paysage** = **pai-is**, etc.

Compound Vowels and Diphthongs.

ai at the end of verbs, in **gai, quai**, and in **je sais, tu sais, il sait**, has the sound of **é**: **j'ai**, *I have;* **je donnerai**, *I shall give;* otherwise it has the sound of **è**: **mais**, *but;* **vrai**, *true;* **je donnerais**, *I should give*.

In **faisant**, *doing*, and its derivatives, it has the sound of **e**.

au, eau have the sound of *o* in *note*. As **autre**, *other;* **chapeau**, *hat;* **beau**, *handsome*. In **Paul, mauvais**, *bad*, and before **r, au** has the sound of open **o**.

ei has the sound of **è**. As **reine**, *queen*.

eu, œu have no equivalent in English. The sound is somewhat like that of *i* in *sir*, pronounced with the lips rounded, and is longer in some words than in others. As **feu**, *fire;* **fleur**, *flower;* **œuf**, *egg*.

In all parts of the verb **avoir**, *to have*, **eu** has the sound of **u**.

ou has the sound of *oo* in *moon*. As **jour**, *day*.

oi has nearly the sound of *wah;* more correctly, it is a combination of French **ou** and medium **a**. As **moi**, *me;* **roi**, *king*. Be careful not to get a sound resembling *a* in the English word *ball*.

oe has the sound of **oi** in **moelle** and **poêle**.

In all other diphthongs the first vowel is pronounced quickly and the voice dwells on the second. As **ciel**, *heaven;* **Dieu**, *God;* **bruit**, *noise;* **oui**, *yes;* **juin**, *June.* Distinguish carefully between **ou-i** and **u-i**, the latter being a combination of French **u** and **i**. As **puis** (pü-i), *then;* **huile**, *oil.* **C'est lui**, *it is he;* but **c'est Louis**, *it is Louis.*

Nasal Vowels

m and **n**, when final or before a consonant, lose their value as consonants and form with the preceding vowel a nasal sound which is a true vowel. These sounds have no exact equivalents in English; and in pronouncing them, care must be taken that no consonant *m*, *n*, or *ng*, be heard.

They are divided into four groups:

I. **an**, **am**, **en**, **em** = *an* in *want.*

As **dans**, *in;* **lampe**, *lamp;* **enfant**, *child;* **empire**, *empire;* **grand**, *large.*

En is silent in the ending of the third person plural of all verbs. As **ils donnent**, *they give.*

II. **in**, **im**, **ain**, **aim**, **ein**, **yn**, **ym** = *an* in *bank,* not too flat.

As **vin**, *wine;* **important**, *important;* **pain**, *bread;* **faim**, *hunger;* **sein**, *breast;* **syntaxe**, *syntax;* **symbole**, *symbol.*

En = **in** in **examen**, *examination*, **européen**, *European*. Some pronounce **en** in **hymen** like **in**, but the best authorities favor **-ène** (hymène).

-ien final or in the verbs **tenir**, *to hold*, and **venir**, *to come*, = **i-in** (French **i** followed by nasal **in**). As **bien**, (bi-in), *well;* **rien**, *nothing;* **tiens**, *hold;* **viens**, *come.*

oin, **oing** = **ou** followed by nasal **in**. As **coin** (cou-in), *corner;* **loin**, *far;* **moins**, *less;* **poing**, *fist.*

III. **on**, **om** = *on* in *don't.*

As **bon**, *good;* **ponton**, *pontoon;* **nom**, *name;* **non**, *no.*

IV. **un**, **um**, **eun** = a slightly rounded unaccented French **e** (see p. 3), nasalized.

As **un**, *one;* **brun**, *brown;* **parfum**, *perfume;* **à jeun**, *fasting.*

Final **-um** in **album**, **rhum**, **géranium**, **médium**, **maximum**, etc., is pronounced like **om** in **homme**, **comme**.

Vowels are not nasalized before double **n** or double **m**, nor before **n** or **m** followed by a vowel or **h** mute. As **bonne** (fem.), *good;* **âme**, *soul;* **une** (fem.), *one;* **pomme**, *apple;* **ennemi**, *enemy;* **inhumain**, *inhuman;* **européenne**, (fem.) *European.*

But the nasal sound is heard in **ennui** and its derivatives, and in all words beginning with **emm-**, as **emmener**, *to lead away;* also in **enivrer**, *to intoxicate.*

Consonants

Final consonants are generally silent, except **c**, **f**, **l**, **r**. Otherwise they usually have the same sound as in English. As **sec**, *dry;* **chef**, *chief;* **sel**, *salt;* **mer**, *sea.*

c before **e**, **i**, **y**, or with the cedilla (**ç**) has the sound of *s*. As **ceci**, *this;* **citer**, *to quote;* **garçon**, *boy;* **leçon**,

lesson ; **reçu**, *received.* Otherwise it has the sound of *k.* As **car**, *for ;* **cou**, *neck ;* **avec**, *with ;* **lac**, *lake ;* **échec**, *check* (in chess).

Verbs ending in **-cer** and **-cevoir** preserve the *s* sound of *c* by the use of the cedilla (ç). **recevoir**, *to receive*: **il reçut**, *he received ;* **commencer**, *to begin*: **commençant**, *beginning ;* **commençons**, *let us begin.*

c final is silent after **n** (as **blanc**, *white ;* **franc**, *frank*), and in **accroc**, **broc**, **clerc**, **cric**, **échecs** (*chess*), **escroc**, **estomac**, **lacs**, **raccroc**, **tabac.** **c** of **donc** is heard in the announcement of a conclusion or before **a** vowel. It has the sound of hard **g** in **second** and its derivatives.

ch has the sound of *ch* in *machine.* As **chat**, *cat ;* **chercher**, *to seek ;* **chirurgien**, *surgeon ;* **architecte**, *architect ;* **chimère**, *chimera.*

ch before a consonant, and usually in words derived from the Greek, has the sound of *k.* As **yacht** (iak), **orchestre**, *orchestra ;* **chœur**, *choir ;* **Christ**, *Christ ;* **chrétien**, *Christian ;* **écho**, *echo ;* **chaos** (ka-o), *chaos.* It is silent in **almanach.**

d final is sounded in proper names (as **David**) and in **sud**, *south.* It is silent in **poids**, *weight.*

f final is silent in **clef**, *key*, **cerf**, *stag*, **chef-d-œuvre**; and also in the plurals **bœufs**, *oxen*, **œufs**, *eggs*, **nerfs**, *nerves*, though heard in the singulars **bœuf**, **œuf**, **nerf.** In **neuf**, *nine*, **f** is silent before a consonant, and has the sound of **v** before a vowel or **h** mute.

g before **e**, **i**, and **y**, has the sound of *s* in *pleasure ;* before **a**, **o**, and **u**, the sound of *g* in *gag.* As **gingembre**, *ginger*, **gage**, *pledge.* **g** is silent in **doigt**, *finger ;* **sang**, *blood ;* **vingt**, *twenty ;* **legs**, *legacy.*

Verbs ending in **-ger** insert **e** after **g** before **a** or **o**, to keep the *zh* quality throughout the verb. The **e** has no value except to modify the sound of **g.** As **manger**, *to eat:* **mangeant**, *eating ;* **protéger**, *to protect:* **protégeons**, *let us protect.*

gn sounds like *gn* in *mignonette.* As **agneau**, *lamb*, **montagne**, *mountain ;* **magnifiquè**, *magnificent.*

h is not heard in pronunciation. It is called *mute*

(**h muette**) when the final vowel of the preceding word may be elided before it, or when the final consonant of the preceding word may be carried over to it in pronunciation; otherwise, it is called *aspirate* (**h aspirée**). As **l'homme**, *the man*, and **les hommes**, *the men;* but **le héros**, *the hero*, and **les héros**, *the heroes.*

If the **-s** of les in **les héros** were carried over it would sound like **les zéros**, *the zeros.*

Whether the **h** is mute or aspirate can be learned only by observation and practice. The following are among the most usual words in which the **h** is aspirate: **la hache**, *the axe;* **la haie**, *the hedge;* **la haine**, *hate;* **une halle**, *a market-place;* **les hardes**, *the clothes;* **les haricots**, *the beans;* **le hasard**, *the chance;* **la hâte**, *haste;* **le haut**, *the summit;* **le héros**, *the hero* (but **l'héroïne**, **l'héroïsme**); **la honte**, *the shame;* **le Hâvre**, *Havre;* **la Haye**, *the Hague:* **la Hollande**, *Holland;* **le huit**, *the eight* (but mute in **dix-huit** and **vingt-huit**).

j has the sound of *s* in *pleasure.* As **jour**, *day;* **joli**, *pretty;* **jambe**, *leg;* **joindre**, *to join.*

ill, not initial, and sometimes **il** when final, form the so-called liquid **l** (**l mouillée**), with nearly the sound of *y* in *yes.* As **soleil**, *sun;* **fille**, *daughter.*

A vowel standing before the liquid **l** does not form a diphthong with the **i**, but retains its own sound; **ue** and **oe** have then the sound of **eu**. As **paille**, *straw;* **feuille**, *leaf;* **orgueil**, *pride;* **œil**, *eye.*

There is no liquid sound in **il**, **avril**, **exil**, **vil**, **fil**, **mil**, **civil**, **profil**, **péril**, **nil**, **Achille**, **Lille**, **pupille**, **distiller**, **vaciller**, **osciller**, **mille**, **ville**, **village**, **tranquille**. Of the exceptions containing **ill**, the last four are of most frequent occurrence.

l is silent in **baril**, **chenil**, **coutil**, **fils** (**s** is sounded), **fusil**, **gentil**, **gril**, **outil**, **persil**, **pouls**, **soûl**, **sourcil**.

l is heard in **calme**, *calm.*

m and **n**, if the preceding vowel is not nasal, have the same sound as in English. **m** is silent in **damner** and its compounds and in **automne.**

p is silent in **baptême, compte, corps, dompter, exempt, temps, sculpter, sept,** and their compounds. It is sounded in **septembre,** *September*, and in **psaume,** psalm. **ph** has the sound of **f.**

qu has the sound of **k.** As **qui,** *who ;* **qualité,** *quality.*

Final **q** of **cinq,** *five,* is sounded, except before a consonant or aspirate **h.** **q** is heard in **coq,** *cock,* but silent in **coq d'Inde,** *turkey-gobbler.*

In **aquarelle, équateur, équation, loquace, quadrupède, quartz,** and a few other words **qu** has the same sound as in English.

r is articulated much more distinctly than in English. As **rue,** *street ;* **rivière,** *river.*

r final is sounded when preceded by **a, i, o, u** (as **car,** *for ;* **finir,** *to finish ;* **dur,** *hard*), in monosyllables ending in **-er** (as **fer,** *iron*), and in **amer,** *bitter ;* **cuiller,**[1] *spoon ;* **enfer,** *hell ;* **fier,** *proud ;* **hier,** *yesterday ;* **l'hiver,** *winter.*

In other words final **-er** is sounded like **é.** As **parler,** *to speak ;* **dernier,** *last ;* **premier,**[2] *first ;* **léger,** *light.*

Both **r**'s are distinctly sounded in the future and conditional tenses of **acquérir, courir,** and **mourir,** to distinguish them from the other forms with a single **r.** As **nous courons,** *we run ;* **nous courrons** *we shall run.* **It** is always silent in **monsieur,** pronounced *m'sieu.*

s between two vowels has the sound of *s* in *please.* As **voisin,** *neighbor ;* **base,** *base ;* **écraser,** *to crush.*

Except in **parasol, désuétude,** and in compound words, where **s** retains the hissing sound of its simple form. As **préséance,** *precedence,* **vraisemblable,** *likely.*

Otherwise it has the sound of *s* in *sister.* As **sensation,** *sensation ;* **prisme,** *prism ;* **héroïsme,** *heroism.*

Except in **transaction, transalpin, transiger, transit, transitif, transition, balsamine,** and **Alsace,** in which it has the sound of **z.**

s final is silent except in **albinos, aloès, angelus, as, atlas, bis, blocus, cens, chorus, dervis, en sus, fils, florès, Gil Blas, gratis, hélas,**

[1] Look out for French **u** in this word.

[2] Notice that the first **e** in this word is like *e* in English *th*(*e*) *man.*

Iris, jadis, laps, lis (though generally silent in **fleur-de-lis**), **maïs, mars, mœurs, obus, ours, rébus, Rheims, rhinocéros, Saint-Gaudens** (Fr. nasal **in s**), **sinus, sens** (but **sen(s) commun**), **tous** (when used without a noun), **us, vis**, and in Greek and Latin names, as **Vénus**. In the singular **os**, *bone*, the **s** is generally heard, but not in the plural: **un os** (short o); **des os**, pronounced like **des eaux**.

In **Jesus**, the final **s** is sometimes heard, and in **le Christ** both **s** and **t** are pronounced; but in **Jésus-Christ** the **s** of **Jésus** and **st** of **Christ** are silent.

t usually sounds as in *tutor*. It has the hissing sound of *s* in the combinations **-tion, -tial, -tiel, -tieux**, and in a few words ending in **-tie**, which in English end in *-cy*. As **situation**, *situation;* **partialité**, *partiality;* **essentiel**, *essential;* **factieux**, *factious;* **démocratie**, *democracy*.

Also in **balbutier, initier, patience, ineptie, minutie, satiété** (first **t**), and in proper names ending in **-tien**; as **un Vénitien**, *a Venetian*.

In the imperfect indicative and present subjunctive of verbs, or when preceded by **s**, **t** retains its hard sound. As **nous partions, question**. Also in **moitié**, *half*, **bonnetier, Poitiers, galimatias, chrétien, Claretie**.

th always has the sound of **t**. As **théâtre**, *theatre;* **thé**, *tea*.

t final is silent, except in **brut, but, chut, dot, déficit, est**, *east*, **fat, granit, lest, mat, net, ouest**, and most words ending in **-ct**. In **sept** and **huit**, the **t** is mute only before a noun or adjective beginning with a consonant; as **dans huit jours**. In **vingt**, **t** is always mute except in the numbers 21 to 29 inclusive.

w occurs only in a few words of foreign origin, such as **tramway** (pron. as in English), **whist** (pron. ouist), **wagon** (pron. vagon).

x usually has the sound of **ks**. As **luxe**, *luxury;* **auxiliaire**, *auxiliary*. **ex-** initial and followed by a vowel or **h** mute has the sound of *gz*. As **exil**, *exile;* **examen**, (**en** = nasal **in**), *examination;* **exemple**, *example*. In **exception**, **x** = *ks*.

It has the sound of *ss* in **Bruxelles, soixante, six,** and **dix**; but the **x** of **six** or **dix** is silent before a consonant, and sounds like *z* before a vowel or **h** mute. It has the sound of *z* in **deuxième, sixième, dixième, dix-huit, dix-neuf.**

Division of Syllables

In the body of a word each syllable must if possible begin with a consonant; as **mo-ra-li-té, a-ma-bi-li-té.**

If there are two consonants the division usually takes place between the two; as **hom-me, vil-le, par-tir, en-ten-du.** But if the second is **l** or **r** (and the first is neither **l** nor **r**), or if the two are **gn**, the division takes place before the two; as **é-glise, ta-bleau, no-tre, é-crire, vi-gne.**

As **h** is never heard in pronunciation, the consonant which precedes it is always carried, in speaking, to the following vowel; as **i-nhu-main, i-nha-bi-té.**

The compound consonant **x** (= **ks** or **gz**) always goes with the preceding vowel; as **ex-il.**

Words for Practice

quatre	très	robe
papa	tête	mode
Canada	je	école
table	de	or
blâmer	venir	fort
ananas	dame	hôte
pas	arbre	ôter
classe	samedi	rue
passer	nez	plus
été	pied	gai
vérité	objet	pays
répété	secret	puis
père	ici	appuyer
près	midi	cou

bout	enfant	avec
eau	jambe	blanc
fléau	vin	gage
haïr	pain	second
je hais	main	garçon
haïssant	bien	général
paille	rien	mangea
tailleur	le sien	rossignol
œil	moyen	science
leur	juin	patience
demeure	on	le tien
eu, j'eus, j'eusse (Parts of avoir)	bonbon	question
	grognon	nation
	brun	soleil
roi	lundi	meilleur
soif	humble	
grand	album	

Exceptions, similarities, etc.

à	votre	sais
a	le vôtre	ses
as	non	ces
la	nom	mes
là	un	mais
ou	une	maïs
août	bon	au
soi	bonne	eau
soie	rien	bout
sois	reine	but
et	plein	butte
est (is)	pleine	des
est (east)	faim	dès
mer	femme	pré
mère	examen	prés

près	villageois	tabac
lui	gentil	estomac
Louis	gentille	net
cou	le haut	nette
coup	l'eau	clef
moi	la hauteur	clé
mois	l'auteur	chef
moins	les hauteurs	chef-d'œuvre
moine	les auteurs	œuf
sel	la haine	œufs
selle	laine	bœuf
celle	le héros	bœufs
on	l'héroïne	cœur
an	les héros	chœur
âne	les zéros	sœur
mil	le huit	je donnai
mille	lui	je donnais
fils	tache	tous (adj.)
fil	tâche	tous (pron.)
fille	ennemi	Jésus
ville	ennui	Christ
village	lac	Jésus-Christ

The Linking of Words (La Liaison).

The last consonant of a word, standing before a word beginning with a vowel or **h** mute and closely connected with it in sense, is often carried over to it in pronunciation.

In such cases **s** and **x** have the sound of **z**, **d** that of **t**, **c** and **g** that of **k**, and **f** that of **v**. As **mes‿amis**, **ils‿ont**, **aux‿armes**, **grand‿homme**, **avec‿elle**, **rang‿élevé**. In carrying over the **n** of a nasal, the sound of the nasal must be retained, and the **n** sounds as if it were the first

letter of the following word: **mon enfant = mon nenfant; un homme = un nhomme.**

This linking of words, called **liaison**, is necessary in public speaking or reading; in conversation it generally takes place only when the words thus joined cannot do without each other. It cannot occur before **oui**, **onze**, or **onzième**. The **t** of **et** is never linked to the following word.

Final **m**, **n**, **p**, or **r** of a noun is not usually carried over. Beyond certain general principles, it is impossible to lay down rules. In reading, the number of **liaisons** will vary, according to the style of the composition, the shades of thought, pauses, euphony, and the taste of the reader.

Examples of Liaison

Ce petit‿enfant est très‿aimable, *This little child is very lovable.*

Leurs‿amis ne sont pas‿encore arrivés, *Their friends have not arrived yet.*

Quels jours‿heureux! *What happy days!*

Que dit-‿on? *What do they say?*

Quand‿avez-vous‿été chez‿eux? *When were you at their house?*

Je les‿ai vus de temps‿en temps, *I saw them from time to time.*

Ça m'est‿égal, *That makes no difference to me.*

Elle répond‿à ses questions‿amusantes, *She answers his amusing questions.*

Ils‿aiment‿à lire et à écrire, *They like to read and write.*

Il a beaucoup‿étudié, *He has studied a great deal.*

Elle est bien‿heureuse, tout‿heureuse, *She is very happy, quite happy.*

Capital Letters

Except at the beginning of a sentence, capital letters, **lettres majuscules**, are not used for the names of the

months and of the days of the week: as **avril, lundi**; for any word used as an adjective: as **un officier français**; for any word used to signify rank or position: as **empereur, roi, duc, général, cardinal, docteur, abbé, maire,** etc.

Punctuation Marks

The following are the marks of punctuation most frequently used:

le point	.	**le point d'exclamation**	!
la virgule	,	**le tiret**	—
le point (et) virgule	;	**la parenthèse**	( )
les deux points	:	**les guillemets**	" "
le point d'interrogation	?	**les points suspensifs**	.....

EXPRESSIONS FOR CLASS-ROOM USE

1 Monsieur (M.), *Sir, Mr.*
2 Madame (Mme.), *Madam, Mrs.*
3 Mademoiselle (Mlle.), *Miss.*
4 Bonjour, *Good morning, good day.*
5 Bon soir, *Good evening, good night.*
6 Au revoir, } *Good-bye (until I have the*
7 Au plaisir, } *pleasure of seeing you again).*
8 A[1] demain, *Good-bye until to-morrow.*
9 A ce soir, *Good-bye until this evening.*
10 Que signifie —— ? } *What does —— mean?*
11 Que veut dire —— ? }
12 Comment dit-on —— ? *How does one (do you) say —— ?*
13 Comment écrit-on —— ? *How does one (do you) write —— ?*
14 Ecrivez, *Write.*[2]
15 En anglais, *In English.*
16 En français, *In French.*
17 Comment épelle-t-on —— ? *How does one (do you) spell —— ?*
18 Epelez, *Spell.*
19 Comment prononce-t-on —— ? *How does one (do you) pronounce —— ?*
20 Prononcez après moi, *Pronounce after me.*
21 Lisez, *Read.*
22 Lisez le français, *Read the French.*
23 S'il vous plaît, *Please; if you please.*
24 Plaît-il ? *What (did you say) ?*

1 With capital letters, accents are regularly omitted.

2 Forms ending in **-ez** without the subject **vous**, *you*, are all imperatives. To make any of them negative, put **ne** before and **pas** directly after.

25 Comment? *How? What?*
26 Pardon, *I beg (your) pardon.*
27 Merci, *Thank you.*
28 Il n'y a pas de quoi, } *You are welcome; don't men-*
29 Ce n'est pas la peine, } *tion it.* (In response to thanks.)
30 Répétez, *Repeat.*
31 Répétez ensemble, *Repeat together.*
32 Traduisez, *Translate.*
33 Conjuguez, *Conjugate.*
34 Répondez, *Answer.*
35 Fermez les livres, *Close the (your) books*
36 Ouvrez les livres, *Open the books.*
37 Commencez, *Begin.*
38 Continuez, *Continue.*
39 Ecoutez, *Listen.*
40 Attendez, *Wait.*
41 Faites attention! *Pay* (lit., *make*) *attention!*
42 Comprenez-vous, *Do you understand?*
43 Oui, monsieur, je comprends, *Yes, sir, I understand.*
44 Non, madame, je ne comprends pas, *No, madam, I do not understand.*
45 Je ne sais pas, *I do not know.*
46 N'est-ce pas? *Is it not?* [1]
47 Vous comprenez, n'est-ce pas? *You understand, do you not?*
48 Levez la main, *Raise your hand.*
49 Ceci, *this (thing);* cela, *that (thing).*
50 Qu'est-ce?
51 Qu'est-ce que c'est? } *What is that?*
52 Qu'est-ce que c'est que cela?

[1] The explanation of the use of **n'est-ce pas?** instead of the repetition of a statement in the form of a negative question, is left to the teacher: *You do, do you not? He has, has he not? They will, will they not?* etc., in English, but always **n'est-ce pas** in French.

53 C'est un (une) ——, *It is a* (or *an*) ——.
54 Le mot, *The word.*
55 La phrase, *The sentence.*
56 Quelle leçon ? *What lesson?*
57 Quelle page ? *What page?*
58 Au haut
59 Au milieu } de la page, { *At the top* / *In the middle* } *of the page.*
60 Au bas
61 Ajoutez, *Add.*
62 Quelle faute ? *What mistake?*
63 Corrigez, *Correct.*
64 Avez-vous quelque chose à ajouter ? *Have you anything to add?*
65 Y a-t-il encore quelque chose à corriger ? *Is there anything else to correct?*
66 Est-il permis de dire —— ? *May one say* —— ?
67 Il faut ——, *We need* ——.
68 Faut-il —— ? *Do you need* —— ?
69 Il faut ajouter ——, *We must add* ——.
70 Il doit être, *It should be.*
71 Il doit y avoir, *There should be.*
72 Au lieu de, *Instead of.*
73 Voulez-vous ? *Do you wish?* (followed by an infinitive, *Will you* —— ?)
74 Allez au tableau (noir), *Go to the blackboard.*
75 Ecrivez sur le tableau, *Write on the board.*
76 Levez-vous, *Rise, stand up.*
77 Asseyez-vous, *Be seated.*
78 Ramassez, *Pick up, gather up, collect.*
79 C'est assez, *That is enough.*
80 Cela suffit, *That will do.*

EXERCISES

1

There are only two genders in French, the masculine and the feminine.[1]

Before a noun masculine use **un** for *a* or *an*, use **le** for *the*.

Before a noun feminine use **une** for *a* or *an*, use **la** for *the*.

Before a vowel or **h** mute use **l'** instead of **le** or **la**.

le père, *the father.*	**un homme**, *a man.*
la mère, *the mother.*	**une femme**, *a woman, a wife.*
un frère, *a brother.*	**un ami** } *a friend.*
une sœur, *a sister.*	**une amie** }
le fils, *the son.*	**l'enfant** (m. or f.), *the child.*
la fille, *the daughter.*	**et**, *and.*

1. Un père, une mère. 2. Une mère et un fils. 3. Un fils et une fille. 4. Le frère, la sœur. 5. L'homme et la femme. 6. Un frère et un ami. 7. La sœur et l'amie. 8. Une femme et un enfant. 9. Le père, la mère et l'enfant. 10. L'homme, le fils et la fille.

1. A mother, a daughter. 2. A father and a son. 3. A son and a mother. 4. The father and the mother. 5. The brother, the friend (m.), the child, the sister. 6. The man, the woman, the friend (f.), the son. 7. The brother and a friend. 8. The daughter and a friend (f.). 9. A man and a child. 10. The woman and the child.

[1] When learning a French noun, pupils should acquire with it an article denoting the gender.

2

The **e** of **je** (*I*) is omitted when the following verb begins with a vowel, and an apostrophe takes its place.

je, *I.* **ai**, *have.* **j'ai**, *I have.*

Avoir, *to have.*

PRESENT INDICATIVE, AFFIRMATIVE.

j'ai, *I have.*	**nous avons**, *we have.*
tu as, *thou hast.*	**vous avez**, *you have.*[1]
il a, *he has.*	**ils ont**, *they* (m.) *have.*
elle a, *she has.*	**elles ont**, *they* (f.) *have.*

1. J'ai un frère. 2. L'homme a une femme. 3. Tu as un ami. 4. L'enfant a une sœur. 5. Nous avons un père et une mère. 6. Elle a une amie. 7. Ils ont un enfant. 8. Vous avez une mère, une sœur et un frère. 9. J'ai un ami. 10. Il a un fils et une fille.

1. I have a sister. 2. We have a friend. 3. They have a mother. 4. The child has a brother and a sister. 5. The woman has a friend (f.). 6. You have a father and a brother. 7. The man has a son and a daughter. 8. They (f.) have a father and a mother. 9. She has a sister. 10. He has a friend, and the friend has a brother.

3

(1) In a question, if the subject is a personal pronoun, it stands after the verb and is connected with it by a hyphen: **ai-je**, *have I?* **ont-ils**, *have they?*

(2) When the third person singular ends in a vowel, it is followed for the sake of euphony by **-t-** before **il** or **elle**: **a-t-il**, *has he?*

[1] **Vous**, like the English *you*, may be either singular or plural. **Tu** is the familiar form, and is used among members of the same family, intimate friends, among and to children, to animals, etc. Use **vous** for *you* in these exercises, unless otherwise indicated.

Avoir. — PRESENT INDICATIVE, INTERROGATIVE.

ai-je, *have I?*	**avons-nous,** *have we?*
as-tu, *hast thou?*	**avez-vous,** *have you?*
a-t-il, *has he?*	**ont-ils,** *have they* (m.)?
a-t-elle, *has she?*	**ont-elles,** *have they* (f.)?

le livre, *the book.*	**vu,** *seen* (past part.).
une grammaire, *a grammar.*	**perdu,** *lost* (past part.).
un crayon, *a pencil.*	**qui?** *who?*
une plume, *a pen.*	**oui,** *yes.*
le papier, *the paper.*	**ou,** *or.*
l'encre (f.), *the ink.*	**aussi,** *also, too.*
l'eau (f.), *the water.*	**là,**[1] *there.*

qu'avez-vous là, *what have you there?*
qu'a-t-il perdu, *what has he lost?*

1. Avez-vous un frère ou une sœur? 2. J'ai un frère et une sœur. 3. A-t-il perdu le crayon? 4. Il a perdu le crayon et le papier. 5. Ai-je une grammaire? 6. Oui, monsieur, vous avez une grammaire. 7. A-t-elle vu le fils? 8. Oui, mademoiselle, elle a vu le fils et elle a aussi vu la fille. 9. Ont-ils un enfant? 10. Ils ont un fils. 11. Qu'avez-vous là? 12. J'ai l'eau et l'encre. 13. Qui a un crayon? 14. Qu'a-t-il vu? 15. Il a vu une grammaire et une plume.

1. She has a sister and a brother. 2. We have seen the paper and the pen. 3. They have the water and the ink. 4. She has a book. 5. She has also a pen. 6. Have you a grammar?[2] 7. Have you lost a pencil? 8. What have you there? 9. Who has lost a pen? 10. Who has the paper? 11. What have you lost? 12. What has she seen? 13. Have I a pen or a pencil? 14. Who has seen the ink?

[1] Pronounced like **la,** *the.* See Introduction, page 1.

[2] For use of the numerous questions in the English exercises of this book, see Editor's Preface.

4

An adjective always agrees in gender with the noun which it qualifies. To form the feminine of most adjectives, add **e** to the masculine.

Adjectives ending in **e** mute in the masculine do not change in the feminine.

Être, *to be.*

PRESENT INDICATIVE, AFFIRMATIVE.

je suis, *I am.*	**nous sommes**, *we are.*
tu es, *thou art.*	**vous êtes**, *you are.*
il est, *he is.*	**ils sont**, *they* (m.) *are.*
elle est, *she is.*	**elles sont**, *they* (f.) *are.*

petit (m.), **petite** (f.), *little, small, short.*
grand (m.), **grande** (f.), *large, tall, great.*
bon (m.), **bonne** (f.), *good, kind.*
mauvais (m.), **mauvaise** (f.), *bad.*

riche, *rich.*	**facile**, *easy.*	**jeune**, *young.*
pauvre, *poor.*	**difficile**, *difficult.*	**très**, *very.*
la lettre, *the letter.*	**écrit**, *written.*	

1. Le crayon est bon, la plume est mauvaise. 2. Le père est grand, la fille est petite. 3. La grammaire est très difficile. 4. Il a une plume, la plume est bonne. 5. Le fils a perdu un petit livre. 6. Je suis grand, tu es petit. 7. Qui est jeune ? 8. Le fils est jeune, et la fille est jeune aussi. 9. Il est bon, elle est bonne. 10. Le frère est riche, la sœur est très pauvre. 11. J'ai vu un jeune homme, il est très riche. 12. Le jeune homme a écrit une très bonne lettre.

1. The good pencil, the bad pen. 2. The ink is very bad, the water is good. 3. The man has a good son. 4. Has he also a good daughter ? 5. Has she lost a small pencil ? 6. Who has lost a large book ? 7. The father is very kind, the mother is also very kind. 8. I

have lost a small grammar. 9. You are very kind. 10. She has written a letter, the letter is very good. 11. The brother is young, and the sister is young too. 12. The mother is tall, the daughter is short. 13. The grammar is difficult. 14. They have a friend, she is very rich. 15. The pen is good, the paper is poor (bad).[1]

5

(1) When the nominative *it* stands for a masculine noun (such as **crayon**), it is expressed by **il**; when it stands for a feminine noun (such as **plume**), by **elle.**

J'ai un crayon, il est bon, *I have a pencil, it is a good one.*
Il a une grammaire, elle est difficile, *he has a grammar, it is difficult.*

(2) In a question, if the subject of the verb is a noun, the noun usually stands before the verb and is repeated after the verb in the form of a pronoun.

L'homme est-il riche, *is the man rich?*

Être. — PRESENT INDICATIVE, INTERROGATIVE.

suis-je, *am I?*	**sommes-nous ?**
es-tu ?	**êtes-vous ?**
est-il ?	**sont-ils ?**
est-elle ?	**sont-elles ?**

1. J'ai vu le livre, il est petit. 2. L'enfant a-t-il l'encre ? 3. L'homme a-t-il une femme ? 4. La femme est-elle riche ? 5. Nous avons vu l'encre, elle est mauvaise. 6. Vous avez un crayon; est-il bon ou mauvais ? 7. La grammaire est-elle facile ou difficile ? 8. L'enfant est-il jeune ? 9. L'ami est-il riche ? 10. L'amie est-elle grande ? 11. L'homme est-il grand ou petit ?

1. The woman has a son. 2. The son has a grammar. 3. The little child has a good father. 4. He has also a

[1] English words in parentheses ( ) are to be expressed in French; those in brackets [ ] are to be omitted.

good mother. 5. The child has a sister. 6. Is the man young? 7. Is he poor or rich? 8. Is the pencil [a] good [one]? 9. Is the ink good or bad? 10. Is the grammar small? 11. Is it easy or difficult? 12. Has the man a friend? 13. Is the water good? 14. What have you written? 15. Is the letter [a] good [one]? 16. Are[1] you tall or short?

6

(1) Most nouns form their plural, as in English, by adding **s** to the singular.

(2) The plural of all the forms of the definite article (**le**, **la**, **l'**) is **les**.

le frère, *the brother.*	**les frères**, *the brothers.*
la sœur, *the sister.*	**les sœurs**, *the sisters.*
l'ami, *the friend.*	**les amis**, *the friends.*

(3) The negation *not* is ordinarily expressed by **ne** before the conjugated part of the verb and **pas** after it.

Je n'ai pas vu, *I have not seen.*

la maison, *the house.*	**fermé**, *closed.*	Past Participles.
la chambre, *the room.*	**trouvé**, *found.*	
la porte, *the door.*	**acheté**, *bought.*	
une fenêtre, *a window.*	**pris**, *taken.*	
une table, *a table.*	**ouvert**, *opened.*	
une chaise, *a chair.*	**mais**, *but.*	
le tiroir, *the drawer.*	**non**, *no.*	

Avoir. — PRESENT INDICATIVE, NEGATIVE.

je n'ai pas, *I have not.*	**nous n'avons pas.**
tu n'as pas.	**vous n'avez pas.**
il n'a pas.	**ils n'ont pas.**
elle n'a pas.	**elles n'ont pas.**

[1] **Vous** always takes a plural verb, but the adjective qualifying it is plural only when more than one person is addressed.

1. Avez-vous les grammaires ? 2. Je n'ai pas les grammaires, mais j'ai les crayons et le papier. 3. Nous n'avons pas vu les maisons. 4. Il n'a pas fermé les fenêtres, mais il a fermé les portes. 5. Ai-je pris la plume ? 6. Vous n'avez pas pris la plume, mais vous avez pris le crayon. 7. Avez-vous trouvé les enfants ? 8. Qui a ouvert la fenêtre ? 9. Qui a acheté les maisons ? 10. Qui a écrit une lettre ? 11. Qu'avez-vous acheté ? 12. Qu'avez-vous pris ? 13. Elle a fermé le tiroir.

1. They have bought the houses. 2. He has closed the doors. 3. He has also closed the windows. 4. We have not seen the pencils. 5. The children have taken the ink; they have not taken the water. 6. She has found the children. 7. Has the man closed or opened the windows ? 8. Have you taken the pens or the pencils ? 9. Have they bought the tables and the chairs ? 10. Have you bought the small or the large pens ? 11. Have I the grammar ? 12. Have they closed the books ? 13. Has the woman seen the rooms ? 14. Has she taken the paper or the pen ? 15. What have you closed ? 16. Who has opened the drawer ?

7

Possessive Adjectives.

Singular.	Plural.
mon (m.), **ma** (f.),	**mes**, *my*.
ton (m.), **ta** (f.),	**tes**, *thy, your*.
son (m.), **sa** (f.),	**ses**, *his, her, its*.
notre (m.), **notre** (f.),	**nos**, *our*.
votre (m.), **votre** (f.),	**vos**, *your*.
leur (m.), **leur** (f.),	**leurs**, *their*.

In French, the possessive adjective agrees with the thing possessed, and not, as in English, with the possessor.

son père, *his father*, or *her father*. **leur maison**, *their house*.
sa mère, *his mother*, or *her mother*. **leurs maisons**, *their houses*.

Before a feminine word beginning with a vowel or *h* mute, for the sake of euphony use **mon, ton, son**, instead of **ma, ta, sa**.

mon ami, *my friend* (m.).
mon amie, *my friend* (f.).
son amie, *his* or *her friend* (f.).

Avoir. — PRESENT INDICATIVE, NEGATIVE INTERROGATIVE.

n'ai-je pas, *have I not?*	**n'avons-nous pas ?**
n'as-tu pas ?	**n'avez-vous pas ?**
n'a-t-il pas ?	**n'ont-ils pas ?**
n'a-t-elle pas ?	**n'ont-elles pas ?**

1. N'ai-je pas vu sa plume ? 2. Vous avez vu sa plume et son crayon. 3. A-t-il pris mes crayons ? 4. Qu'avez-vous trouvé ? 5. J'ai trouvé son encre, mais je n'ai pas trouvé sa plume. 6. N'a-t-il pas vu son amie ? 7. Il a vu son amie et ses amis. 8. Qui a pris ma petite grammaire ? 9. Ses filles sont grandes, mais ses fils sont très petits. 10. N'ont-ils pas mon livre ? 11. N'avez-vous pas vu mes amis ? 12. Qui a vu leurs fils et leurs filles ? 13. Ils ont trouvé nos crayons.

1. The men have not seen their sons. 2. Your friends have seen my sister. 3. Her friend (f.) has bought the little tables. 4. The woman has n't found her children. 5. Their mother has found their little sister. 6. Has he not lost his books ? 7. Have you not opened my drawer ? 8. Has she seen her father or her sister ? 9. Has n't the man closed our doors and our windows ? 10. Have I not seen your friend ? 11. My child, have you (*2nd sing.*) lost my pencil ? 12. Have they lost their pens or their pencils ? 13. Have we our grammars ? 14. Have n't you seen their house ? 15. Who has opened his windows ?

8

(1) An adjective always agrees in number, as well as in gender, with the noun which it qualifies.

(2) Most adjectives form their plural like nouns, by adding **s** to the singular.

Singular.	Plural.
bon (m.).	**bons** (m.).
bonne (f.).	**bonnes** (f.).

(3) The sign *'s* of the English possessive is not used in French. Turn such expressions as *my brother's book, their father's house*, etc., into *the book of my brother, the house of their father*, etc.

le livre de mon frère, *my brother's book.*
la maison de leur père, *their father's house.*

utile, *useful.*
joli, *pretty.*
ici, *here.*
pour, *for.*

aimable, { *amiable, lovable, kind, pleasant, agreeable.*
méchant, { *wicked;* (in speaking of a child) *naughty.*

un, une, *one.* — **trois**, *three.*
deux, *two.* — **quatre**, *four.*
de, *of, from.*

Être. — Present Indicative, Negative.

je ne suis pas, *I am not.*	**nous ne sommes pas.**
tu n'es pas.	**vous n'êtes pas.**
il n'est pas.	**ils ne sont pas.**
elle n'est pas.	**elles ne sont pas.**

1. Les trois enfants de mon frère sont très-aimables. 2. Les amis de votre fils sont-ils riches? 3. Ses amis ne sont pas riches, ils sont pauvres. 4. Les deux maisons de sa sœur ne sont pas très grandes, mais elles sont très jolies. 5. Les enfants ont-ils trouvé les livres de leur père? 6. Les plumes de ma sœur ne sont pas bonnes; elles sont mauvaises. 7. N'avez-vous pas vu

les quatre enfants de votre ami ? 8. Sont-ils aimables ? 9. Sont-ils grands ? 10. Sont-ils jolis ? 11. Sont-ils méchants ? 12. Sa fille n'est pas jolie, mais elle est bonne. 13. Ses deux livres ne sont-ils pas très-utiles ?

1. You have taken my brother's two pencils. 2. Your father has bought the houses for your three brothers. 3. The houses are small, but they are very pretty. 4. His friend's sisters are young. 5. They are very kind. 6. Is your friend here ? 7. Who is here ? 8. Who is not here ? 9. Are your pens good [ones] ? 10. Are the children tall or short ? 11. Are they naughty? 12. Has he taken the books ? 13. Have n't the children closed their grammars ? 14. Has your brother lost his pen and his pencil ? 15. Has he lost his books too ? 16. What has he lost ? 17. Have you written three or four letters ?

94

(1) An adjective qualifying two or more nouns masculine must be masculine plural.

(2) An adjective qualifying two or more nouns feminine must be feminine plural.

(3) An adjective qualifying two or more nouns of different genders must be masculine plural.

Être. — Present Indicative, Negative Interrogative.

ne suis-je pas, *am I not ?*	**ne sommes-nous pas ?**
n'es-tu pas ?	**n'êtes-vous pas ?**
n'est-il pas ?	**ne sont-ils pas ?**
n'est-elle pas ?	**ne sont-elles pas ?**

malade, *sick, ill.*	**souvent**, *often.*
gai, *cheerful, merry.*	**toujours**, *always.*
triste, *sad.*	**aujourd'hui**, *to-day.*
haut, *high.*	**sur**, *on, upon.*

1. Le père et le fils sont grands. 2. La maison est haute. 3. La mère et la fille sont petites. 4. Elles sont toujours bonnes et aimables. 5. Nous avons vu les tables et les chaises. 6. Sont-elles hautes? 7. Le père et la mère sont-ils bons? 8. Les livres sont-ils sur la table aujourd'hui? 9. Ne sont-ils pas souvent sur la chaise? 10. Vos amis ne sont-ils pas toujours gais? 11. Ils sont tristes aujourd'hui; ils sont malades. 12. N'est-il pas ton frère? 13. Les hommes ne sont-ils pas riches? 14. Les quatre petites filles sont-elles souvent méchantes?

1. His father and his brother are very tall, and he is tall too. 2. His wife and his sister are always very agreeable. 3. His friends are not sad; they are very cheerful. 4. Their trees and their houses are high. 5. Your brother's friend is ill to-day. 6. Are n't you here often (*often here*)? 7. Are you always here? 8. Are you sad to-day? 9. Am I not always cheerful? 10. Who took (*has taken*) my books? 11. Are n't they on your table? 12. Are my pens and my pencils good or bad? 13. Is n't your grammar easy? 14. Is n't the book [a] useful [one]? 15. Is he your friend? 16. Am I not his friend?

10

(1) The conversational past tense in French is the perfect (past indefinite).

J'ai vu votre père hier, *I saw your father yesterday.*
Il a perdu sa montre, *he lost his watch.*

(2) The auxiliary verb *to do* does not exist in French. In translation, change the expressions *did I see, did he buy, did you find,* etc., into *have I seen, has he bought, have you found,* etc.

A-t-il perdu sa montre, *did he lose his watch?*

(3) The prepositions **de** and **à**, the definite article (**le, la, l', les,**), and the possessive adjectives are repeated before each noun to which they refer.

la poche, *the pocket.*	**mis**, *put.*	past participles.
le mouchoir, *the handkerchief.*	**donné**, *given.*	
le canif, *the penknife.*	**parlé**, *spoken.*	
la montre, *the watch.*	**hier**, *yesterday.*	
où,[1] *where.*	**à**,[1] *to, at.*	
quand, *when.*	**dans**, *in, into.*	

à la maison, *at home.*

1. Les montres de notre père et de notre mère sont jolies. 2. Où êtes-vous ? 3. Êtes-vous sur la chaise ? 4. Êtes-vous Gaston Foulquier ? 5. Je ne suis pas Gaston Foulquier, je suis ——. 6. Votre frère a-t-il perdu son canif hier ou aujourd'hui ? 7. Il a perdu son canif hier. 8. J'ai écrit une lettre à mon frère et à ma sœur. 9. Où est votre mouchoir ? 10. Il est dans ma poche. 11. Quand ai-je vu votre grammaire ? 12. Vous avez vu ma grammaire aujourd'hui. 13. Où avez-vous mis mes livres ? 14. J'ai mis vos livres sur votre table ou sur une de vos chaises. 15. Mes crayons sont dans le tiroir.

1. My brother has lost his pencil and penknife. 2. They are not on his table. 3. They are in his pocket. 4. She has lost her pretty little watch. 5. They have often spoken to my friend and his brother. 6. She has lost her brother's pencils and pens. 7. Where did she find her handkerchief ? 8. Who took (*has taken*) my ink ? 9. Who put my books on the table ? 10. Did they speak of my brother and sister ? 11. Have you your penknife to-day ? 12. Where is it ? 13. Is n't it

[1] Notice the accent which distinguishes **à**, *to, at*, from **a**, *has*, and also **où**, *where*, from **ou**, *or*. The accent does not affect the pronunciation.

ov.
elle ✱ trouve son mouchoir?

in your pocket? 14. Are your father and mother here? 15. Where are they? 16. Did you write a letter to-day or yesterday? 17. Have you one, two, three, or four pencils? 18. Are they in your drawer?

11

cinq, *five.* **huit**, *eight.*
six, *six.* **neuf**, *nine.*
sept, *seven.* **dix**, *ten.*

The final consonant of each of the above numerals is silent before a consonant or h aspirate of a word which they multiply; in all other cases the final consonant is sounded. The **p** of **sept** is always silent.

onze, *eleven.* **douze**, *twelve.*

l'école (f.), *the school.* **l'élève** (m. or f.), *the pupil.*
à l'école, *at school.* **une salle**, *a room* (a large room).
l'église (f.), *the church.* **une salle de classe**, *a class-room.*
à l'église, *at church.* **assis** (m.), **assise** (f.), *seated.*
la classe, *the class.* **debout** (adv.), *standing.*

Il y a, *there is, there are.*
Y a-t-il? *is there? are there?*

1. Son ami a trois crayons et huit plumes sur sa table. 2. Il y a dix élèves dans la classe de mon frère. 3. Je ne suis pas debout, je suis assis. 4. Louise est aussi assise. 5. Il y a neuf salles de classe dans cette école. 6. Nous sommes à l'école; notre père et notre mère sont à la maison. 7. Il y a sur ma table un canif, une plume, deux crayons, six cahiers, et neuf grammaires. 8. Je suis assis. 9. Mes élèves ne sont pas debout, ils sont assis. 10. Y a-t-il dix élèves dans cette classe? 11. Avez-vous écrit sept ou huit lettres? 12. Êtes-vous à l'église ou à l'école?

1. The pupils are in the class-room. 2. The pupils of my class are very tall. 3. His pupils are short.

4. There are ten books on my table. 5. The pupils are not seated. 6. They are standing. 7. She is seated. 8. They (f.) are seated. 9. Where is the class? 10. Where are you? 11. Are you at home or at school? 12. Who is standing? 13. Are you my pupils? 14. Am I a pupil? 15. Who am I? 16. Are there six, eight, or ten books on the table? 17. Is his father at school? 18. Where is he? 19. And his mother, where is she to-day? 20. Is she at church?

12

premier (m.), **première** (f.), *first.*
deuxième, **second**, *second.*
troisième, *third.*
quatrième, *fourth.*
cinquième, *fifth.*
sixième, *sixth.*
septième, *seventh.*
huitième, *eighth.*
neuvième, *ninth.*
dixième, *tenth.*
onzième, *eleventh.*
douzième, *twelfth.*

With the exception of **premier** (*first*) and **second** (*second*), an ordinal number is formed by adding **-ième** to the cardinal number. In adding **-ième** to form the ordinal, drop final **-e** of the cardinal, insert **u** after **q**, and change **f** to **v**: **quatre, quatrième**; **cinq. cinquième**; **neuf, neuvième.**

Before **huit** or **huitième**, **onze**, or **onzième**, **l'** is never used for **le** or **la**, and final consonants are never linked: **la huitième leçon**; **la onzième porte**; **les onze livres.**

la leçon, *the lesson.*
la phrase, *the sentence.*
un mot, *a word.*
un thème, **un exercice**, *an exercise.*
un cahier, *a note-book.*
préparé, *prepared* (past part.).

1. Avez-vous écrit le onzième thème hier? 2. Nous avons écrit le onzième thème hier et le douzième aujourd'hui. 3. La onzième leçon est très facile. 4. Y a-t-il dix salles de classe dans son école? 5. Mes élèves ont écrit leurs phrases dans leurs cahiers. 6. Il y a neuf

mots dans la cinquième phrase. 7. Y a-t-il onze ou douze élèves dans votre classe? 8. Huit élèves sont assis, et trois sont debout. 9. Il a écrit dix lettres à sa mère et six à son père. 10. J'ai mis mes onze livres sur votre table. 11. Qu'avez-vous écrit aujourd'hui? 12. Il a vendu sept montres à ses amis. 13. Il y a douze phrases dans la onzième leçon.

1. The eleventh lesson is an easy one. 2. The lessons are not often difficult. 3. No, they are always very easy. 4. There are five letters in the word élève. 5. There are twelve pupils in his class. 6. Have you written the eleventh exercise? 7. Have you written the twelfth to-day? 8. Have you prepared your lesson? 9. Who has written the sentences in his note-book? 10. Who wrote your exercises? 11. Who has written the first sentence? 12. Who is standing? 13. Have the pupils closed their grammars? 14. Have they prepared their lesson?

13

Contraction of the preposition **à** and the definite article[1]:

à and **le** contract into **au.**
à and **la** do not contract, **à la.**
à and **l'** do not contract, **à l'.**
à and **les** contract into **aux.**

au garçon, *to the boy.* **à l'amie** (f.) *to the friend.*
à l'oncle, *to the uncle.* **à la tante**, *to the aunt.*
aux médecins, *to the doctors.*

[1] *To the* =
- **au** before a masculine noun beginning with a consonant or aspirate *h*.
- **à la** before a feminine noun beginning with a consonant or aspirate *h*.
- **à l'** before a masculine or feminine noun beginning with a vowel or mute *h*.
- **aux** before a plural noun.

le garçon, *the boy.*	**le médecin,** *the doctor.*
l'oncle, *the uncle.*	**la famille,** *the family.*
la tante, *the aunt.*	**prêté,** *lent.* } Past
le cousin, *the cousin* (m.).	**lu,** *read.* } Participles.
la cousine, *the cousin* (f.).	**vendu,** *sold.* } Participles.
le neveu, *the nephew.*	**Jean,** *John.*
la nièce, *the niece.*	**Jeanne,** *Jane.*
le voisin, *the neighbor* (m.).	**Louis,** *Louis.*
la voisine, *the neighbor* (f.).	**Louise,** *Louise.*

treize, *thirteen.*	**treizième,** *thirteenth.*

1. Le neveu, au neveu. 2. La nièce, à la nièce. 3. Les garçons, aux garçons. 4. L'oncle, les oncles, à l'oncle, aux oncles. 5. Aux médecins, aux amis, aux amies. 6. Il a prêté ses livres au frère de mon voisin. 7. Mon ami a vendu une jolie maison à l'oncle de sa femme. 8. Avez-vous parlé au neveu et à la nièce de votre amie? 9. J'ai parlé à son fils et à sa fille. 10. Elle a donné un livre au médecin. 11. Qu'avez-vous prêté à l'ami de mon cousin? 12. Il a vendu ses maisons aux médecins. 13. Nous avons donné nos livres et nos plumes aux enfants. 14. Le fils de mon oncle est mon cousin, et sa fille est ma cousine.

For Oral Drill. 1. The boy, the friend (m.), the friend (f.), the family, the neighbors. 2. To the boy, to the friend (m.), to the friend (f.), to the family, to the neighbors. 3. The man, to the man, the men, to the men. 4. The woman, to the woman, the women, to the women. 5. The brother, to the brother, the brothers, to the brothers. 6. The father, the child, to the father, to the child.

1. John and Louis are my neighbor's children. 2. He has written a letter to his son's friend. 3. She has written to her friend's son. 4. They have spoken to the

doctor. 5. She gave the boy her pens and pencils (*her pens and pencils to the boy*). 6. He has often spoken to his pupil's uncle and aunt. 7. Have we the twelfth or thirteenth lesson to-day? 8. Did your cousin sell his house to his wife's father or brother? 9. Did you give or lend your books to my neighbor's children? 10. Have I seen your father and mother? 11. Is Jane, Louise's sister or her cousin? 12. Is your neighbor's family a large one? 13. Has he four or five children? 14. Have we written twelve or thirteen sentences?

14

Contraction of the preposition **de** and the definite article [1]:

de and **le** contract into **du**.
de and **la** do not contract, **de la**.
de and **l'** do not contract, **de l'**.
de and **les** contract into **des**.

du frère, *of* or *from the brother*. **de l'ami**, } *of* or *from the friend*.
de la sœur, *of* or *from the sister*. **de l'amie**, }
des élèves, *of* or *from the pupils*.

le chapeau, *the hat*.	**joué**, *played*.	Past Participles.
l'habit (m.), *the coat*.	**reçu**, *received*.	
la robe, *the dress*.	**porté**, *carried, worn*.	
une bague, *a ring*.	**apporté**, *brought*.	
un cadeau, *a gift, a present*.	**ôté**, *taken off*.	
quatorze, *fourteen*.	**montré**, *shown*.	

avec, *with*.

[1] *Of the* =
- **du** before a masculine noun beginning with a consonant or aspirate *h*.
- **de la** before a feminine noun beginning with a consonant or aspirate *h*.
- **de l'** before a masculine or feminine noun beginning with a vowel or mute *h*.
- **des** before a plural noun.

1. A-t-il parlé au frère ou au fils du médecin? 2. Le fils et la fille de notre voisin ont reçu une lettre de leur oncle. 3. Jean a reçu un cadeau de son oncle. 4. Jean a reçu un chapeau, et Louise a reçu une bague. 5. Un de mes élèves a écrit quatorze phrases; il n'a pas joué avec ses amis. 6. J'ai donné un habit au fils de la pauvre femme. 7. Mon voisin a apporté treize ou quatorze livres aux enfants. 8. Qui a pris les livres des enfants? 9. A-t-elle écrit aux filles du médecin? 10. As-tu vu le chapeau du garçon? 11. Avez-vous la montre de la jeune fille? 12. Les cahiers des élèves sont sur la table. 13. Nos amis ne sont pas à l'église aujourd'hui; ils sont à la maison.

For Oral Drill. 1. The nephew, the man, the aunt, the boys. 2. Of the nephew, of the man, of the aunt, of the boys. 3. The friend (m.), the friend (f.), of the friend (m.), of the friend (f.), the friends (m.), of the friends (f.). 4. The boy, of the boy, to the boy, of the boys, to the boys. 5. The father, from the father, to the father. 6. The child, from the child, to the child. 7. The children, from the children, to the children.

1. We have received a letter from the doctor's son. 2. He has shown his exercises to his brother's friend. 3. The doctor has given his daughter a ring. 4. The man's children have received a gift from the neighbors. 5. Our neighbor is a good woman. 6. Is the boy's hat on the table? 7. Did your father sell his house to the doctor or to the doctor's neighbor? 8. Isn't the boy's grammar easy? 9. Have you written the first sentence of the fourteenth lesson? 10. Has he brought a letter from his friend's father or from his father's friend?

late in this form- Your father has he sold his house, etc.

11. Are the child's father and mother rich or poor? 12. Has John spoken to the woman's nephew or son? 13. Did the boy wear his hat in the house? 14. Did he take his hat off? 15. Have my pupils prepared their lesson or have they played with their friends?

15

Possessive Pronouns.

Singular		Plural	
masculine.	feminine.	masculine.	feminine.
le mien,	**la mienne,**	**les miens,**	**les miennes,** *mine.*
le tien,	**la tienne,**	**les tiens,**	**les tiennes,** *thine, yours,*
le sien,	**la sienne,**	**les siens,**	**les siennes,** *his, hers, its.*
le nôtre,	**la nôtre,**	**les nôtres,** *ours.*	
le vôtre,	**la vôtre,**	**les vôtres,** *yours.*	
le leur,	**la leur,**	**les leurs,** *theirs.*	

(1) Possessive pronouns, in French, agree in gender and number with the object possessed, and not, as in English, with the possessor.

Note carefully the circumflex accent that distinguishes the possessive *pronouns* **nôtre** and **vôtre** from the possessive *adjectives* **notre** and **votre.**

In the sentence *Your pencil is a good one, but hers is a poor one,* **Votre crayon est bon, mais le sien est mauvais,** the pronoun **le sien** is masculine singular, because **crayon,** the noun which it represents, is masculine singular. In the sentence *Here is my watch; where is yours?* **Voici ma montre; où est la vôtre?** the pronoun **la vôtre** is feminine singular, because the noun **montre** is feminine singular.

(2) Expressions like *a friend of mine, a book of hers, etc.,* are in French, *one of my friends, one of her books, etc.:*

a friend of mine,	**un de mes amis, une de mes amies.**
a book of hers,	**un de ses livres.**

la boîte, *the box.* **la craie**, *the chalk.* **un encrier**, *an inkwell.*
un porte-plume, *a penholder.* **la règle**, *the rule, the ruler.*
voici, *here is, here are.* **voilà**, *there is, there are.* **quinze**, *fifteen.*

Il y a, *there is*, or *there are*, simply makes a statement: **Il y a un livre sur ma table**, *there is a book on my table;* **Il y a dix élèves dans cette salle**, *there are ten pupils in this room.* **Voilà** points out an object and answers the questions, where is? where are? *There is my book,* **voilà mon livre.**

1. Voici mon livre; où est le vôtre? 2. Voici le mien, voilà le vôtre. 3. Où est la boîte? 4. Voilà la boîte. 5. Où est la craie? 6. Voilà la craie dans la boîte. 7. Où est la bague? 8. Voilà la bague sur la table. 9. Voici mon porte-plume; je n'ai pas trouvé le vôtre. 10. Voici le porte-plume; où est la plume? 11. Il y a quatorze élèves dans ma classe. 12. Y a-t-il aussi quatorze élèves dans la vôtre? 13. Où est la classe? 14. Voici la classe. 15. Où est votre exercice? 16. Voici le mien, voilà le sien. 17. Voilà un de vos thèmes.

1. There are my books, pens, paper, and ink. 2. Here is a book of yours. 3. Here is the box; where is the chalk? 4. It is on the table. 5. There is my penholder. 6. John has sold his watch, and Jane has lost hers. 7. There are 2 doors and 3 windows in this (*cette*) room. 8. Here are the doors. 9. There are the windows. 10. Here is my pen; where is yours? 11. Where is his? 12. Here are my pencils; where are hers? 13. Where are theirs? 14. Has he mine or his [own]? 15. Is the ink-well on the chair? 16. Where is it? 17. Have you seen a ruler of mine? 18. There is my knife; where is yours? 19. Are your pens good? 20. Are mine good, too? 21. We have written our exercises; have you written yours too? 22. Where is the ink? 23. Where is your friend?

16

Larger, smaller, higher, etc., are translated by *more large, more small, more high,* etc.: **plus grand, plus petit, plus haut.**

Ma sœur est plus grande que mon frère.
My sister is taller than my brother.

By exception, *better* is expressed by **meilleur.**

plus, *more.*	**dix-neuf**, *nineteen.*
moins, *less.*	**vingt**, *twenty.*
que, *than.*	**un avocat**, *a lawyer.*
seize, *sixteen.*	**un arbre**, *a tree.*
dix-sept, *seventeen.*	**une fleur**, *a flower.*
dix-huit, *eighteen.*	**une feuille**, *a leaf* (of a tree or of a book).

Note the elision of **e** in **que** (*than*) before a vowel: **qu'un.**

1. Mon frère est plus petit que votre sœur. 2. Est-il plus ou moins jeune qu'elle? 3. Leurs arbres sont plus hauts que ma maison. 4. La fille de l'avocat est plus jolie que la vôtre. 5. Les fleurs de Jeanne sont plus jolies que les vôtres. 6. Votre plume est meilleure que la mienne, mais mon crayon est meilleur que le vôtre. 7. J'ai mis vos lettres et les siennes sur votre table. 8. Il n'a pas trouvé les siennes. 9. La chambre de mon frère est plus grande que la mienne, mais la mienne est plus jolie que la sienne. 10. Y a-t-il dix-neuf ou vingt mots dans la neuvième phrase? 11. Les phrases de la quinzième leçon sont-elles faciles ou difficiles? 12. Nos églises sont plus hautes que les vôtres. 13. Un avocat est moins utile qu'un médecin.

1. We have seen the doctor's house. 2. It is taller than his trees. 3. Your neighbor's trees are higher than his house. 4. Your friend's nieces are prettier than his daughters. 5. Your pens are smaller than mine.

6. They are better too. 7. She has lost a leaf of her note-book. 8. Where is your brother? 9. Is he taller than I (*moi*)? 10. Is he not taller than you? 11. Is he younger? 12. Have you your watch or his? 13. Where is mine? 14. Where is yours? 15. Is yours larger or smaller than mine? 16. Is the sixteenth lesson more or less difficult than the fifteenth? 17. Is a doctor more or less useful than a lawyer? 18. Are the leaves of your trees very large? 19. Are your friends richer than we? 20. Are they more agreeable? 21. Are his pencils better than yours? 22. Are the flowers more or less useful than the trees?

17

(1) The nominative case of the relative pronoun (*who, which, that*) is **qui**, the objective case is **que.**[1]

L'homme qui est ici, *the man who is here.*
L'homme que vous avez vu, *the man whom you saw.*

(2) The relative is never omitted in French.

Le parapluie qu'il a perdu, *the umbrella he lost.*

Note elision of **e** in **que** before a vowel. The **i** of **qui** is never dropped.

le jardin, *the garden.*	**le parapluie**, *the umbrella.*	
un banc, *a bench.*	**laissé**, *left.*	Past Participles.
le pupitre, *the desk.*	**emprunté**, *borrowed.*	
la canne, *the cane.*	**rendu**, *given back, returned.*	

si, *so* (before an adjective or adverb).

1. Nous avons vu une maison qui est très haute; elle est plus haute que la nôtre. 2. Le livre que vous avez acheté est plus utile que le mien. 3. J'ai trouvé une plume qui est très mauvaise. 4. Mon père a acheté le

[1] *Which* or *that* next the verb is **qui**; separated from it, **que.**

jardin que vous avez vu. 5. Le livre qu'il a perdu est le mien. 6. Où a-t-elle laissé le livre qu'elle a rendu? 7. Il a emprunté ma canne. 8. Voilà un joli petit parapluie que j'ai acheté pour vous. 9. Les arbres qui sont dans son jardin sont plus hauts que ceux (those) qui sont dans le mien. 10. Il y a six bancs dans le jardin de l'avocat. 11. J'ai deux bons amis; ils sont si aimables! 12. Les garçons qui sont ici aujourd'hui sont mes cousins. 13. Sa femme a laissé son parapluie à l'église.

1. We have seen the benches which the man has put into our garden. 2. We have found one sentence that is difficult. 3. They are often very easy. 4. There is the young man who gave a cane to my brother. 5. The books which he has put on the desk are mine. 6. I have lost my umbrella; have you lost yours? 7. Have you brought yours to school to-day? 8. Is it a better one than mine? 9. Where is the pencil you borrowed? 10. Did you leave yours at home? 11. Isn't an umbrella more useful than a cane? 12. Is the boy I saw yesterday with you younger than you? 13. His sister is not so tall; is she younger? 14. Is the exercise which you have written easy or difficult? 15. Is a pen more useful than a pencil? 16. Who has taken the note-book she left on my table?

18

Demonstrative Adjectives.

ce, cet (m.), **cette** (f.), *this* or *that.*
ces (m. and f. pl.), *these, those.*

The form **cet** is used instead of **ce** before a masculine noun or adjective beginning with a vowel or *h* mute:

cet ami, *this friend;* **cet homme,** *that man;* **ce jeune homme,** *this* or *that young man.*

Demonstrative adjectives, in French, must be repeated before each noun which they modify.

Où avez-vous vu cet homme et cette femme?
Where did you see that man and woman?

le chien, *the dog.* **le chat,** *the cat.*

1. Quand avez-vous acheté cette table? 2. Ce livre est petit; il est plus petit que les livres qu'elle a mis sur mon pupitre. 3. Cette eau est bonne, cette encre est mauvaise. 4. Avez-vous ouvert ces fenêtres? 5. J'ai donné un cadeau à ce joli petit enfant. 6. Cet enfant est le leur. 7. Jean a acheté ces chaises. 8. Qui a trouvé ce chien? 9. Qui a apporté cette encre? 10. La fille de cet homme est notre amie. 11. Voici ton chat, mon enfant. 12. Ce chat n'est-il pas joli? 13. Qui a acheté cette maison? 14. Ces hommes sont nos amis. 15. Cet exercice est très facile. 16. Cet arbre est plus haut que le nôtre.

1. These books are yours. 2. We have seen this child's father and mother. 3. Her father has bought that large house. 4. Those flowers are prettier than yours. 5. The children found that dog and cat yesterday. 6. Is this water good? 7. Isn't this tree a tall one? 8. Aren't the leaves of those trees pretty? 9. This pen is mine; where is his? 10. These pencils are yours; where are mine? 11. Did he receive this letter from the doctor or the lawyer? 12. Who opened these doors and windows? 13. Is that man rich or poor? 14. Is that chalk good? 15. Is it better than mine? 16. Is this exercise easy or difficult?

19

Demonstrative Pronouns.

Singular.		Plural.	
celui (m.)	*this (one), that (one),*	**ceux** (m.)	*these,*
celle (f.)	*the one.*	**celles** (f.)	*those.*

Notice that **celui, celle, ceux, celles,** instead of being placed before nouns, are pronouns and take the place of nouns.

Mon livre et celui de mon frère, *my book and my brother's.*
Ces plumes sont meilleures que celles de mon ami.
These pens are better than my friend's.

une pomme, *an apple.*	**apportez-moi,** *bring me.*
une poire, *a pear.*	**apportez-nous,** *bring us.*
une orange, *an orange.*	**montrez-moi,** *show me.*
donnez-moi, *give me.*	**montrez-nous,** *show us.*
donnez-nous, *give us.*	**encore,** *still, yet, again.*

1. Mes pommes sont plus petites que celles de ce garçon. 2. Vos arbres sont moins hauts que ceux de notre jardin. 3. Ce crayon est meilleur que celui que vous avez acheté. 4. La montre de Louis est plus petite que la mienne, mais celle de sa sœur est encore plus petite. 5. Montrez-moi votre cahier et celui de votre frère. 6. Voici une orange et voilà une poire. 7. Avez-vous reçu ma lettre ou celle de mon ami? 8. Vos fenêtres sont plus hautes que celles de mon frère, mais celles de notre voisin sont encore plus hautes. 9. Voilà votre encre et votre encrier. 10. Ce porte-plume est-il celui que j'ai trouvé? 11. Les sœurs de Louis sont plus jolies que les miennes; elles sont aussi plus jolies et plus aimables que celles de Jean. 12. Le cadeau qu'il a reçu est plus joli que le tien.

1. Give me my cane or my brother's. 2. Bring us four good apples and two good pears. 3. Show me your ink-well and the one you found. 4. Bring me those books and the ones he put on your desk. 5. Give me your rings and your sister's. 6. Here are my books; show me yours. 7. There are mine. 8. Where is your apple? 9. There is yours; where is mine? 10. Where is John's? 11. Have you your pencil or your neighbor's? 12. Have you seen my umbrella? 13. Did you leave yours at home? 14. Have you borrowed your father's? 15. Who took mine? 16. Have you given back the one you took? 17. Where are the trees? 18. Are they in the garden? 19. Are these oranges good ones? 20. Are they better than your sister's? 21. Are yours still better?

20

Demonstratives with -ci and -là.

(1) To distinguish between *this* (pl. *these*) and *that* (pl. *those*), add to the noun or pronoun **-ci** for *this* (*these*) and **-là** for *that* (*those*).[1]

Cette plume-ci est meilleure que celle-là.
This pen is better than that.

(2) The demonstrative pronouns (**celui, celle, ceux, celles**) cannot be used alone. They may be followed by **-ci** or **-là**, by **de**, or by any case of a relative pronoun.

Voici deux parapluies; celui-ci est plus grand que celui-là.
Here are two umbrellas; this one is larger than that.
Mon livre, celui de mon frère, et celui qui est sur la table.
My book, my brother's, and the one which is on the table.

[1] Observe that **-ci** (**ici**), *here*, points to the nearer object and **-là**, *there*, to one more distant; hence, **celui-ci** frequently means the *latter*, and **celui-là**, the *former*.

montrez-moi votre encrier et celui que vous pouvez
portez-moi ces livres et ceux que il a mis sur votre

(3) **Ceci**, *this*, and **cela**, *that* (**ça** colloquially) are invariable and refer to objects or ideas indicated but not named.

Voulez-vous ceci ou cela, *will you have this or that?*
Cela n'est pas vrai, mais ceci est vrai, *that is not true, but this is true.*

noir, *black.*		**jaune**, *yellow.*
blanc (m.), **blanche** (f.),	*white.*	**bleu**, *blue.*
vert, *green.*		**brun**, *brown.*
		rouge, *red.*

la couleur, *the color.*
De quelle couleur est ——?
What is the color of ——?

(4) Adjectives of color follow their nouns.

un chat blanc, *a white cat.*
un chapeau brun, *a brown hat.*

1. Cette eau-ci est meilleure que celle-là. 2. Ces hommes-là sont plus grands que ceux-ci. 3. Ceux-là sont aussi plus riches. 4. Ce garçon-ci est plus jeune que celui-là. 5. De quelle couleur est cette fleur? 6. Elle est blanche. 7. Ces plumes-là sont meilleures que celles-ci. 8. Cette maison-là est jaune, celle-ci est rouge. 9. Elle a apporté une fleur et une feuille; celle-ci est verte, celle-là est bleue. 10. Ce parapluie est celui de ma sœur. 11. Elle a perdu le sien. 12. Celui-ci est le mien, celui-là est le vôtre. 13. Nous avons trouvé deux cannes; avez-vous perdu la vôtre? 14. Donnez-moi celle que vous avez.

1. This window is higher than that. 2. This one is still higher. 3. Here is the red pen-holder you brought to school. 4. I have lost the one I borrowed. 5. Those books are smaller than these. 6. This box is smaller than that one. 7. It is smaller than the one you have. 8. Is this a good one? 9. Here are my apples; where

are yours? 10. Are these better than those? 11. What color are these? 12. Are they yellow? 13. Are mine green? 14. Is this desk high? 15. Is it higher than that? 16. Where is the chalk? 17. Is it in the box? 18. Is that pupil seated? 19. Is this one standing? 20. Here is a white handkerchief; have you lost yours? 21. What is the color of his coat? 22. Is it black or blue?

21

Numeral Adjectives.

CARDINAL NUMBERS

0, zéro.	**15, quinze.**	**61, soixante et un.**
1, un, une.	**16, seize.**	**70, soixante-dix.**
2, deux.	**17, dix-sept.**	**71, soixante et onze.**
3, trois.	**18, dix-huit.**	**72, soixante-douze.**
4, quatre.	**19, dix-neuf.**	**80, quatre-vingts.**
5, cinq.	**20, vingt.**	**81, quatre-vingt-un.**
6, six.	**21, vingt et un.**	**90, quatre-vingt-dix.**
7, sept.	**22, vingt-deux.**	**91, quatre-vingt-onze.**
8, huit.	**30, trente.**	**92, quatre-vingt-douze.**
9, neuf.	**31, trente et un.**	**100, cent.**
10, dix.	**40, quarante.**	**101, cent un.**
11, onze.	**41, quarante et un.**	**200, deux cents.**
12, douze.	**50, cinquante.**	**230, deux cent trente.**
13, treize.	**51, cinquante et un.**	**1000, mille.**
14, quatorze.	**60, soixante.**	**4000, quatre mille.**

5796, cinq mille sept cent quatre-vingt-seize.

1,000,000, un million.

1,000,000,000, un milliard.

(1) **Un** always becomes **une** before a feminine noun: **vingt et une maisons.**

(2) **Et** must be used in 21, 31, 41, 51, 61, and may be used in 71, but never in 81 or 91.

(3) Except where **et** is used, hyphens connect the different parts of any French number under 100, either when that number is alone (**trente-sept**) or when it is part of a large number (**deux cent trente-sept**).

(4) Neither *a* nor *one* is expressed before **cent** or **mille**.

(5) The **t** of **vingt** is pronounced only in the numbers **21** to **29** inclusive. The **t** of **cent** is silent in 101, 102, etc.

(6) **Quatre-vingt** and the multiples of **cent** add **s**, except when followed by another numeral or used in a date or as an ordinal: **trois cent quatre-vingts**; **quatre cents**; **sept cent quatre-vingt-dix-sept**; **page quatre-vingt.**

(7) **Mille** does not add **s**: **quatre mille**, *four thousand.* It becomes **mil** in dates: **l'an mil huit cent douze** (or **dix-huit cent douze**) *the year 1812.*

(8) **Un million** and **un milliard** are followed by **de** before a noun.

un an, *a year.*	**une heure**, *an hour.*
un mois, *a month.*	**une minute**, *a minute.*
une semaine, *a week.*	**une seconde**, *a second.*
un jour, *a day.*	**font**, *make* (3d pl. pres. indic.).

1. Il y a 35 mille hommes dans cette ville. 2. J'ai reçu 21 lettres cette semaine. 3. Il y a 15 arbres dans le jardin du père de ce garçon. 4. Cet homme a sept enfants: deux fils et cinq filles. 5. Voilà les quatre livres que vous avez mis sur ma table. 6. Sept jours font une semaine. 7. Douze mois font un an. 8. Soixante secondes font une minute. 9. L'an dix-sept cent quatre-vingt-neuf. 10. Il y a 200 oranges dans cette boîte. 11. Il y a cent pommes dans celle-ci. 12. Il y a 540 élèves dans son école. 13. L'heure a soixante minutes ou trois mille six cents secondes.

1. 21, 34, 47. 2. 31, 45, 58. 3. 41, 56, 62. 4. 51, 66, 71. 5. 61, 75, 81. 6. 89, 93, 103. 7. 101, 173, 196. 8. 555, 777, 999. 9. 800, 801, 9000. 10. 20 and 20 make 40. 11. 91 and 11 make 102. 12. 94 minus (less) 18 make 76. 13. $60 - 35 = 25$. 14. The year 1892. 15. 60 seconds make a minute. 16. 60 minutes make an hour. 17. 24 hours make a day. 18. 7 days make a week. 19. 52 weeks or 365 days make a year. 20. The year has twelve months.

22×

un centime, *a centime.*
un sou, *a sou,* 5 centimes (about one cent).
un franc, *a franc,* 20 sous, 100 centimes.
une pièce, *a piece.*

une pièce de cinquante centimes, *fifty centimes* (a 10-cent piece).
une pièce de cinq francs, *a five-franc piece.*

une fois, *once.*
deux fois, *twice.*
six fois, *six times.*
combien, *how many, how much?*
combien font 3 fois dix? *how many are 3 times 10?*
3 fois dix font 30, *three times ten are thirty.*

comptez, *count* (imperative).
jusqu'à, *as far as.*
Comptez jusqu'à dix, *count to ten.*
Comptez de dix à vingt, *count from ten to twenty.*

Combien takes de before a noun.

combien de livres, *how many books?* **combien de fois,** *how many times?*

1. Comptez jusqu'à douze. 2. Combien de fois a-t-il parlé à l'ami de son frère? 3. Combien font treize et neuf? 4. Combien font treize moins neuf? 5. Combien font treize fois neuf? 6. Il y a cent sous dans une pièce de cinq francs. 7. $7 \times 12 = 84$. 8. Voici une pièce de vingt francs. 9. 10 et 15 font 25. 10. Six fois huit font quarante-huit. 11. $12 \times 12 = 144$. 12. Combien de crayons avez-vous? 13. J'ai deux crayons, trois plumes, et un porte-plume. 14. 4; 64; 264; 3,264; 13,264; 513,264.

1. How many are six and five? 2. How many are eight times twelve? 3. Two times one are two, two times two are four, *etc.*, *to* two times twelve. 4. $6 \times 1 = 6$, $6 \times 2 = 12$, *etc.*, *to* 6×12. 5. How many times have you read this book? 6. Count from 15 to 25. 7. Give us those 5-franc pieces. 8. One hundred centimes make a franc. 9. Twenty sous make a franc. 10. How many

centimes make a sou? 11. There are five hundred centimes in a five-franc piece. 12. How many trees are there in the garden you have seen to-day? 13. Show me a twenty-franc piece. 14. Here is a ten-franc piece; I have left my twenty-franc piece at home.

23

Ordinal Numbers.

(1) Ordinals agree in gender and number with the nouns which they modify: **les premières phrases.**

For the formation of ordinal numbers, review Lesson 12.

ORDINAL NUMBERS AND FRACTIONS

1st,	**premier** (m.). **première** (f.).	9th,	**neuvième.**
		10th,	**dixième.**
2nd,	**deuxième.** **second.**[1]	11th,	**onzième.**
		12th,	**douzième.**
3rd,	**troisième.**	20th,	**vingtième.**
4th,	**quatrième.**	21st,	**vingt et unième.**
5th,	**cinquième.**	22nd,	**vingt-deuxième.**
6th,	**sixième.**	99th,	**quatre-vingt-dix-neuvième.**
7th,	**septième.**	100th,	**centième.**
8th,	**huitième.**	1000th,	**millième.**

Abbreviations: **premier**, 1er; **première**, 1ere; **deuxième**, 2e; **troisième**, 3e; *etc.*

dernier (m.), **dernière** (f.), *last.*
la partie, *the part.*
la moitié (noun), **un demi** (adj.) *one-half.*
deux demis, *two halves.*
un quart, *one-fourth.*
un tiers, *one-third.*
un huitième, *one-eighth.*
trois quarts, *three-fourths.*
cinq centièmes, *five-hundredths.*
un quart d'heure, *a quarter of an hour.*
mangé, *eaten.* } past
offert, *offered.* } participles.

(2) With the exception of half, third, and quarter, fractions are expressed as in English, the numerator by a cardinal and the denominator by an ordinal: **neuf dixièmes**, $\frac{9}{10}$.

[1] Strictly speaking, **second** is the second of only two.

(3) **Demi** before a noun is invariable and is connected with the noun by a hyphen: **une demi-heure**, *a half-hour;* after a feminine noun to which it relates, it has the form **demie**: **une heure et demie**, *an hour and a half.*

1. Il y a 95 élèves dans la première classe, 180 dans la deuxième, 245 dans la troisième, et 300 dans la quatrième. 2. Le méchant petit garçon a mangé la moitié de ma pomme. 3. Les élèves ont écrit les premières phrases de leurs exercices, mais pas les dernières. 4. Je suis le premier de ma classe, Louise est la troisième de la sienne, mais Jean est le dernier de la sienne. 5. Jeanne est la onzième. 6. Elle a perdu vingt et une lettres. 7. Donnez-nous la moitié de votre poire. 8. Vous avez pris la moitié de la mienne. 9. Elle a offert une partie de la sienne à son amie.

1. 5, 5th. 2. 9, the 9th. 3. 11, the 11th. 4. 31, 31st. 5. 80, 80th. 6. 81, 81st. 7. 200, 200th. 8. $\frac{4}{5}$, $\frac{3}{5}$, $\frac{7}{8}$. 9. $\frac{1}{7}$, $\frac{9}{20}$, $\frac{13}{39}$. 10. Are you the first in (*de*) the class? 11. Who is the first? 12. Are you the second? 13. Is your sister the first in her class? 14. Is she the last? 15. Are you often the last in this class? 16. Who has eaten half of my orange? 17. Did he eat one apple or an apple and a half? 18. Is the first part of this exercise easy or difficult? 19. Did you talk with my brother? 20. We talked a quarter of an hour. 21. To whom (*à qui*) did you offer your book?

24[×]

(1) In dates and in titles of sovereigns, cardinal numbers are used, except for *the first.*

le premier avril, *April* 1st.
le onze juin, *June* 11th.
François premier, *Francis the First.*

(2) The English words *on* used before days and dates, and *the* in titles are not translated into French.

(3) Names of days and months do not begin with capital letters.

dimanche, *Sunday.*	**janvier**, *January.*
lundi, *Monday.*	**février**, *February.*
mardi, *Tuesday.*	**mars**, *March.*
mercredi, *Wednesday.*	**avril**, *April.*
jeudi, *Thursday.*	**mai**, *May.*
vendredi, *Friday.*	**juin**, *June.*
samedi, *Saturday.*	**juillet**, *July.*
le matin, *the morning.*	**août**, *August.*
Napoléon, *Napoleon.*	**septembre**, *September.*
Henri, *Henry.*	**octobre**, *October.*
visité, *visited* (past part.).	**novembre**, *November.*
nommez, *name* (imperative).	**décembre**, *December.*

The names of the days and months are all masculine.

(4) In expressions like *last week, last month, last Tuesday,* **dernier** follows the noun: **la semaine dernière, le mois dernier, mardi dernier.**

1. Charles Ier, Henri deux. 2. Le trois octobre, 1781. 3. Lundi, le 5[1] mars, 1843. 4. Dimanche, le 8 août, 1906. 5. Nommez les mois. 6. Le samedi est le septième jour de la semaine. 7. Le dimanche est le premier. 8. Un jour est la septième partie d'une semaine. 9. Avez-vous visité votre tante mardi ou mercredi? 10. Montrez-moi ces quinze lettres. 11. Elle a offert ce livre à sa sœur vendredi. 12. Six est la cinquième partie de trente. 13. Il a visité sa mère jeudi dernier. 14. Elle a trouvé cette montre et cette bague samedi.

1. Napoleon I; Henry IV; Louis XIV. 2. The 14th [of] July, 1789. 3. September 22, 1792. 4. February 24th, 1848. 5. Friday, Aug. 11, 1900. 6. My father

[1] The final consonants of **cinq, six,** etc., are pronounced in dates. (See Lesson 11.)

bought this house on the 31st of December, 1896. 7. When did you sell yours? 8. I sold mine on the 12th. 9. Name the days. 10. Name the months also. 11. How many days are there in a week? 12. How many days make a month? 13. I saw your brother last Thursday. 14. Where did you see the pretty little red handkerchief I lost on Wednesday last? 15. My sister saw her friends, Jane and Louise, at church, on Sunday, the 16th. 16. We saw your friends last week.

25

Past Participles with Être.

(1) The past participle coming after any form of the verb **être** (*to be*) agrees in gender and number with the subject. (For exception, see Lesson 67.)

(2) The following are the past participles that are always used with **être** instead of **avoir**.

allé, *gone.*	**arrivé**, *arrived.*
parti, *gone away, set out, left.*	**entré** (dans), *entered, gone into.*
sorti, *gone out, come out.*	**resté**, *remained, stayed.*
venu, *come.*	**tombé**, *fallen.*
devenu, *become.*	**né**, *born.*
revenu, *returned, come back.*	**mort**, *died* (adj. *dead*).
retourné, *returned, gone back.*	**décédé**, *died* (rarely used).

il y a (before a period of time), *ago.*

il y a huit jours (une semaine), *a week ago.*

pas encore, *not yet.*	**le soir**, *the evening.*
ensemble, *together.*	**hier soir**, *last evening.*

Londres, *London.*

1. Mes frères sont sortis. 2. Leurs sœurs sont parties hier soir. 3. Son père et sa mère sont morts. 4. La petite fille est tombée. 5. Quand est-elle née? 6. Elle est née en 1899. 7. Vos amis sont-ils restés à la maison?

8. Les enfants ne sont-ils pas venus ? 9. Ils ne sont pas encore arrivés.[1] 10. Mes élèves sont devenus très grands. 11. Elles sont revenues ensemble. 12. Où sont-elles allées ? 13. Elles sont allées à Paris. 14. Nous sommes entrés dans la maison. 15. Nous avons acheté ces deux maisons blanches. 16. Je suis né en 1869, et mon amie en 1868. 17. Napoléon est mort le 5 mai, 1821.

Hereafter there will be found in many of the Lessons two exercises for translation from English into French, marked respectively A and B, the latter consisting entirely of questions. For use of these questions, see Preface.

(*A*) 1. The letters arrived an hour ago. 2. Here is the pencil that I bought. 3. Your friends went away Friday morning, and ours Saturday evening. 4. His father and mother went to Paris June 1st and returned on the 21st. 5. This family has become rich. 6. John's pen is lost. 7. He has lost his pen-holder too. 8. This man's daughters have grown (become) very tall and have also grown to be (become) very pretty and agreeable. 9. I received a pretty little present last evening. 10. Two men fell dead that morning. 11. The leaves of these trees have become yellow. 12. Our neighbors left a week ago. 13. Two of our large trees have fallen. 14. His letters are not written yet.

(*B*) 1. Who has come ? 2. Did your sister go to school to-day ? 3. Did you see the boys who came in ? 4. Haven't the pupils come into the class-room yet ? 5. Did you come to school yesterday or did you stay at home ? 6. Did she come last Friday, the 11th ? 7. Have your friends gone to London ? 8. Where did they go ?

[1] Note the position of **pas encore**.

9. When did they leave? 10. Did they set out together? 11. Have you seen the house and gardens? Not yet. 12. Is his uncle dead? 13. Is his aunt dead also? 14. Where and when did she die? 15. Did they (*f.*) go into the house? 16. Is he out (gone out)? 17. When were you born? 18. Were you born in Boston?

26

The following are the forms of the personal pronouns used with prepositions:

moi, *me.*	**nous**, *us.*
toi, *thee, you.*	**vous**, *you.*
lui, *him.*	**eux**, *them* (m.).
elle, *her.*	**elles**, *them* (f.).

après, *after* (time).	**sous**, *under.*
derrière, *behind* (place).	**près de**, *near.*
avant, *before* (time).	**malgré**, *in spite of.*
devant, *before* (place).	**sans**, *without.*
entre, *between.*	**chez**, *at the house of.*

Chez means also *to the house of, in the house of, at the office* or *place of business of.*

De is not used after **chez** or **malgré**, but is used with **près.**

chez le médecin, *at the doctor's.*
malgré son père, *in spite of his father.*
près de nous, *near us.*

1. Les enfants sont allés chez leur oncle. 2. Ils ne sont pas restés chez eux. 3. Ne sont-ils pas encore revenus? 4. Tous les élèves sont assis sur les bancs. 5. Ils sont derrière les pupitres. 6. Cette femme est très pauvre; toutes ses amies sont mortes avant elle. 7. Elles sont sorties malgré moi. 8. Ils sont venus à nous. 9. Vos frères sont arrivés quinze minutes avant vous. 10. Ils sont arrivés il y a une heure et demie. 11. Je suis

devant la classe. 12. La classe est devant moi. 13. Qui est derrière elles ? 14. Notre école est près de l'église.

(*A*) 1. For them (*m.*), for them (*f.*). 2. Of me, of him. 3. Of you, of her. 4. At my house, at her house. 5. At his house, at our house. 6. At your house, at their house. 7. At the lawyer's, at the doctor's. 8. She came to our house without them and in spite of them. 9. He fell sick on Thursday morning and died before the evening. 10. Our neighbors are not at home to-day; they went away last evening and have n't returned yet. 11. My father is at home; he is not out. 12. We went away after them and returned home before them. 13. After you, my friend. 14. He is standing by (near) the table. 15. She is sitting near the door. 16. He went away with them a quarter of an hour ago and came back without them. 17. They did not come back together. 18. Have you seen the garden behind the church ?

(*B*) 1. Where are you ? 2. Are you at home [express two ways]? 3. Where is the class ? 4. Is it in front of me ? 5. Am I in front of the class ? 6. Is the table behind me ? 7. Is it behind you (*pl.*) ? 8. Am I near the table ? 9. Where is the chair ? 10. Is the table between the class and me? 11. Am I standing or seated ? 12. Where am I standing ? 13. Is my grammar on the table ? 14. Is the pencil on the grammar ? 15. Are your brothers at the doctor's ? 16. Did they go to his house together ? 17. Are they ill ?. 18. Where are they ? 19. Did you come into this room before or after I did (after me) ? 20. Is she sitting in front of you ? 21. Am I standing behind you ? 22. Did you go out without her ?

The Adjective Tout

27

The adjective **tout** always precedes the article when the latter is present. *Of* is not expressed after *all* in French.

Tout, *all, whole, every.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
tout (m.), **toute** (f.).	**tous** (m.), **toutes** (f.).
tout homme, *every man.*	**tous les mois**, *every month.*
toute femme, *every woman.*	**toutes les semaines**, *every week.*
toute la maison, *the whole house.*	**tous les jours**, *every day.*
tout le monde, *everybody* (lit., all the world).	**tous les dimanches**, *every Sunday.*
tous les hommes, *all the men, all men.*	**tous les lundis**, *every Monday,* and so on for each day.
	tous les ans, *every year.*

autre, *other.*[1] **eu**, *had,* } past
même, *same.* **été**, *been,* } participles.

After **même** (*same*), *as* is expressed by **que**:
J'ai lu les mêmes livres que vous, *I have read the same books as you.*

1. Tous mes crayons sont perdus, et toutes mes plumes sont mauvaises. 2. Qui a apporté toutes ces fleurs? 3. Elle a vu les mêmes livres et les mêmes encriers que vous. 4. Qu'avez-vous cherché? 5. J'ai cherché mon encrier et mon porte-plume; j'ai trouvé mon encrier chez lui, mais je n'ai pas encore trouvé mon porte-plume. 6. Montrez-moi la fenêtre. 7. Voilà la fenêtre; elle est près de la porte. 8. Ont-ils lu les autres lettres? 9. A-t-elle visité tout le jardin? 10. Il a écrit une lettre à sa mère tous les jeudis. 11. Elle a reçu une lettre tous les lundis. 12. Tout le monde est ici aujourd'hui. 13. Tous les hommes qui sont ici sont mes amis. 14. Donnez-moi les mêmes crayons.

[1] *Another* is expressed in two ways in French: by **encore un** (or **une**), *an additional one;* by **un** (**une**) **autre**, *a different one.* **Encore une fois**, *once more;* **une autre fois**, *some other time.*

1. I have been in all the rooms of that white house. 2. She has visited the whole house every week. 3. Her uncle and aunt have not been at church to-day. 4. All of their friends are dead. 5. Is the whole grammar useful? 6. We have seen the same man as you. 7. When did she write to her mother? 8. Did she write a letter every day or every week? 9. She wrote every Friday. 10. Give me the same books but the other pens. 11. Everybody is here. 12. Where are the other pupils? 13. He has prepared all of his lessons at home. 14. John has left one of his books at home every day. 15. All of Mary's dresses are pretty; they are prettier than her sister's. 16. Bring us another umbrella [two meanings].

28

VERBS.

French verbs may be divided into four conjugations, distinguished from each other by the termination of the infinitive. The 1st ends in **-er**, the 2d in **-ir**, the 3d in **-oir**, the 4th in **-re**.

In English, the present participle ends in *-ing;* in French, it ends in **-ant**. It is frequently used in English with the verb *to be*, but it is never so used in French. Instead of saying *I am speaking*, we must in French say *I speak;* instead of *I was speaking, I spoke;* instead of *I shall be speaking, I shall speak.*

parlant, *speaking.*

je parle, { *I speak,* / *I do speak,* / *I am speaking.* }

parlez-vous, { *do you speak?* / *are you speaking?* }

First Conjugation.

In the first conjugation, which contains the great majority of French verbs, the infinitive ends in **-er**, and the past participle in **-é**.

porter, *to carry*; **portant**, *carrying*; **porté**, *carried*.

PRESENT INDICATIVE.

TERMINATIONS: **-e, -es, -e, -ons, -ez, -ent.**

AFFIRMATIVE.	INTERROGATIVE.
je porte, *I carry, I am carrying, I do carry.*	**porté-je?**[1] / **est-ce que je porte?**
tu portes.	**portes-tu?**
il (elle) porte.	**porte-t-il (elle)?**[2]
nous portons.	**portons-nous?**
vous portez.	**portez-vous?**
ils (elles) portent.	**portent-ils (elles)?**

NEGATIVE.	NEGATIVE INTERROGATIVE.
je ne porte pas.	**ne porté-je pas?** / **est-ce que je ne porte pas?**
tu ne portes pas.	**ne portes-tu pas?**
il ne porte pas.	**ne porte-t-il pas?**
nous ne portons pas.	**ne portons-nous pas?**
vous ne portez pas.	**ne portez-vous pas?**
ils ne portent pas.	**ne portent-ils pas?**

[1] In questions, when the 1st person singular ends in **e** mute, an acute accent is placed on it for the sake of the sound: **donné-je**, *do I give?* Any statement preceded by **est-ce que** (*is, it that?*) becomes a question: **Il a reçu une lettre**, *he has received a letter.* **Est-ce qu'il a reçu une lettre?** *Has he received a letter?* The latter construction should be used for the interrogative form of the 1st person singular, as forms like **donné-je, parlé-je**, etc., are found only in exalted style and in poetry.

[2] See Lesson 3, (2).

trouver, *to find, to consider.*[1] **visiter**, *to visit.*
donner, *to give.* **parler**, *to speak, to talk.*
prêter, *to lend.* **ôter**, *to take off.*
demeurer, *to live, to dwell.* **laisser**, *to leave, to let, let alone, allow.*
fermer, *to shut, to close.* **cacher**, *to hide.*
montrer, *to show, to point out.* **pleurer**, *to weep, to cry.*
aimer, *to love, to like.* **chercher**, *to seek, to look for.*
penser, *to think.* **travailler**, *to work.*
bien, *well.* **sage**, *wise;* (of a child) *good, well-behaved.*

IMPERATIVE.

The imperative of any regular verb is formed from the present indicative. In the 1st conjugation, **-s** of the second person singular is dropped.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	
porte, *carry.*	**portons**, *let us carry.*	**portez**, *carry.*

1. Je cherche mes crayons; ils sont perdus. 2. Aimez-vous les fleurs? 3. Est-ce que tout le monde aime les jardins? 4. Ne cachez pas les cahiers de mes élèves, mon ami. 5. Travaillez chez vous. 6. Ne parlez pas toujours. 7. Nous sommes allés chez elle, mais elle était (*was*) sortie avec vous. 8. Cette femme est riche, mais elle travaille une heure dans son jardin tous les jours. 9. Je trouve que votre frère est très sage; il travaille bien. 10. Fermons ces fenêtres. 11. Nous ne fermons pas les portes. 12. Vous cachez toujours mes plumes; où sont-elles? 13. Qui cache les miennes? 14. Demeurez-vous près d'ici? 15. Qui pleure? 16. Ne trouvez-vous pas ces enfants sages? 17. Oui, ils sont toujours sages. 18. Ne pleure pas, mon petit ami.

[1] Notice this meaning of **trouver**: **Comment trouvez-vous mon chapeau?** *How do you like my hat?* or *What do you think of my hat?* Distinguish from **aimer** and **penser**.

For Oral Drill.—1. He is visiting; he is visited. 2. She is not visiting; she is not visited. 3. He has visited; he has not visited. 4. She does visit; she does not visit. 5. Does he visit? 6. Does he not visit? 7. We visit; we are visiting. 8. We do visit; we do not visit. 9. We are visited; we are not visited.

1. Where do you live? 2. Where do we live? 3. Do they live near the school? 4. Are you looking for your pen or pencil? 5. Are you working? 6. Are all the pupils of this class working? 7. Do you not consider these sentences very easy? 8. Am I speaking of you or of her? 9. Are you speaking of him or of me? 10. Who is talking? 11. Where did you leave your books? 12. Who has hidden mine? 13. Does she leave hers at home? 14. Have you brought all of yours? 15. Does a boy wear or take off his hat in the house? 16. Do not[1] cry, my child. 17. He is speaking of your friends and mine. 18. We close all the doors and windows every evening. 19. I do not close mine. 20. Close that window near the door and this one too.

29

Personal Pronouns used as Direct Objects.

Personal pronouns used as objects always precede the verb, except in an *affirmative* command.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
me, *me.*	**nous**, *us.*
te, *thee, you.*	**vous**, *you.*
le, *him, it.*	**les** (m. & f.) *them.*
la, *her, it.*	

[1] Use second singular in addressing a child. See French sentence 18 of this lesson.

Me, te, le, la, standing before a *verb,* become **m', t', l'** before a vowel or *h* mute.

M'a-t-il vu, *has he seen me?*

Où sont-ils? Les voilà. *Where are they? There they are.*
Me voici, *here I am.*
Donnez-le à votre père, *give it to your father.*
But **Ne le donnez pas à votre père,** *do not give it to your father.*

Notice that a pronoun, whether subject or object, placed after a verb is connected with it by a hyphen.

accepter, *to accept.*
apporter, *to bring.*
jouer, *to play.*
compter, *to count.*
entrer (dans), *to enter, to go* or *come in.*
louer, *to praise.*
une excuse, *an excuse.*
le plaisir, *the pleasure.*
avec plaisir, *with pleasure.*
s'il vous plaît, *if you please, please.*
gronder, *to scold.*
regarder, *to look at.*
remarquer, *to notice.*
rester, *to stay, to remain.*
tomber, *to fall.*
blâmer, *to blame.*
préparer, *to prepare, to get ready beforehand.*
quelquefois, *sometimes.*
maintenant, *now.*

1. Acceptez-vous ce joli cadeau? 2. Je l'accepte maintenant avec plaisir. 3. Je ne vous ai pas vu ce matin. 4. Votre cousin est arrivé, mais je ne l'ai pas vu. 5. Il a perdu sa grammaire; il la cherche maintenant. 6. Avez-vous pris mes livres? 7. Oui, monsieur, je les ai pris et je les ai mis sur cette petite table qui est près de la fenêtre. 8. Les voici. 9. Otez-les. 10. Vous travaillez quelquefois, n'est-ce pas? 11. Voilà votre habit noir; le cherchez-vous? 12. Aimez-vous les livres? 13. Je les aime bien. 14. Ne les aimez-vous pas? 15. Mon père apporte un joli cadeau à ma sœur Marie. 16. Est-ce que votre mère vous blâme? 17. Elle ne me blâme pas, mais elle vous blâme.

(*A*) 1. Here is a book; I bought it for you. 2. When he is naughty, I scold him. 3. Is n't he always good?

4. Where is my book? I have lost it. 5. I have n't it now. 6. Have you seen it? 7. Have n't you found it yet? 8. Here it is. 9. There you are. 10. Where are the books that I put on this boy's desk? 11. You did not put them on his desk; here they are on mine. 12. John has found a penknife; he has put it into his pocket. 13. Now, show me the chalk, please. 14. With pleasure; there it is in the box. 15. Don't look at me, look at her. 16. I do not like his excuse, and I do not accept it. 17. Accept my excuses. 18. I do accept them very often. 19. That door is open; shut it. 20. Your parents love you, love them. 21. Here are the rules; notice them. 22. We find them easy. 23. Don't hide it. 24. Count your sentences. 25. Don't scold us always; scold her sometimes.

(*B*) 1. Here is an exercise; did I write it? 2. Where are you now? 3. Where am I? 4. Where is Mr. S.? 5. Where is Miss M.? 6. Are you looking at me? 7. Am I looking at you? 8. Am I looking at you now? 9. Are you not looking for him? 10. She has lost her pencil; have you seen it? 11. Have n't you noticed it? 12. Are you looking for it? 13. Do you bring your note-books every day? 14. Who has taken them? 15. Have you my watch? 16. Has he it? 17. Where is it, please? 18. Does the man close these windows every evening? 19. Do you always prepare your lessons? 20. Have you written this exercise? 21. Has everybody written it? 22. This boy's mother is kind to (*pour*) him; does he love her? 23. Are you playing or working? 24. Do I praise you often?

Ne l'avez vous pas trouvé?
Voici un exercice; l'ai je ecris?
Ne cherchez vous pas pour lui?
Qu'est elle (reffering to watch) s'il vous plait?
Préparez vous toujours vos leçons?

30

Past Participle with Avoir.

A past participle used with the verb **avoir** agrees with the direct object when the object precedes the verb.

Ma sœur est arrivée ; l'avez-vous vue ? *My sister has arrived ; have you seen her ?*

Nous a-t-il vus, *has he seen us ?*

Voici une montre ; mon père l'a achetée hier. *Here is a watch ; my father bought it yesterday.*

Il a reçu les lettres que j'ai écrites ; les avez-vous lues ?
He has received the letters that I wrote ; did you read them ?

If there is no direct object or if it follows the verb, the past participle with **avoir** remains unchanged.

Nous avons joué, *we have played.*
J'ai vu votre sœur, *I saw your sister.*
Il a acheté une montre, *he bought a watch.*
Elle a reçu mes lettres, *she got my letters.*

Recall rule for agreement with **être** (Lesson 25).

excuser, *to excuse.*	**une histoire,** *a history, a story.*
raconter, *to relate, to tell.*	**intéressant,** *interesting.*
chanter, *to sing.*	**pourquoi,** *why.*
une chanson, *a song.*	**parce que,** *because.*

1. Ils ont chanté les mêmes chansons. 2. Elles sont venues. 3. Ils ont lu tous les livres que j'ai prêtés l'autre jour à leur père. 4. Les avez-vous trouvés intéressants ? 5. Pourquoi les avez-vous lus ? 6. Où as-tu mis ses autres plumes ? 7. Je les ai mises dans cette petite boîte verte. 8. Est-ce que vous ne les avez pas trouvées ? 9. Ernest a acheté une montre et une canne. 10. Où les a-t-il achetées ? 11. Vous avez ouvert mes fenêtres. 12. Pardon, madame, je ne les ai pas ouvertes,

je les ai fermées. 13. A-t-elle eu ma plume? 14. Elle ne l'a pas eue. 15. L'a-t-elle vue? 16. Pourquoi cette petite fille est-elle si méchante? 17. Elle n'est pas méchante, elle est très sage. 18. Pourquoi pleure-t-elle toujours? 19. Elle est triste, parce que son père et sa mère sont morts.

(*A*) 1. We like all the stories you tell.[1] 2. They liked all the stories you told.[2] 3. We have found them interesting.[3] 4. He does not lend his note-book to the other pupils.[4] 5. He has often shown it to his friends.[5] 6. Tell[1] us a little story or sing[1] us a little song. 7. Our parents always love us.[6] 8. Where did I leave my hat and coat? 9. You left them in the garden. 10. The house that he has sold is a large one. 11. The book that I read is not very interesting. 12. The woman that wrote the letter we received yesterday arrived this morning. 13. That boy who is sitting near you is not looking at his book, he is looking at me. 14. There is your book, sir; look at it.[7] 15. Do not look at me.[7]

(*B*) 1. Do you like this story? 2. Who told it? 3. Did you tell it? 4. Who wrote this letter? 5. Did your brother write it? 6. Where are the apples you brought to school this morning? 7. I put them on the table or into a box, I think; who took them? 8. Did you eat them? 9. Did she sing this song? 10. Is she singing to-day the same songs she sang yesterday?[9] 11. Why do I scold you sometimes? 12. Why did I this morning? 13. Did I scold her because she did not write the same sentences as the other pupils?[10] 14. She has written them now, has n't she? 15. Have the other pupils written theirs? 16. Here is the history.; don't you find it interesting? 17. Do you like the songs they sing? 18. Have you excused us?

[1] Same construction as **montrez-nous** in Lesson 19.

31

Plural of Nouns and Adjectives.

Most nouns and adjectives form their plural, as in English, by adding **s**.

l'éventail (m.), *the fan.* **les éventails**, *the fans.*

Exceptions: — 1. Nouns and adjectives ending in **-s**, **-x**, or **-z**, remain unchanged in the plural:

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
le fils, *the son.* M	**les fils**, *the sons.*
l'omnibus (m.), *the omnibus.*	**les omnibus**, *the omnibuses*
la voix, *the voice.* F	**les voix**, *the voices.*
le nez, *the nose.* M	**les nez**, *the noses.*
heureux, (M)	**heureux**, *happy, fortunate.*

2. Nouns and adjectives ending in **-au**, **-eu**, and seven nouns in **-ou**,[1] add **x** to form the plural:

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
le chapeau, *the hat.* M	**les chapeaux**, *the hats.*
le feu, *the fire.* M	**les feux**, *the fires.*
un cheveu, *a hair.* M	**les cheveux**, *the hair.*
beau (m.),	**beaux** (m.), *beautiful, handsome,*
belle (f.),	**belles** (f.), *fine.*
le bijou, *the jewel.* M	**les bijoux**, *the jewels.*
le joujou, *the toy, plaything* M	**les joujoux**, *the toys, playthings.*

The plural of the adjective **bleu** is regular: **bleus**.

3. Most nouns and adjectives ending in **-al** change **-al** into **-aux**.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
le cheval, *the horse.* M	**les chevaux**, *the horses.*
l'animal, *the animal.* M	**les animaux**, *the animals.*
égal,	**égaux**, *equal.*

The plural of **bal** (m.), *ball* (a dance) is regular: **bals**.

[1] A complete list is given on page 303. For the plural of foreign and compound nouns, see Appendix, page 304.

4. Eight nouns in **-ail** change **ail** into **aux**:[1]

le travail, *the work, the labor.*	**les travaux**, *the works, the labors.*
le corail, *the coral.*	**les coraux**, *the corals.*

5. **Aïeul, ciel,** and **œil** are irregular.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
aïeul, *grandfather.*	**aïeuls**, *grandfathers.*
aïeul, *ancestor.*	**aïeux**, *ancestors.*
ciel, *sky.*	**ciels**, *skies* (of painting).
ciel, *sky, heaven.*	**cieux**, *skies, heavens.*
œil, *eye.*	**yeux**, *eyes.*

1. Les coraux qu'il a achetés sont très beaux. 2. Ces voix sont très gaies. 3. Vos cheveux sont plus beaux que les miens et que ceux de ma sœur. 4. Où avez-vous trouvé ces grands chapeaux? 5. Je les ai trouvés chez votre voisin. 6. Les enfants qui ont joué avec moi aujourd'hui sont heureux; ils sont plus heureux que moi. 7. Louis et Jean sont dans la même classe. 8. Aimes-tu tes jolis joujoux? 9. Les tiens sont plus jolis que les miens. 10. Vos travaux sont plus utiles que les leurs. 11. Je pense que vous aimez les animaux. 12. N'acceptez-vous pas ces jolis cadeaux? 13. Avez-vous vu mes beaux chevaux? 14. Où sont-ils? 15. Les voilà.

1. Your hats are smaller than ours. 2. This animal is very little. 3. These little animals are beautiful and useful. 4. When did you buy these gifts? 5. Did you buy them for me? 6. Her eyes and mine are blue. 7. The sky is blue. 8. Have you seen the beautiful corals that she has received? 9. Do they sing because they are happy? 10. Why are they not happy? 11. Their father and mother have not come back from London. 12. All of her jewels are beautiful. 13. Have you

[1] A complete list is given on page 303.

seen his horses? 14. Have you seen mine? 15. Your hair is prettier than hers or her brother's. 16. Where do you find those beautiful red flowers? 17. I am always looking for them. 18. The works of these men are not very useful. 19. Her toys are prettier than her brother's.

32

Second Conjugation.

In verbs of the second conjugation the infinitive ends in **-ir**, and the past participle in **-i**.

finir, *to finish;* **fini**, *finished.*

In regular verbs of this conjugation, **-iss** is inserted before the ending of the present participle: **finissant**, *finishing.*

PRESENT INDICATIVE.

TERMINATIONS: **-is, -is, -it, -issons, -issez, -issent.**

je finis, *I finish, I am finishing,*	**nous finissons.**
tu finis. *I do finish.*	**vous finissez.**
il or **elle finit.**	**ils** or **elles finissent.**

IMPERATIVE.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
finis, *finish.*	**finissons**, *let us finish.*	**finissez**, *finish.*

punir, *to punish.*	**le tableau**,[1] *the picture.*
bâtir, *to build.*	**le portrait**, *the portrait.*
agir, *to act.*	**la ville**, *the city, the town.*
salir, *to soil.*	**le village**, *the village.*
saisir, *to seize.*	**le prix**, *the price, the prize.*
choisir, *to choose.*	**le jeu**, *the game, play.*
mal, *badly.*	**le bateau**, *the boat.*
ainsi, *thus, so.*	**le couteau**, *the knife.*
principal, *principal.*	**le général**, *the general.*
le parent, *the parent, the relative.*	**le journal**, *the newspaper.*

[1] **le tableau noir** (or **le tableau**, if there is no chance for ambiguity), *the blackboard.*

1. Le général finit son journal. 2. Les généraux finissent leurs journaux. 3. Est-ce votre oncle qui bâtit cette maison? 4. Non, c'est le médecin; il est devenu bien riche. 5. Voici deux grands couteaux; Jean choisit celui-là, et son frère choisit celui-ci. 6. Punissez-vous souvent les enfants qui sont sages? 7. Non, mon ami, mais je punis quelquefois les méchants enfants. 8. N'agissez pas ainsi. 9. Cette enfant salit sa robe tous les jours. 10. Pourquoi punit-elle ce petit garçon? 11. Parce qu'il saisit toujours les fleurs de sa sœur. 12. Cet homme a bâti deux maisons dans le village où vous demeurez. 13. Les enfants aiment bien les jeux. 14. Elle est moins souvent punie que son frère. 15. A-t-il vu les livres que nous avons choisis?

For Oral Drill. — 1. They choose; they are choosing. 2. They do not choose; they are not choosing. 3. Are you choosing; are you chosen? 4. Are you not choosing; are you not chosen? 5. She chooses; she has chosen. 6. She is choosing; she is chosen. 7. We choose; we have not chosen. 8. She has been chosen; she has not been chosen. 9. Does she choose?

1. Of all their animals, their white horses are the most beautiful. 2. Are your parents building that house? 3. Are you speaking of this house or that? 4. He is choosing these knives for the boys. 5. Have you seen the boat that he has built? 6. The pictures that he has brought from Paris are finer than ours. 7. Is this your aunt's portrait or your mother's? 8. I am choosing the prizes that I give to the pupils who work well. 9. This woman's children act badly. 10. Why do they act so? 11. Why does she punish us? 12. Our newspapers are better than yours. 13. All of the generals have left for

Paris; they have left their horses here. 14. She is finishing her work; are you finishing yours? 15. Do you like the games these children play? 16. She always punishes her daughters when they soil their dresses.

33

Nouns in General Statement.

A noun used in a general sense requires the definite article in French.

J'aime les chiens, *I am fond of dogs* (in general).
Le café est meilleur que le thé, *coffee is better than tea.*
Les chevaux sont utiles à l'homme (or **aux hommes**), *horses are useful to man.*

le soldat, *the soldier.*	**obéir** (à), *to obey.*[1]
un oiseau, *a bird.*	**désobéir** (à), *to disobey.*
la vie, *the life, living.*	**cher** (m.), **chère** (f.), *dear.*
l'argent (m.), *silver, money.*	
l'or (m.), *gold.*	**rare**, *rare.*
le café, *coffee.*	**court**, *short.*
le thé, *tea.*	**nombreux**, *numerous.*
peut-être, *perhaps.*	**malheureux**, *unhappy, unfortunate.*

1. Tout le monde aime l'argent. 2. Les enfants sages ne désobéissent pas à leurs parents. 3. Ils obéissent toujours. 4. La vie d'un oiseau est courte. 5. La vie est plus chère à Londres qu'à Paris. 6. Les omnibus sont plus nombreux à Paris qu'à Rome. 7. Votre plume est peut-être meilleure que mon crayon. 8. Le chien est l'ami de l'homme. 9. Aimez-vous les chevaux noirs? 10. Les yeux bruns sont toujours bons. 11. Le vert est une jolie couleur. 12. Les pommes vertes ne sont pas bonnes. 13. Les enfants aiment les soldats.

[1] **Obéir** and **désobéir** take the dative case: either an indirect pronoun object or **à** before a noun object.

1. A lawyer is less useful than a doctor. 2. Doctors are more useful than lawyers. 3. Life is short. 4. Gold and silver are useful. 5. Silver is perhaps more useful than gold. 6. Tea is good, but I think that coffee is better. 7. This dog obeys the little boy. 8. My sister is fond of birds. 9. I like them too. 10. Horses are more useful than all the other animals. 11. Cats love birds. 12. Do birds love cats? 13. Do not dogs love cats? 14. Are birds numerous here? 15. Omnibuses are still numerous in Paris. 16. Are you fond of animals? 17. Do you disobey your parents? 18. Always obey your father and mother. 19. Does everybody care for flowers? 20. Is living dearer in this town than in that? 21. Do I always accept excuses? 22. Boys like work. 23. Those who do not work are often unhappy. 24. Our soldiers always obey their generals.

34

Nouns of Quantity.

A noun of measure or quantity requires the preposition **de** (**d'**) without the article before the noun limited: **une paire de chevaux**, *a pair of horses.*

Exception: **La plupart**, *most*, takes **de** and the article before the noun. **La plupart des hommes**, *most men.*

la douzaine, *the dozen.*
la demi-douzaine, *the half-dozen.*
la livre, *the pound.*
la demi-livre, *the half-pound.*
un panier, *a basket.*
un verre, *a glass.*
une tasse; *a cup.*
une carafe, *a carafe, a decanter.*
la plupart, *most, the greater part.*
un œuf, *an egg.*
le sucre, *the sugar.*
la fraise, *the strawberry.*
le beurre, *the butter.*
le lait, *the milk.*
le vin, *the wine.*
la bière, *the beer.*

la bouteille, *the bottle.*
un morceau,[1] *a piece.*
remplir, *to fill.*
voulez-vous,[2] *do you wish, will you have?*

1. Apportez-moi une tasse de café et un verre d'eau. 2. Donnez-moi encore une tasse de thé. 3. Le père de Jean a acheté une douzaine de bouteilles de vin. 4. Il a apporté une carafe d'eau. 5. J'ai donné deux paniers de poires à la femme du pauvre homme. 6. Voulez-vous une livre de beurre ou une douzaine d'œufs? 7. Il a pris une tasse de lait. 8. Donnez-moi une demi-douzaine de mouchoirs. 9. Il remplit nos verres. 10. Ma cousine a pris un verre de vin, et mon cousin un verre de bière. 11. Il a offert un beau cadeau au jeune homme qui a trouvé sa montre. 12. L'a-t-il accepté? 13. Voici un panier de pommes pour votre mère. 14. La plupart des femmes aiment les fleurs.

(*A*) 1. She bought a dozen eggs on Monday. 2. Who fills the carafe? 3. I do (I fill it). 4. Will you have a glass of water or a cup of milk? 5. They have brought a half-pound of tea and two pounds of butter. 6. They have also brought three pounds of sugar and four baskets of strawberries. 7. My sister has bought a half-dozen white handkerchiefs for her friend Louise. 8. Bring me a carafe of water. 9. There are two dozen pupils in his class. 10. Here is a cup of coffee for you. 11. Do not fill my glass, fill hers. 12. There it is. 13. You have lost your pen and ink, but I have n't seen them. 14. Look for them. 15. Won't you have mine? 16. Most men work (*pl.*) every day.

[1] Notice that **morceau** is a fragment, a morsel, while **pièce** is usually a complete whole. **Un morceau de beurre; une piece d'or (ou de cinq francs).**

[2] Followed by an infinitive, *will you?* **Voulez-vous rester ici**, *will you stay here?*

(*B*) 1. Are you filling my glass? 2. Are you filling hers? 3. Who is filling it? 4. Did he take a glass of water or wine? 5. What did you take? 6. Where is my chalk? 7. Who has taken my bottle of ink? 8. Did you take it? 9. Did you see it? 10. Did I put it into the drawer? 11. Where is the box of pens? 12. Is it on this table? 13. Have I a dozen pens or pencils? 14. Did you take a cup of coffee or a glass of milk this morning? 15. What have you in your pocket?

35

Third Conjugation.

In verbs of the third conjugation the infinitive ends in **-oir**, and the past participle in **-u**.

recevoir, *to receive;* **recevant**, *receiving;* **reçu**, *received.*

PRESENT INDICATIVE.

TERMINATIONS: **-s, -s, -t, -ons, -ez, -ent.**

je reçois, *I receive, I do receive,* **nous recevons.**
tu reçois. *I am receiving.* **vous recevez.**
il reçoit. **ils reçoivent.**

IMPERATIVE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
reçois, *receive.*	**recevons**, *let us receive.* **recevez**, *receive.*

Nouns of Material.

A noun, used to denote the material of which an object is made, follows the name of the object and is preceded by **de** without the article:

une montre d'or, *a gold watch.*
une robe de soie, *a silk dress.*
un chemin de fer, *a railroad.*

décevoir, *to deceive.*
devoir, *to owe* (past participle, **dû** (m.), **due** (f.).)[1]
une paire, *a pair.*
le fer, *the iron.*
l'acier (m.), *the steel.*
le fer-blanc, *the tin.*
le cuivre, *the copper.*
le marbre, *the marble.*
le bois, *the wood.*
la soie, *the silk.*
la paille, *the straw.*
le cuir, *the leather.*
une bottine, *a boot.*
un soulier, *a shoe.*
un gant, *a glove.*
un sac, *a bag.*
une chaîne, *a chain.*
une fourchette, *a fork.*
une cuiller, *a spoon.*
une assiette, *a plate.*
un chemin, *a road.*

1. Nous avons une douzaine de couteaux d'argent. 2. Elle a acheté une belle robe de soie. 3. Nous n'avons pas nos gants. 4. Les avez-vous? 5. Voulez-vous cette demi-douzaine de cuillers d'argent? 6. Donnez-moi aussi deux douzaines et demie de couteaux d'acier. 7. Marie, apportez-nous trois tasses de thé, trois verres d'eau, et le sucre. 8. Voici un panier de fraises. 9. J'accepte ce cadeau avec plaisir. 10. Nos amis sont venus par (*by*) chemin de fer. 11. Les avez-vous vus? 12. Pas encore. 13. Où sont-ils maintenant? 14. Ils visitent leur oncle à Chicago. 15. Apportez-nous une livre de café, s'il vous plaît.

For Oral Drill.—1. I receive; I am not receiving. 2. We receive; let us not receive. 3. He receives; he does not receive. 4. We are not receiving; let us receive. 5. They receive; do they receive? 6. Does she receive? 7. Is she not receiving? 8. Receive; do not receive.

(*A*) 1. He owes ten francs to his brother. 2. You owe yours six francs, I think. 3. We have bought a dozen silver forks and a half-dozen plates. 4. They re-

[1] The circumflex accent is placed over the past part. masc. **dû** to distinguish it from **du**, *of the.*

ceive these beautiful gifts with pleasure. 5. She receives every week two or three interesting letters from her brother who is now in London. 6. Here is your pair of silk gloves. 7. Yes, I left them here. 8. I have a silver pen-holder and a gold pen. 9. Here is your leather bag. 10. Bring us a half-dozen silver spoons, please. 11. I do not wear my straw hat now. 12. This man loves everybody. 13. Everybody loves him. 14. Will you have a pair of boots or shoes? 15. I have bought a dozen boxes of steel pens for the pupils of this school. 16. She receives her friends every evening. 17. He is very rich; he owes it to his father. 18. Let us receive him well.

(*B*) 1. Does your father receive his papers every day or every week? 2. Where are the pears I bought? 3. Have you eaten them? 4. Who put them into this paper bag? 5. What have you in that tin box, sir? 6. Is iron more useful than steel? 7. Is copper still more useful? 8. Who has a gold watch? 9. Where is your gold chain? 10. Did you leave it at home? 11. She likes wooden tables; do you like them too? 12. Do you like marble tables? 13. Is there a railroad in this town? 14. Is it near this house? 15. Have you brought that pair of boots for me?

36

Adverbs of Quantity.

An adverb of quantity (like a noun of quantity) requires **de** without the article before the noun limited:

beaucoup de pommes, *many apples*

Exception: **bien**, *much, many*, takes **de** and the article before the noun.

bien du monde, *many people*: **bien des hommes**, *many men*.

combien, *how much? how many?*
beaucoup, *much, a great deal, plenty, many.*
trop, *too much, too, too many.*
tant, *so much, so many.*
autant, *as much, as many.*
assez, *enough.*
plus, *more.*
moins, *less, fewer.*
peu, *little, few.* (as a noun, M)
un peu, *a little, a few.*

le pain, *the bread.*
la viande, *the meat.*
le sel, *the salt.*
le poivre, *the pepper.*
le fromage, *the cheese.*
la faute, *the fault, the mistake.*
couper, *to cut.*
bu, *drunk.* } past
fait, *made, done.* } participles.
concevoir, *to conceive.*
apercevoir, *to perceive.*
prenez, *take.*

que, conj., *than, as* (at the beginning of a second term of a comparison).

plusieurs, *several* (an invariable adjective, hence no **de**).
plusieurs livres, *several books.*

Beaucoup is never preceded by a modifier like **très** or **trop**, but it is possible to say **beaucoup plus** (*much more* or *far more*), **beaucoup moins** (*much less* or *far less*), and **beaucoup trop** (*far too, far too much, far too many*).

Assez always precedes the noun: **assez de fleurs**, *flowers enough.*

Autant, and not **tant**, is used both affirmatively and negatively in a comparison: **Il n'a pas autant de plumes que de crayons**, *he has not so many pens as pencils.* **Vous avez tant de beaux tableaux!** *You have so many beautiful pictures!*

Peu, *little*, denotes quantity, while **petit** denotes size; as a noun, **peu** is always masculine: **un peu d'eau**, *a little water.*

1. Voulez-vous un peu de pain et de[1] fromage? 2. Prenez plus de beurre. 3. Nos voisins ont moins d'enfants que les vôtres. 4. Avez-vous un peu moins de sel que moi? 5. Nous avons assez de crayons, mais peu de plumes. 6. J'ai plus de pain que vous, mais vous n'avez pas autant de lait que moi. 7. Prenez un peu plus de beurre. 8. Recevez-vous beaucoup d'argent? 9. Reçoit-elle bien du monde? 10. Combien d'enfants

[1] Recall rule for repetition of **de**, page 32. The noun or adverb of quantity need not be repeated.

a-t-elle? 11. Elle a cinq enfants: trois filles et deux fils. 12. Louise a moins d'amies que votre sœur. 13. Avez-vous pris autant de paniers de fraises que lui? 14. Cet enfant a bu trop de lait. 15. Il a moins de crayons que Jeanne, mais il a plus de livres. 16. Voulez-vous un peu plus de poivre?

1. There are several blackboards in this class-room. 2. How much money does he receive? 3. He receives 5000 francs from his father and a thousand from his mother. 4. Have you not meat enough? 5. I have too much cheese and too little bread. 6. I do not conceive why she has gone away. 7. Give us a little bread and butter, please. 8. Take a little more of this meat; it is very good. 9. How many dozen baskets of strawberries has he? 10. Will you have more sugar or salt? 11. There are many railroads here, are there not?[1] 12. You have made too many mistakes in this exercise. 13. John has made far fewer mistakes than you. 14. I perceive three mistakes in my own. 15. He has drunk a cup of coffee and eaten a small piece of bread and a little meat. 16. Do you owe more money than I (*moi*)? 17. There are not so many flowers in this garden as in that. 18. There are too many doors and windows in that house. 19. That man has plenty of friends, but too little money. 20. He is so rich and has so many friends, — why is he so sad?

37

Pronoun En.

When, after a number (**un, deux,** etc.), after a noun of measure (**douzaine, bouteille,** etc.), or after an adverb

[1] See page 18, footnote.

of quantity (**beaucoup, trop, peu,** etc.), the noun limited is not expressed, this noun must be represented by the pronoun **en** (*of it, of them*). **En** always stands next before the verb, except in the imperative affirmative.

Combien de sœurs avez-vous ? J'en ai une. *How many sisters have you ? I have one.*

Ont-ils acheté assez de beurre ? Ils en ont trop acheté. *Did they buy butter enough ? They bought too much.*

Ils en ont acheté huit livres, *they bought eight pounds.*

le maître, *the master, the teacher.*
le magasin, *the store.*
le porte-monnaie, *the purse.*
le reste, *the rest (remainder).*
étudier, *to study.*
expliquer, *to explain.*
écouter, *to listen* (takes a direct object).
rougir, *to blush.*
déjà, *already.*

plein, *full.*
content, *glad, contented.*
sûr, *sure.*
le besoin, *the need.*
avoir besoin (de), *to need.*
la honte, *the shame.*
avoir honte (de), *to be ashamed.*
la peur, *the fear.*
avoir peur (de), *to be afraid.*

1. Combien de plumes y a-t-il dans ces deux boîtes ? 2. Il y en a 200 dans celle-ci, et 150 dans celle-là. 3. Ecoutez toujours vos maîtres. 4. Pourquoi rougissez-vous ? 5. En avez-vous honte ? 6. Donnez un peu plus d'argent à votre sœur. 7. Je n'en ai pas assez. 8. En êtes-vous sûr ? 9. Il y a quatre fenêtres dans cette salle. 10. Il en a fermé deux et il a laissé les deux autres ouvertes. 11. Quand je raconte une histoire intéressante, pourquoi n'écoutez-vous pas ? 12. J'ai perdu mon porte-monnaie dans un grand magasin près de la Seine. 13. Avez-vous bien étudié aujourd'hui ? 14. Il y a plusieurs fautes dans sa lettre, mais la vôtre en est pleine. 15. J'en ai compté quatorze ou quinze.

1. That man has too much money, and I haven't enough. 2. Are there sixty or seventy minutes in an hour ? 3. There are sixty. 4. Where is the rest of my

orange? 5. You have eaten half of it. 6. Are you sure of it? 7. I am sure of it. 8. Where are my gold-pieces? 9. Here are two. 10. Why do you not explain these rules? 11. I have already explained most of them. 12. You do not listen. 13. Who does not listen? 14. One of those boys is n't listening. 15. There is the boy, — look at him. 16. Yes, there he is. 17. Is he ashamed of it? 18. No, he is glad of it. 19. How many books have you at home? 20. I have two hundred. 21. You have enough, I think. 22. Do you need these books? 23. I do. 24. Do you? 25. Has he money enough? 26. His pockets are full. 27. He has too much perhaps. 28. I am afraid so. 29. Always study well (study always well).

38

Partitive Article and Pronoun.

(1) *Some* or *any*, whether expressed or understood before a noun in English, is regularly expressed in French by **de** and the definite article: **du, de la, de l', des.**[1] (For exceptions, see Lessons 39 and 40.)

Elle a apporté du pain et de la viande, *she has brought bread and meat.*

Les chevaux sont des animaux, *horses are animals.*

(2) When *some* or *any* (expressed or understood) is not followed by its noun, it is expressed by **en** (*of it, of them*).

Avez-vous des fleurs? *Have you any flowers?*
Oui, j'en ai, *yes, I have* (*some*).
Il n'en a pas, *he has n't any, he has none.*
Achetez-en, *buy some.*

[1] The plural of this construction is also the plural of *a* or *an:* **un livre** *a book;* **des livres**, *books.*

Y en a-t-il, *are there any?*
N'y en a-t-il pas, *are there none?* or *are there not any?*

la rose, *the rose.*
la tulipe, *the tulip.*
le muguet, *the lily-of-the-valley.*
le fruit, *the fruit.*
un ananas, *a pine-apple.*
une banane, *a banana.*
la framboise, *the raspberry.*
la crême, *the cream.*
la farine, *the flour.*
le légume, *the vegetable.*
une pomme de terre, *a potato.*
un insecte, *an insect.*
une mouche, *a fly.*
une abeille, *a bee.*
le miel, *the honey.*
le métal, *the metal.*
le mur, *the wall.*
mûr, *ripe.*
mûrir, *to ripen, to get ripe.*
à présent, *now, at present.*

1. Voulez-vous des tulipes ou des roses? 2. Donnez-nous du pain, de la viande et de l'eau. 3. Apportez-nous aussi de la crême pour nos fraises. 4. A-t-elle acheté des légumes? 5. Elle en a beaucoup acheté. 6. A-t-il pris du sel ou du poivre? 7. Cet homme a vendu de l'encre, du papier, des plumes, et des crayons. 8. Y a-t-il des pommes de terre dans ce panier? 9. Non, madame, il n'y en a pas. 10. Voici des muguets près de ce mur. 11. La vie d'un oiseau est courte. 12. A-t-il bu de l'eau ou du vin ce matin? 13. Voulez-vous de la crême? 14. Les mouches et les abeilles sont des insectes. 15. Tout le monde aime le miel.

(*A*) 1. There are metals that are far more useful than gold. 2. I am sure that there are a great many. 3. Gold and silver are metals. 4. Will you have cream or milk in your coffee? 5. Will you have sugar too? 6. Cream is better than milk. 7. Roses and tulips are flowers. 8. Roses are more beautiful than tulips. 9. We think that lilies of the valley are beautiful too. 10. That is because (*C'est que*) you have some in your garden. 11. There are some in mine, but there are none in hers. 12. Bees love flowers. 13. Bees make honey.

14. Will you have sugar or honey on your bread? 15. Here are pine-apples; will you have some? 16. Flies and bees are insects. 17. There are eggs, bananas, and a pound and a half of tea in her basket. 18. She has also bought potatoes and twenty or twenty-one pounds of flour. 19. Apples are getting ripe. 20. There are some red apples that are ripe already (already ripe). 21. Here are a half-dozen.

(*B*) 1. Have you any books? 2. Have you pencils? 3. Are there roses on your table? 4. Are there any in the garden? 5. Do you like strawberries? 6. Who likes raspberries? 7. Is there any ink in this ink-well? 8. Is there any in yours? 9. Is there none in hers? 10. Have you brought pears or bananas to school to-day? 11. Are strawberries ripe now? 12. Have you some money for me? 13. Has he some? 14. Have n't you any? 15. Has she none? 16. Where is your money? 17. Did you leave it at home? 18. How many gold watches have you? 19. What is the color of lilies of the valley? 20. The flowers are white; what color are the leaves? 21. Do you like them? 22. Have you any? 23. Is there flour in that paper bag? 24. Are the walls of this garden high? 25. Name a vegetable. 26. Name some fruits. 27. Name some flowers.

39

Fourth Conjugation.

In verbs of the fourth conjugation the infinitive ends in **-re**, and the past participle in **-u**.

vendre, *to sell;* **vendant**, *selling;* **vendu**, *sold.*

PRESENT INDICATIVE.

TERMINATIONS: **-s, -s,(-t), -ons, -ez, -ent.**

The ending **-t** of the 3d person singular is dropped after **c, d, t.**[1] As the stems of all the regular verbs of this conjugation, except **rompre**, *to break*, end in **d**, the verb **vendre** is given as a model.

je vends, *I sell, I do sell,*	**nous vendons.**
tu vends. *I am selling.*	**vous vendez.**
il vend.	**ils vendent.**

IMPERATIVE.

vends, *sell.* **vendons**, *let us sell.* **vendez**, *sell.*

On, *one, we, you, they, people.*

The indefinite pronoun **on**, even when plural in meaning, is used only as the subject of a verb in the third person singular. In many cases it is used where the passive form is used in English.

On vend des pommes ici, *they sell apples here.*
On chante, parce que l'on[2] **est heureux**, *one sings (we sing) because one is (we are) happy.*
Où trouve-t-on[3] **des aiguilles**, *where do you find needles?*
Où vend-on du lait et de la crême, *where are milk and cream sold?*
On parle français ici, / **Ici on parle français,** } *French spoken here.*

la dentelle, *the lace.*	**le lit**, *the bed.*
la mousseline, *the muslin.*	**la question**, *the question.*
le ruban, *the ribbon.*	**la réponse**, *the answer.*
le fil, *the thread.*	**répondre (à)**, *to answer.*

[1] In the irregular verb **mettre**, *to put:* **je mets, tu mets, il met**; in **vaincre**, *to conquer*, also irregular: **je vaincs, tu vaincs, il vainc.**

[2] Notice that **l'on** may be used instead of **on** whenever it sounds better. It is often used after **et, ou, où, que, lorsque, pourquoi, si**, etc., but not when the following word begins with **l.**

[3] Like **il** and **elle** in a question (Lesson 3), **on** is joined by **-t-** to a verb ending in a vowel.

une aiguille, *a needle.*
une épingle, *a pin.*
un dé, *a thimble.*
des ciseaux (m.), *scissors.*
la laine, *the wool.*
le drap, *the cloth, the sheet* (of a bed).
rendre, *to give back, to return.*
entendre, *to hear.*
attendre, *to wait, to wait for.*
perdre, *to lose, to waste.*
certainement, *certainly.*
presque, *almost, nearly.*

1. Répondez-vous aux lettres de votre cousine? 2. Répond-on toujours à vos questions? 3. Oui, presque toujours. 4. Quand je joue avec mon frère, je perds souvent. 5. Oui, quand on joue avec lui, on perd presque toujours. 6. Où vend-on des rubans? 7. On en vend ici. 8. On vend aussi des aiguilles, des épingles et du fil, n'est-ce pas? 9. Pourquoi attend-on ici? 10. On attend des lettres. 11. Il attend des réponses aux lettres qu'il a déjà écrites. 12. On trouve que la vie est chère dans les grandes villes. 13. Trouve-t-on des livres intéressants dans ce grand magasin? 14. Certainement, on en trouve beaucoup. 15. On a apporté des pommes et des poires. 16. On les a apportées à ma mère. 17. On a perdu mes ciseaux bien des fois.

2. **For Oral Drill.** — 1. You are losing; are you not losing? 2. She loses; is she not losing? 3. One loses; one is lost. 4. She loses; she is not lost. 5. I am waiting; are you waiting? 6. Wait; do not wait. 7. Is he waiting? 8. Are people waiting? 9. Let us wait; let us not wait. 10. Do I hear? 11. Do I not hear? 12. Have they heard? 13. They hear; they wait.

3. 1. Is he waiting for your brother? 2. He always waits for him. 3. I am waiting for mine. 4. I am waited for too sometimes (one waits for me, etc.). 5. Where do they sell gloves and hats? 6. Do they sell them near here? 7. Where are scissors sold? 8. Where do you find beds, tables, and chairs? 9. We

many a time.

find iron, copper, and several other metals at Mr. Jacob's. 10. Return these books to-day. 11. Certainly. 12. Do your friends always return yours? 13. Almost always. 14. When people have friends, they are fortunate. 15. Do you hear me? 16. I do. 17. Are you waiting for me? 18. I am. 19. Give me back those needles you borrowed. 20. Here they are. 21. There are pins, thread, and a thimble in that box. 22. She has bought lace, muslin, ribbons, and wool. 23. Now I have answered all your questions.

40

Exception to Rule for Use of the Partitive Article. After a Negative.

(1) When the noun is the direct object of a negative verb, *some* or *any* (expressed or understood in English) is expressed by **de** without the article.

Je n'ai pas d'argent, *I have n't any money,* or *I have no money.*
Elle n'a pas de souliers, *she has n't any shoes,* or *she has no shoes.*
Vous n'avez pas de livre, *you have n't a book.*

(2) After **ni . . . ni,** *neither . . . nor,* and **sans,** *without,* both **de** and the article are omitted.

Il n'a ni amis ni argent, *he has neither friends nor money.*
Il est sans amis, *he is without friends.*

(3) After **ne . . . que,** *only,* both **de** and the article are used.

Nous n'avons que des pièces de cinq sous, *we have only five-sou pieces.*
Il n'a que des amis, *he has nothing but friends.*

(4) **Jamais** without a verb means *never;* with a verb preceded by **ne,** it means *never;* with a verb without **ne,** it means *ever.*

Avez-vous jamais vu des lions, *have you ever seen lions?*
Jamais, *never.*
N'en avez-vous jamais vu, *have you never seen any?*

Notice the position of **jamais**: before the past participle in a compound tense.

(5) **Ni . . . ni,** without a verb, have a negative meaning: **ni l'un ni l'autre,** *neither one;* used with a verb, the verb must be preceded by **ne.**

Je ne parle ni anglais ni français.
I speak neither English nor French.

Notice the omission of **pas** as in the case of **ne . . . que** and **jamais.**

1. N'attendez pas de réponse à vos lettres. 2. Je n'en attends jamais. 3. M. Jacob vend-il de la dentelle et de la mousseline? 4. Il ne vend ni dentelle ni mousseline. 5. Il ne vend que des rubans. 6. Ce garçon n'a jamais lu de livre français. 7. Je n'ai pas de soie, mais j'ai du fil blanc. 8. Vous en avez beaucoup. 9. En avez-vous jamais assez? 10. Jamais. 11. N'en avez-vous jamais assez? 12. Presque jamais. 13. M'apporte-t-on du pain et du beurre? 14. Nous n'avons pas de thé. 15. Apportez-nous du lait. Merci (*thank you*), madame. 16. En voulez-vous deux ou trois verres? 17. Mon père n'a ni porte-monnaie ni argent.

1. These men are very poor; they have neither friends nor money. 2. She has n't any muslin; she has only lace. 3. Has she enough? 4. That is (there is) the question. 5. We have no books. 6. Have you paper only? 7. We have neither books nor paper. 8. I have not an umbrella. 9. Take mine. 10. Thank you, I have already borrowed one. 11. Do you ever return the umbrellas you borrow? 12. Almost never. 13. Not

(*pas*) always, but sometimes. 14. Have you returned the one you borrowed on Thursday? 15. Not yet. 16. Return it to-day, please. 17. My friends never return those that they borrow. 18. Now I have only one. 19. He has money, but I have n't. 20. Have you? 21. I have. 22. How much have you? 23. I have a good deal. 24. One never has enough. 25. Answer this question: have I as much as you? 26. Are you waiting for an answer? 27. I always wait for an answer, but you never do (wait).

41

Exception to Rule for Use of the Partitive Article. Adjective before the Noun.

When an adjective stands before the noun in French, *some* or *any* (expressed or understood in English) is expressed by **de** without the article.

	du pain,	**de bon pain.**
	de la viande,	**de bonne viande.**
	de l'eau,	**de bonne eau.**
	des pommes,	**de bonnes pommes.**
But	**du papier,**	**du papier blanc.**

The following adjectives usually precede their nouns.[1]

beau, *beautiful.*	**mauvais**, *bad.*
bon, *good.*	**méchant**, *wicked.*
grand, *large.*	**petit**, *small.*
gros, *big.*	**vieux** (m.), **vieille** (f.), *old.*
jeune, *young.*	
joli, *pretty.*	**vilain**, *ugly.*

[1] The position of adjectives must be learned largely by observation. For a more complete treatment of this subject, see Lesson 43.

le cirque, *the circus.*
la cage, *the cage.*
le lion, *the lion.*
un éléphant, *an elephant.*
le tigre, *the tiger.*
le léopard, *the leopard.*
un ours, *a bear.*
le loup, *the wolf.*
le singe, *the monkey.*
le serpent, *the snake.*
le rat, *the rat.*
la souris, *the mouse.*
la vache, *the cow.*
le bœuf, *the ox.*
le mouton, *the sheep, mutton.*
la brebis, *the sheep, the ewe.*
un agneau, *a lamb.*
une bête, *a beast, an animal.*
un troupeau, *a flock, a herd*
la grange, *the barn.*
mordre, *to bite.*
fournir, *to furnish.*

1. Vous n'avez pas encore vu de lion, je pense. 2. J'ai vu des tigres, des léopards, des loups et des serpents. 3. Nous avons vu de gros éléphants. 4. Les lions, les éléphants et les loups sont des animaux. 5. Les éléphants sont de gros animaux. 6. Ils sont plus gros que tous les autres animaux. 7. Que regardez-vous ? 8. Je regarde cette cage de singes. 9. Les aimez-vous ? 10. Je les trouve très intéressants. 11. Les chats aiment les rats et les souris. 12. Notre vache fournit de bon lait. 13. Ce chien ne nous mord jamais. 14. On n'aime pas les mauvais fruits. 15. Les agneaux sont de petits moutons. 16. Ces hommes portent de grands chapeaux mais de petits gants.

1. The man has cows and sheep in his barn. 2. He has no oxen, but he has fine horses. 3. Has he a pair of them ? 4. That horse is biting one of your young trees. 5. Sheep furnish wool. 6. Mice and rats are small animals. 7. Do you like snakes ? 8. I do not. 9. He always has good friends and beautiful books. 10. Good books are always good friends. 11. There are many old men and women who live in this town. 12. Here we are at the circus. 13. Are there animals in these cages ? 14. There are a great many. 15. How

many? 16. There are two or three hundred. 17. I think that there are three hundred and fifty. 18. Did you ever visit any other (*d'autre*) circus? 19. What have you seen to-day? 20. We have seen old lions, handsome tigers, and beautiful leopards. 21. We have also seen young elephants and little bears. 22. Where are the monkeys? 23. There they are in the cage. 24. Look at them; are n't they pretty? 25. I think that those little beasts are very ugly.

42

Imperfect Indicative.

It has been stated (Lesson 10) that the perfect is the past tense of conversation. If, however, the past action is represented as going on at the same time with another action or as a customary or continued action, it is expressed by the imperfect.

Quand j'étais jeune, je demeurais à Rouen.
When I was young, I lived at Rouen.

The imperfect of a verb may be formed by changing the ending **-ant** of the present participle into **-ais.**

Infinitive.	Present Participle.	Imperfect Indicative.
porter,	**portant,**	**je portais.**
finir,	**finissant,**[1]	**je finissais.**
recevoir,	**recevant,**	**je recevais.**
vendre,	**vendant,**	**je vendais.**
avoir,	**ayant,**	**j'avais.**[2]
être,	**étant,**	**j'étais.**

[1] Note again the **iss** before the ending of the present participle of regular verbs of the second conjugation.

[2] Notice that the imperfect of **avoir** is regular, while the present participle is irregular.

The terminations of the imperfect are alike in all verbs: **-ais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.**

je portais, *I was carrying, I car-*	**nous portions.**
tu portais. [*ried, I used to carry.*	**vous portiez.**
il portait.	**ils portaient.**

Conjugate the imperfect indicative of each of the verbs given on page 89, using that of **porter** as a model.

la campagne, *the country* (as distinguished from the town).	**rencontrer**, *to meet.*
	paresseux, *idle, lazy.*
à la campagne, *in the country.*	**appliqué**, *diligent.*
le pays, *the country* (the region, the whole country).	**abondant**, *abundant.*
	suivant, *following.*
la chose, *the thing.*	**autrefois**, *formerly.*
le lapin, *the rabbit.*	**l'année dernière**, *last year.*

il y a, *there is, there are.*
il y avait, *there was, there were.*
Qu'est-ce qu'il y a, *what is there?*
Qu'est-ce qu'il y avait, *what was there?*

1. Quand vous étiez jeune, mon ami, vous aviez de beaux joujoux. 2. Mes parents n'étaient pas si riches que les vôtres, mais j'avais aussi de jolies choses. 3. Nous ne demeurions pas à la ville, mais nous avions une grande maison à la campagne. 4. Il y avait près de la maison un petit bois et de grands arbres. 5. J'avais près de ma fenêtre un petit jardin plein de fleurs rouges et blanches. 6. Mon jardin était très petit, mais mes fleurs étaient si jolies! 7. Il y avait beaucoup d'oiseaux dans le jardin et dans le bois. 8. Les oranges étaient rares, mais les fraises étaient abondantes. 9. Nous avions aussi beaucoup de poires et de pommes. 10. Nos chiens étaient heureux parce qu'il y avait beaucoup de lapins dans le bois, et les chats parce qu'il y avait beaucoup d'oiseaux dans le jardin. 11. Il y avait aussi des souris et des rats dans notre vieille grange. 12. Nous

étions heureux, parce que nous avions beaucoup de bons amis. 13. Tout le monde était heureux.

2 *Répondez en français aux questions suivantes:* 1. Quand votre ami était jeune, qu'avait-il? 2. En aviez-vous assez? 3. Qu'est-ce que vous aviez? 4. Vos parents étaient-ils très riches? 5. Etaient-ils plus ou moins riches que les siens? 6. Où demeuriez-vous? 7. Aviez-vous une petite maison? 8. Qu'est-ce qu'il y avait près de la maison? 9. Qu'aviez-vous près de votre fenêtre? 10. Qu'est-ce qu'il y avait dans votre jardin? 11. De quelles couleurs étaient-elles? 12. Etaient-elles très jolies? 13. Y avait-il des oiseaux? 14. Combien y en avait-il? 15. Vous aviez beaucoup d'oranges, n'est-ce pas? 16. Y avait-il des fraises? 17. Quels fruits aviez-vous? 18. Et quels animaux? 19. Les chiens étaient-ils heureux? 20. Pourquoi? 21. Et les chats? 22. Etiez-vous heureux ou malheureux? 23. Pourquoi? 24. Qui était heureux?

3 **For Oral Drill.** 1. They had; they have. 2. They were; they are. 3. They used to receive; they do receive. 4. They sold; they have sold; they sell. 5. I sell; I used to sell. 6. We always lend now; we never used to lend. 7. Do you have? Did you have? 8. She is choosing; she was choosing. 9. She was not choosing; she was not chosen. 10. Do I lose? Did n't I lose?

4 1. His sisters were rich because they were always diligent, but his brothers were sometimes idle. 2. Is one always rich because one is diligent? 3. When I was in Paris last year I often used to meet your father. 4. Where were you an hour ago? 5. We were at our uncle's. 6. I was answering my friend's letter, when you came in. 7. When she was young, she used to sing

well. 8. Our neighbors were formerly richer than you; they had large houses, beautiful gardens, and a large number of horses and dogs. 9. Did he have more money than you this morning? 10. There was formerly a large wood near the town in which (where) I used to live. 11. We were speaking of her when she entered the room. 12. Where were you when we went to your house? 13. Were you waiting for an omnibus when I saw you this morning? 14. Last year she used to receive more letters than I. 15. They never obeyed their parents, but we always obeyed ours. 16. They worked well and they were always happy. 17. They worked well because they were never punished.

43

Position of Adjectives.

Adjectives usually follow their nouns in French, especially those denoting color, shape, or nationality.[1]

aveugle, *blind*.
sourd, *deaf*.
muet (m.), **muette** (f.), *mute, dumb, silent*.
droit, *right, straight*.
gauche, *left, awkward*.
chaud, *warm*.
froid, *cold*.
rond, *round*.
carré, *square*.
allemand, *German*.
américain, *American*.
espagnol, *Spanish*.
italien, *Italian*.
la main, *the hand*.
le pied, *the foot*.
la langue, *the tongue, language*.
un hôtel, *a hotel*.
l'hôtel de ville, *the city hall*.
descendre, *to go down, come down, descend*.
descendre à un hôtel, *to stop* or *to put up at a hotel*.
monter, *to go up, to ride*.
désirer, *to desire, to wish*.
à pied, *on foot*.
à cheval, *on horseback*.

[1] For a fuller treatment of this subject, see Lesson 97.

1. Apportez-nous, s'il vous plaît, de meilleur vin, de l'eau chaude, et du sucre. 2. Votre cousine prêtait autrefois à ma sœur des livres allemands qui étaient très intéressants et aussi très amusants. 3. Nous avons de bonne encre rouge. 4. Désirez-vous une table ronde ou carrée? 5. Je désire une table ronde, monsieur. 6. Voilà un homme aveugle. 7. Est-il sourd aussi? 8. Ces deux petites filles sont muettes. 9. La langue italienne est beaucoup plus facile que la langue allemande. 10. Ce pauvre homme a perdu la main droite. 11. Montez-vous quelquefois à cheval? 12. Nous avons de bon pain et de bonne viande. 13. Dans le mot *gauche*, il y a une lettre muette.

2. 1. Do you desire hot water or cold water? 2. I desire some hot water. 3. Show me the right hand. 4. Now the left hand, please. 5. Is Miss K. deaf? 6. She is also dumb and blind. 7. How do you find the German language? 8. I find it difficult, but very interesting. 9. Where do you put up in Paris? 10. I always stop at the hotel Continental. 11. Did you ride horseback when you were young? 12. Yes, I rode sometimes in (à) the Bois de Boulogne. 13. He went away on foot and came back on horseback. 14. This table is round, that one is square. 15. How many American newspapers did you receive when you were in London? 16. We always received three or four. 17. We wish (desire) two cups of cold milk, please. 18. If you have no tea or (neither . . . nor) coffee, bring us hot water, cream, and some sugar. 19. We were looking at the city hall when your friends found us.

44

Comparison of Adjectives.

(1) The comparative is formed by placing **plus,** *more,* **moins,** *less,* or **aussi,** *as,* before the adjective. After a negative **si** usually takes the place of **aussi.**

Elle est moins gauche que son amie, *she is less awkward than her friend.*

Elle est aussi jolie que son frère, mais elle n'est pas si polie, *she is as pretty as her brother, but she is not so polite.*

Than before a number is expressed by **de.**

J'ai plus de cinq livres, *I have more than five books.*
Vous en avez plus de dix, n'est-ce pas ?
You have more than ten, have you not?

(2) The superlative of an adjective is formed by placing the definite article or the possessive adjective before **plus** or **moins** of the comparative.

jeune, *young;* **plus jeune,** *younger;* **le plus jeune,** *the youngest.*
intéressant, *interesting;* **moins intéressant,** *less interesting;* **le moins intéressant,** *the least interesting.*
Charles et Jean sont leurs plus chers amis, *Charles and John are their dearest friends.*

Three adjectives have irregular comparative and superlative forms:

bon, *good;* **meilleur,** *better;* **le meilleur,** *the best.*

petit, *small;* **plus petit,** *smaller;* **le plus petit,** *the smallest.*
moindre, *less;* **le moindre,** *the least.*

mauvais, *bad;* **plus mauvais,** *worse, poorer;* **le plus mauvais,** *the worst, the poorest.*
pire, *worse, more evil, more wicked;* **le pire,** *the worst, the most evil, the most wicked.*

(3) A superlative following the noun requires the definite article.

La grammaire la plus facile, *the easiest grammar.*
Mes livres les plus intéressants, *my most interesting books.*

(4) *In* after a superlative is expressed by **de**.

Sa mère est la femme la plus riche de la ville.
His mother is the richest woman in the town.

poli, *polite* M *polie* F	**fort**, *strong.*
fidèle, *faithful.*	**habile**, *clever.*
célèbre, *celebrated.*	**la rue**, *the street.*
magnifique, *magnificent.*	**le monde**, *the world.*
excellent, *excellent.*	**le souvenir**, *the remembrance.*

1. Tout le monde aime les hommes forts et polis. 2. Le chien est l'ami le plus fidèle de l'homme. 3. Ma mère est la meilleure femme du monde. 4. Voilà de très bon beurre ; il est beaucoup meilleur que celui que vous avez acheté ce matin. 5. Ces aiguilles sont plus mauvaises que les miennes. 6. Les vôtres sont excellentes. 7. Votre petit chat blanc est le plus joli de tous les chats. 8. Louise est la jeune fille la plus aimable de l'école. 9. Vos sœurs sont très habiles ; elles sont plus habiles que les miennes. 10. Où vend-on des souvenirs ? 11. On n'en vend pas ici. 12. Voilà de belle dentelle. 13. Cette église est la plus célèbre de Paris, et peut-être du monde entier.

1. His friend is the best man in the world. 2. The hotels at which (where) he used to put up were the finest and largest in the city, perhaps in the country. 3. Everybody likes faithful friends. 4. Have you any ? 5. Have you more than I ? 6. I have more than twenty. 7. She is not so clever as her brother. 8. My best friends live in Chicago. 9. Her father was one of the most celebrated men in the country. 10. Your cousin Mary is the merriest and most polite of all my pupils. 11. Are you stronger than John ? 12. I am taller, but I am not

so strong. 13. John is the strongest boy in the class. 14. These pens are good, mine are better, but my brother's are the best. 15. He lives in the highest house in the street. 16. I have not the slightest (least) remembrance of those men. 17. I have fewer souvenirs than you, but yours are less interesting than mine, I think. 18. His are the least interesting. 19. I have accepted her gift, but without the least pleasure.

45

C'est and ce sont.

(1) *He is, she is, it is,* and *they are,* are generally expressed by **c'est** and **ce sont** before a noun, a pronoun, or a superlative.

C'est Henri, *it is Henry.*

C'est la femme la plus riche du pays, *she is the richest woman in the country.*

C'est le mien (la mienne), *it is mine.*

C'est celui (celle) qu'il a, *it is that one (the one) he has.*

C'est votre amie qui est partie, n'est-ce pas, *it is your friend who has gone away, is it not?*

Ce sont mes frères, *it is (those are) my brothers.*

Ce sont les plus hauts de nos arbres, *those are the highest of our trees.*

Ce sont les miens (les miennes), *they (those) are mine.*

Ce sont ceux (celles) qu'il vend, *it is those that he sells.*

Ce ne sont pas nos amies qui sont parties, *it is not our friends who have gone away.*

(2) The forms of the personal pronouns used with prepositions (Lesson 26) are also used alone or after **c'est** or **ce sont.**

C'est moi, *it is I.*
C'est toi, *it is thou (you).*
C'est lui, *it is he.*
C'est elle, *it is she.*

C'est nous, *it is we.*
C'est vous, *it is you.*
Ce sont eux, *it is they* (m.).
Ce sont elles, *it is they* (f.).

INTERROGATIVE.

Est-ce moi ? *is it I ?*	**Est-ce nous ?** *is it we ?*
Est-ce toi ? *is it thou (you) ?*	**Est-ce vous ?** *is it you ?*
Est-ce lui ? *is it he ?*	**Est-ce eux ?** *is it they* (m.) ?
Est-ce elle ? *is it she ?*	**Est-ce elles ?** *is it they* (f.) ?

Observe that **c'est** is used before all of these forms, except the third person plural affirmative : **ce sont eux** (elles), but **est-ce eux** (elles) ?

(3) **C'est** may be used before any *masculine* adjective referring to something already mentioned.

C'est bon ! *that is good ! All right !*	**C'est possible,** *it 's possible.*
C'est juste, *it is right.*	**C'est vrai,** *it is true.*

Que c'est beau ! *how beautiful that is !*

Notice also the following expressions :

C'est dommage, *that 's a pity, a shame,* **too bad.**
C'est à vous, *it 's your turn.* it is up to you
C'est pour lui, *it is for him.*
C'est pourquoi je l'admire, *that is why I admire him.*

le monsieur, *the gentleman.*	**le roman,** *the novel.*
les messieurs, *the gentlemen.*	**un écrivain,** *a writer.*
la dame, *the lady.*	**un auteur,** *an author.*
la demoiselle, *the young lady.*	**illustre,** *illustrious.*
le courage, *courage.*	**possible,** *possible.*
l'ambition (f.), *ambition.*	**impossible,** *impossible.*
le talent, *talent.*	**inutile,** *useless.*
la conduite, *conduct.*	**ordinaire,** *ordinary, common.*
les manières (f.), *manners.*	**juste,** *just, right.*
l'expérience (f.), *experience.*	**vrai,** *true.*
l'ouvrage (m.), *the work.*	**admirer,** *to admire.*

frapper, *to strike, to knock.*

1. Qui est là ? 2. Est-ce vous, Paul ? 3. Oui, c'est moi. 4. Qui frappait ? 5. Moi. 6. Qui sont ces messieurs ? 7. Ce sont nos amis. 8. C'est notre voisin et ses deux fils. 9. Qui est l'avocat le plus célèbre de la ville ? 10. C'est Monsieur Gaillard. 11. C'est le plus

illustre de tous nos avocats. 12. Qui sont ces dames? 13. Ce sont leurs sœurs. 14. Qui sont ces enfants? 15. Ce sont les siens, son fils et sa fille. 16. New York est une grande ville; c'est la plus grande de ce pays. 17. Londres est la plus grande du monde. 18. C'est à toi que je parle, mon enfant. 19. Il y a beaucoup de mots ordinaires dans cette grammaire. 20. A-t-il du courage? 21. Il en a beaucoup. 22. Ces arbres sont presque aussi beaux que ceux de votre jardin. 23. C'est sans le moindre plaisir que je réponds à leurs lettres. 24. C'est dommage. 25. C'est vrai.

(*A*) 1. I am fond of horses. 2. That's good! 3. They are more useful than dogs. 4. They are the most useful of animals. 5. Neither cats nor dogs are useless. 6. There is Mary; she is the youngest of my friends. 7. Is it she who lives in that large square house near your uncle's? 8. He had courage, talent, and experience, but he never had any manners. 9. He had too much ambition. 10. That is too bad. 11. It is pleasure that they seek. 12. That is why they are never at home. 13. Is it possible? 14. Who has a penknife? 15. I. 16. Who is the author of that novel? 17. It is a writer that I admire greatly (much). 18. Is it he? 19. It is not he, it is she. 20. It's impossible. 21. Is it they? 22. Yes, it is they. 23. Who are those boys? 24. They are John, Charles, and Gustave. 25. I do not admire their conduct. 26. It's money they want (desire). 27. It is with pleasure that I accept this gift.

(*B*) 1. Who is that gentleman? 2. Is it your friend? 3. Is it Henry? 4. Isn't it he? 5. Who is that young lady? 6. It is Mary, isn't it? 7. Who is it? 8. Who are those gentlemen? 9. Is it to him or to me

that you are speaking? 10. Is it to her or to you that I am speaking now? 11. Is it their turn? 12. Is it John's? 13. Have you ever read Walter Scott's works? 14. How do you like (find) them? 15. Is he a celebrated author? 16. Have n't you read Ivanhoe? 17. Is it possible? 18. Here is an interesting novel; is it yours? 19. Are you sure of it? 20. Is it the one you bought at Brentano's? 21. It is a French novel, is n't it? 22. Who is knocking? 23. Is it you? 24. Do you admire courage? 25. Do we (*on*) admire courage more or less than talent?

46

Who, whom, whose.

(1) The nominative *who* is **qui** for either the relative or the interrogative pronoun.

La femme qui est entrée, *the woman who came in.*
Qui est là? *who is there?*
C'est vous qui avez fait cette boîte, *it is you who made that box.*
C'est nous qui demeurons ici, *it is we who live here.*

Notice the agreement of the verb with the antecedent of **qui**.

(2) The objective case, *whom*, is **que** for the relative pronoun, and **qui** for the interrogative.

Les dames que vous avez rencontrées, sont mes meilleures amies.
The ladies whom you met are my best friends.
Qui avez-vous vu? *whom did you see?*

(3) The interrogative *whom*, governed by a preposition, is expressed by **qui**.

A qui parlez-vous? *to whom are you speaking?*
Pour qui travaille-t-il? *for whom is he working?*

(4) The interrogative *whose*[1] is expressed by **à qui** (*to whom*) and the verb **être**.

A qui est cette maison? *Whose house is this? To whom does this house belong?*

Elle est à mon voisin,
C'est à mon voisin,
C'est celle de mon voisin, } *it is my neighbor's, it belongs to my neighbor.*

Elle est à moi,
C'est la mienne, } *it is mine, it belongs to me.*

la bibliothèque, *the library.*
le salon, *the drawing-room, the parlor.*
une ombrelle, *a parasol.*
un manchon, *a muff.*
la fourrure, *the fur.*
le bracelet, *the bracelet.*
le bouton, *the button.*
un dollar, *a dollar.*
la clef, *the key.*
le théâtre, *the theatre.*
l'opéra (m.), *the opera.*

la lampe, *the lamp.*
le paquet, *the package, packet.*
une allumette, *a match.*
allumer, *to light.*
amuser, *to amuse.*
arroser, *to water.*
oublier, *to forget.*
laborieux, *industrious.*
occupé, *busy, occupied.*
libre, *free, at liberty, unoccupied, disengaged.*

on dit, *they say, it is said.*

1. A qui est cette ombrelle? 2. Elle est à ma cousine. 3. A qui sont ces manchons? 4. Ce sont ceux de Marie et de Louise. 5. Qui est la dame que j'ai vue hier soir au théâtre avec vous? 6. Vous l'avez rencontrée bien des fois. 7. L'avez-vous oubliée? 8. Voilà des fourrures magnifiques. 9. Ce sont celles de madame S. 10. Nos amis étaient très laborieux. 11. Quand nous sommes allés chez eux, ils étaient occupés. 12. Ils n'étaient jamais libres. 13. C'est dommage, n'est-ce pas? 14. Est-ce vous qui les amusez tant? 15. C'est nous qui les amusons toujours. 16. Ce

[1] For the relative *whose*, see Lesson 54.

sont eux que nous amusons. 17. Avec qui êtes-vous sorti hier soir ?

(*A*) 1. Here is a beautiful bracelet; whose is it? 2. From whom did you buy it? 3. I did not buy it. 4. She has an uncle whom she has never seen. 5. Is it he who bought it? 6. Yes, he is the one. 7. Is it you who lost this key? 8. It is not I. 9. Show it to John. 10. It is his perhaps. 11. No, it is n't his. 12. Where did you find it? 13. I found two of them in the library this morning. 14. Those are the keys to (*de*) my house. 15. With whom did you go to the opera last evening? 16. I went with my father. 17. Light the lamp in the parlor, please. 18. I have no matches. 19. Here is a package of them. 20. They (*on*) have already lighted the fire (made some fire). 21. Who is the richest man in town? 22. They say that it is he.

(*B*) 1. Whose umbrella is that? 2. For whom is this one? 3. Is it the one I bought several days ago? 4. To whom does this handkerchief belong? 5. It is your own (yours), is n't it? 6. Has your sister forgotten the parasol she borrowed? 7. Whose is it? 8. Whose gardens are those? 9. Are you busy or unoccupied this morning? 10. This house is very high; is it the highest in the street? 11. Whose is that pencil? 12. To whom do those books belong? 13. It is said that your neighbors have gone away; is it true? 14. Here is a little gold button; who has lost one? 15. Here is a dollar for you; you accept it, do you not? 16. Does that question amuse you? 17. From whom have you received a letter?

47

The Future Tense.

The future of a verb may be formed by adding **-ai** to the infinitive.

INFINITIVE.	FUTURE.
porter, *to carry.*	**je porterai**, *I shall carry.*
finir, *to finish.*	**je finirai**, *I shall finish.*
recevoir	**je recevrai.**
vendre.	**je vendrai.**

Drop **oi** from the infinitive ending of the third conjugation and **e** from that of the fourth, when adding the terminations of the future. **Avoir** and **être** are irregular:

avoir.	**j'aurai.**
être.	**je serai.**

The terminations of the future are alike in all verbs: **-ai, -as, -a, -ons, -ez, -ont.**

FUTURE OF **porter.**

je porterai.	**nous porterons.**
tu porteras.	**vous porterez.**
il portera.	**ils porteront.**

Conjugate the future of each of the above verbs, using that of **porter** as a model.

un moment, *a moment.*
le bord, *the edge, shore, border.*
la mer, *the sea.*
au bord de la mer, *at the seashore.*
demain, *to-morrow.*
prochain (adj.), *next.*
jeudi prochain,[1] *next Thursday.*
la semaine prochaine, *next week.*
le mois prochain, *next month.*
l'année prochaine, *next year.*
l'après-midi (m. or f.), *afternoon.*
bientôt, *soon.*
plus tôt, *sooner.*
tout de suite, *immediately, at once.*
prêt, *ready.*
fatigué, *tired.*
bien aise, *glad.*
coûter, *to cost.*
réussir, *to succeed.*
ne (. . .) plus, *no more, no longer, not again.*
il y aura, *there will be.*
y aura-t-il, *will there be?*

1 Compare with **dernier**, Lesson 24 (4).

I. 1. Votre père arrivera demain, j'en suis sûr. 2. Aurons-nous aujourd'hui les lettres que nous attendons? 3. Vous recevrez aussi beaucoup de jolies choses. 4. On vous donnera une petite montre, une jolie chaîne et un beau porte-monnaie avec des pièces d'or. 5. Aurai-je aussi un cheval blanc? 6. Vous n'aurez pas de cheval; ces animaux-là coûtent très cher.[1] 7. Nous ne choisirons ni chevaux ni chiens. 8. Je pense que nous visiterons nos amis français l'année prochaine. 9. Elle ne rendra à sa cousine ni sa bague ni ses gants. 10. Ne m'écouterez-vous plus? 11. Je vous écouterai et je vous obéirai. 12. Etudierez-vous la langue française? 13. Vous la trouverez la plus belle des langues. 14. Marie sera plus belle que sa sœur. 15. Vous travaillez trop aujourd'hui, vous serez malade demain. 16. N'êtes-vous plus fatigué?

II. **For Oral Drill.** — 1. We shall have; we shall be; we shall find. 2. He will have; he will be; he will find. 3. You will have; you will be; you will receive. 4. Shall I have? Shall I be? Shall I sell? 5. They will have; they will be; there will be. 6. We shall have found; we shall be found; we shall have arrived. 7. She will give; she will succeed; she will sell. 8. They will forget; they will have forgotten; they will be forgotten.

Repeat the above sentences, making them negative.

III. 1. Shall you be busy this afternoon? 2. We shall be at liberty soon. 3. I shall be glad of it. 4. She will answer her friend's letter to-morrow morning. 5. Shall you stay here next month? 6. I shall be at the seashore next month. 7. Who will be in the country?

[1] Notice the adverbial use of **cher**; hence, no agreement.

8. You will find some paper in this drawer. 9. No, there is n't any more. 10. Your exercises will be much less difficult than mine. 11. Mine will no longer be so easy as yours. 12. When shall you arrive in Paris? 13. I shall be in London on the 1st and in Paris on the 11th of next month. 14. Work well, and I am sure you will succeed. 15. We shall have an American newspaper next Saturday. 16. That will be a great pleasure for us. 17. We shall have one sooner than you. 18. You will receive a letter from your friends next week. 19. Shall you come down this morning? 20. Wait a moment, I shall be ready soon. 21. We shall wait no longer. 22. Whom are you looking for in this street? 23. How much do those scissors cost? 24. They cost three francs à (*la*) pair. 25. They cost dear. 26. Yes, they are very dear.

48

The future tense must be used after **quand, lorsque,** *when,* **aussitôt que, dès que,** *as soon as,* if futurity is implied.

Vous aurez ce livre quand (lorsque) vous aurez écrit votre lettre.
You will have this book when you have written your letter.
Vous aurez cet argent aussitôt que (dès que) vous arriverez.
You shall have that money as soon as you arrive.

Quand must be used for *when* in direct and indirect questions; otherwise, **quand** and **lorsque** are practically interchangeable.

le bout, *the end, the extremity.*
la fin, *the end, the conclusion.*
la récompense, *the reward.*
gagner, *to earn, to win.*
casser *to break.*
âgé, *old.*
simple, *simple.*
préférable, *preferable.*
quelque chose, *something.*
quelqu'un, *some one, any one.*
le temps, *the time, the weather.*
avoir le temps, *to have time.*

passer, *to pass, to go by, to fade.*
passer le temps, *to spend the time.*
passer chez ——, *to call on ——.*
passer devant (ou près de), *to pass, to go past something.*
passer par, *to go through.*
par ici, *this way.*
par là, *that way.*
alors, *then.*

I. 1. Serez-vous (bien aise) quand vous aurez fini votre travail? 2. Louise travaille bien, elle gagnera tous les prix. 3. Comment passerons-nous le temps? 4. Nous regarderons les animaux dans le Jardin des Plantes. 5. Dès que leur mère sera ici, elle nous donnera du fil, de la soie et des aiguilles. 6. Vous serez un peu plus aimable quand vous ne serez plus malade. 7. Aussitôt qu'elle sera arrivée, elle aura une tasse de lait, du pain et des fraises. 8. Aussitôt qu'elle arrive, elle dit toujours qu'elle ne restera pas. 9. Elle dit qu'elle n'a jamais le temps. 10. Quand nous aurons préparé notre leçon, nous serons libres. 11. Nous en serons bien aises. 12. Nous jouerons alors avec plus de plaisir. 13. Quand je serai à Londres, je passerai chez votre ami, M. Rainer, 23 Downs Road, Clapton. 14. Voici quelque chose que j'ai acheté pour vous. 15. Quand on passe devant quelqu'un, on dit, "Pardon!"

II. (*A*) 1. When she is here, we always work well. 2. When they are here, we shall not work any more. 3. Shall you speak of it? 4. I shall speak of it only once. 5. We shall find these books very interesting, I am sure (of it). 6. Won't you have one? 7. How many days shall you stay in Boston? 8. Shall you go through Baton Rouge? 9. When will he have finished his letters? 10. Will he not finish them at once? 11. His father and brother are very tall, and he will be taller still (still taller) perhaps. 12. When John is older, he will win more prizes. 13. Prizes are the re-

wards of labor. 14. The weather is fine to-day, and it will be finer to-morrow. 15. Do not take this beautiful silk umbrella, — you will lose it. 16. When there are fewer words in these rules, they will be simpler. 17. At the end of this book one will find many useful words. 18. He has broken the end of his umbrella. 19. Where will one find you next week? 20. Do not look at me, look at your book; I shall be here when you have finished your sentence. 21. Men fade [away] like (*comme*) flowers.

(*B*) 1. Shall you not be at liberty this evening? 2. Shall you be busy to-morrow evening? 3. Shall you play this afternoon? 4. Shall you not have time? 5. Shall you work all the afternoon? 6. How do you find the weather to-day? 7. Do you often call on your friends? 8. Where will they be next Sunday? 9. Here are two roads; shall we choose this one or that one? 10. When you go[1] home this afternoon, shall you go this way or that way? 11. Are you older or younger than I? 12. Will my pupils stay at home to-morrow? 13. Will they be at church or at school? 14. Who will be here to-morrow morning? 15. Who will be here on Monday next? 16. Who was here last Tuesday? 17. Shall we have the forty-ninth or the fiftieth lesson to-morrow? 18. Show me your pocket-book. 19. Shall you have money enough? 20. How do you spend your time? 21. Do you work all the time?

[1] **irez**, future of **aller**, *to go*.

49

Interrogative Adjectives.

The adjective **quel**, *which, what, what a*, has the following forms:

SINGULAR, { **quel** (m.), **quelle** (f.). PLURAL, { **quels** (m.), **quelles** (f.).

The noun which **quel** modifies is usually the next word in the sentence; with the verb **être**, the noun may stand after the verb.

Quel livre avez-vous pris?
Quel est le nom du livre que vous avez pris?

le nom, *the name.*
l'exemple (m.), *the example.*
le dictionnaire (m.), *the dictionary.*
le plancher, *the floor.*
le bruit, *the noise, the report.*
l'affaire (f.), *the affair.*
les affaires, *the affairs, business.*
ramasser, *to collect, to pick up.*
laisser tomber, *to let fall, to drop.*[1]

Quelles fleurs avez-vous prises? *Which flowers did you take?*
Quels livres a-t-il lus? *What books has he read?*
Quelle femme! *What a woman!*
Quel dommage! *What a pity!*

1. Dans quelle partie de cette ville demeurez-vous? 2. De quel pays êtes-vous? 3. Sur quelle table a-t-il mis mes gants? 4. Quels gants? 5. Ceux que j'ai achetés l'autre jour au Bon Marché. 6. Quel grand magasin! 7. Quels souliers avez-vous choisis? 8. Quelles chansons choisirez-vous? 9. Je choisirai celles-ci; ce sont les meilleures. 10. De quelle chambre a-t-on ouvert les fenêtres? 11. Quels mouchoirs a-t-il donnés à sa sœur? 12. Vous avez laissé tomber quelque chose, monsieur. 13. Merci, madame; c'est ma montre que j'ai laissée tomber sur ce plancher de marbre. 14. Vous l'avez cassée, n'est-ce pas? 15. Quel dommage! 16. Ra-

[1] In **laisser tomber**, **tomber** remains unchanged and **laisser** is conjugated.

massez vos livres, vos crayons et votre papier. 17. Ne les laissez pas tomber. 18. Avez-vous entendu ce bruit ?

1. Whose are these pens ? 2. What pens ? 3. Those that some one has dropped on the floor. 4. I dropped them a moment ago, they are mine. 5. Pick them up, please. 6. I will pick them up immediately. 7. What French books have you read ? 8. Whose dictionary is this ? 9. What dictionary ? 10. This one. 11. It is not mine, it is your own (yours). 12. What a fine book ! 13. Which pen is the best, this one or that ? 14. This one is much better than the other. 15. Which pens are the best ? 16. These steel pens are the best. 17. What is the name of this book ? 18. Who wrote it ? 19. Of what book are you speaking ? 20. What lesson have we to-day ? 21. What a question ! 22. What beautiful pictures ! 23. Who dropped something ? 24. What a noise ! 25. You do not work enough; that is why you do not succeed in your business. 26. What an example !

50

Time of Day. Dates.

(1) Examine the following models for telling the time of day :

Quelle heure est-il ?	*What time is it ?*
Il est une heure,	*It is one o'clock.*
Il est deux heures,	*It is two o'clock.*
Il est cinq heures et demie, / **Il est cinq heures trente,**	*It is half past five.*
Quatre heures (et) (un) quart, / **Quatre heures quinze (minutes),**	*Quarter past four.*
Six heures dix, vingt, etc.,	*Six ten, twenty, etc.*
Huit heures cinquante, / **Neuf heures moins dix (minutes),**	*Eight fifty, ten minutes to nine.*

Il est midi,	*It is twelve o'clock, noon.*
Il est midi et demi,	*It is half-past twelve.*
Il est minuit,	*It is twelve o'clock, midnight.*
Il est minuit moins cinq,	*It is five minutes to twelve.*
A quelle heure?	*At what time?*
A huit heures du soir,	*At eight in the evening.*
A dix heures précises,	*Promptly at ten o'clock.*
Vers sept heures,	*About seven o'clock.*

(a) As in English, any number of minutes may go with the preceding hour, although after half past, the next hour is usually named *less* (**moins**) the number of minutes.

(b) **Il est** or **est-il** in these expressions is an impersonal verb and is therefore invariable.

(c) *O'clock* is often omitted in English, but **heure** or **heures** is not omitted in French. **Minutes** may be omitted.

(d) **Midi** and **minuit** are used for *twelve o'clock.*

(e) **Demi** is masculine after **midi** and **minuit**; Lesson 23 (3).

(2) Recall rules for dates, Lesson 24, and observe the following expressions:

Quel jour du mois est-ce aujourd'hui? **Quel jour du mois avons-nous?** **Quel quantième (le combien) du mois est-ce aujourd'hui?**	*What day of the month is it to-day?*
C'est aujourd'hui le premier février,	*It is February first.*
Ce sera demain le deux,	*To-morrow will be the second.*
C'était hier le trente et un janvier,	*Yesterday was Jan. 31st.*
Elle est revenue le 11 mars,	*She came back on March 11th.*
Il y a une semaine (ou huit jours),[1]	*A week ago.*
Il y a une quinzaine (ou quinze jours),[1]	*A fortnight ago.*
D'aujourd'hui en huit,	*A week from to-day.*
D'aujourd'hui en quinze,	*A fortnight from to-day.*
Vendredi en huit,	*A week from Friday.*
Samedi en quinze,	*A fortnight from Saturday.*
En dix-neuf cent six,	*In 1906.*
En (dans) quel mois?	*In what month?*
Au mois de septembre,	*In the month of September.*
En septembre,	*In September.*

[1] In the expressions **huit jours** and **quinze jours**, the French count as one the day from which the time is reckoned.

Aller (irregular), *to go.*[1]

Present Indicative.	Imperfect Indicative.	Future.
je vais, *I go, I am going,*	**j'allais,** *I went, I was going,*	**j'irai,** *I shall go.*
tu vas. *I do go.*	**tu allais.** *I used to go.*	**tu iras.**
il va.	**il allait.**	**il ira.**
nous allons.	**nous allions.**	**nous irons.**
vous allez.	**vous alliez.**	**vous irez.**
ils vont.	**ils allaient.**	**ils iront.**

Imperative.

Singular.	Plural.
va, *go.*	**allons,** *let us go.* **allez,** *go.*

la nuit, *the night.* **la voiture,** *the carriage.*
la gare, *the station.* **tard,** *late.*
le train, *the train.* **par,** *by, through.*

en voiture, *in a carriage.*
il est tard, *it is late.*
par le train de deux heures, *by the 2 o'clock train.*

1. Quelle heure est-il ? 2. Il est midi cinq ou midi dix. 3. Il n'est pas encore midi et quart. 4. Elle n'est pas partie avec eux ; elle est partie plus tard, à 3 heures et demie. 5. Nous avons rencontré nos amis ce matin à 9 heures moins un quart lorsque nous allions à la gare. 6. Avec qui alliez-vous à la gare ? 7. Avec mon père et ma mère ; ils sont allés à la campagne pour deux ou trois mois. 8. De quelle gare sont-ils partis ? 9. Ils sont partis de la gare du Nord. 10. Irez-vous à l'église dimanche prochain ? 11. J'ai vu votre père il y a une quinzaine. 12. Il arrivera à cinq heures précises. 13. Il est maintenant près de neuf heures. 14. Est-elle née en 1897 ? 15. Elle est née le 7 juillet, 1899.

[1] It will be noted that the tenses of **aller** given here correspond to those already presented in connection with regular verbs.

(*A*) 1. We are going home to-morrow. 2. We shall be at home before noon. 3. In what month do you go to the country? 4. In the month of July. 5. What time is it? 6. It is a quarter to two. 7. It is five minutes to three. 8. It is 4.20. 9. To-day we shall go home at half-past one. 10. He started for London last evening by the 8.10 train. 11. His brother went to London too, but he was very ill. 12. He will go home a week from to-day. 13. It is already late. 14. What a beautiful night! 15. Where were you going last evening when we met you? 16. We were going to the theatre. 17. Do you often go to the theatre? 18. It is the —— of ——, 190–. 19. Yesterday was the ——, and to-morrow will be the ——. 20. At what time did they go away? 21. They went away from the house at a quarter to eleven and from the station a half-hour later. 22. They came back by the midnight train. 23. Let us go to church next Sunday.

(*B*) 1. What time is it? 2. At what time did you come to school this morning? 3. At what hour do you go home? 4. What day of the month is this? 5. What day of the week is it? 6. Where shall you go a week from Sunday? 7. Do you go to school every day? 8. Shall we be here a week from Friday? 9. Did you go to the country last Saturday? 10. Did you come back by the train, on foot, on horseback, or in a carriage? 11. It is already ten o'clock, is it not? 12. Is it noon? 13. Shall you stay here till three? 14. You go home about two o'clock, do you not? 15. Did you get here this morning at exactly eight o'clock? 16. Where were you a fortnight ago? 17. How many days are there in a week? 18. Are there seven or eight? 19. But how does one say, "A week ago"?

51

Seasons. Weather.

la saison, *the season.*	**en (dans) quelle saison**, *at what season?*
le printemps, *the spring.*	**au printemps**, *in spring.*
l'été (m.), *the summer.*	**en été**, *in summer.*
l'automne (m.), *the autumn.*	**en automne**, *in autumn.*
l'hiver (m.), *the winter.*	**en hiver**, *in winter.*
la neige, *the snow.*	**le champ**, *the field.*
la pluie, *the rain.*	**le sable**, *the sand.*
le vent, *the wind.*	**la cour**, *the yard, the court.*
le tonnerre, *the thunder.*	**le proverbe**, *the proverb.*

Faire (irregular), *to do, to make.*

Present Indicative.	Imperfect Indicative.	Future.
je fais, *I do, I am doing,*	**je faisais.**	**je ferai**, *I shall do* or
tu fais. [*I make* or *am making.*	**tu faisais.**	**tu feras.** [*make.*
il fait.	**il faisait.**	**il fera.**
nous faisons.	**nous faisions.**	**nous ferons.**
vous faites.	**vous faisiez.**	**vous ferez.**
ils font.	**ils faisaient.**	**ils feront.**

Imperative.

singular.	plural.
fais, *make, do.*	**faisons**, *let us make* or *do.* **faites**, *make, do.*

Observe the following impersonal constructions:

Quel temps fait-il?	*What kind of weather is it?*
Il fait beau (temps),[1]	*It is fine (weather).*
Il faisait mauvais hier,	*It was bad weather yesterday.*
Il faisait de la pluie,	*It was rainy.*
Il fera froid demain,	*It will be cold to-morrow.*
Il fait du vent,	*It is windy.*
Il fait chaud,	*It is warm.*
Il fait froid,	*It is cold.*
Il neige,	*It snows.*

[1] In Lesson 48, we had **le temps** used as the subject of the verb **être.** It cannot be the subject of any form of the verb **faire.**

Il tonne,	*It thunders.*
Il éclaire,	*It lightens.*
Il grêle,	*It hails.*
Il pleut (pres. ind. of **pleuvoir**, irreg.),	*It rains.*
Il pleuvait (imperf. ind.),	*It was raining, it rained.*
Il pleuvra (future),	*It will rain.*

1. Le printemps est une belle saison. 2. C'est la saison des fleurs. 3. Quand il pleut, prenez votre parapluie. 4. D'où tombe la pluie? 5. Quand il pleut ou quand il neige, on dit qu'il fait mauvais (temps). 6. Le temps est mauvais. 7. Voici un proverbe: après la pluie, le beau temps. 8. En quel mois sommes-nous à présent? 9. Les arbres ont des feuilles en été; mais en hiver ils n'en ont plus. 10. Combien de jours a ce mois-ci? 11. Combien en aura le mois prochain? 12. Que font les enfants d'une école? 13. Notre cour est belle tout l'été. 14. Tout le monde aime les champs au printemps, ils sont si verts. 15. Vous faites trop de bruit; n'en faites plus.

1. Name the seasons. 2. Do you like all the seasons? 3. Why does one love the spring? 4. Where do people go in summer? 5. Does it snow in summer or in autumn? (Use *ni . . . ni* in answer.) 6. When does it snow? 7. Do you like the snow? 8. Is there much in this part of the country? 9. Is it raining? 10. Was it raining this morning when you came to school? 11. Did you open your umbrella? 12. Umbrellas are very useful when it rains, are n't they? 13. Is it cold here? 14. Is it too warm? 15. In what season is it cold? 16. What season is this (in what season are we)? 17. Is it windy to-day? 18. What kind of weather is it in July? 19. Does it often thunder in the winter? 20. What do the children do [1] at the seashore?

[1] See 12th sentence in French exercise of this Lesson.

21. Where do they play? 22. Where do they play in the country? 23. Are the pupils playing in the yard or are they working in their class-room? 24. You are making a great deal of noise, — what are you doing? (I am closing the window.) 25. Is autumn the season of fruits or flowers?

52

Ages. Dimensions.

(1) In asking or stating ages, the following constructions are used:

Quel âge avez-vous?	*How old are you?*
J'ai vingt ans,	*I am twenty years old.*
Quel âge a votre cousine?	*How old is your cousin?*
Elle a quinze ans, et son petit frère en a dix,[1]	*She is fifteen years old, and her little brother is ten.*
Elle est âgée de quinze ans,	*She is fifteen.*
Elle est plus âgée que lui de cinq ans,	*She is five years older than he.*
A l'âge de quarante ans,[1]	*At the age of forty.*

(2) Dimensions are expressed as follows:

De quelle hauteur est cette église? / **Quelle est la hauteur de cette église?** — *What is the height of this church?*

Une église haute de cent pieds, *A church one hundred feet in height.*

Une maison d'une largeur de trente pieds, *A house thirty feet wide.*

Un jardin de cent pieds de longueur,[2] *A garden a hundred feet long.*

L'escalier est large de dix pieds, / **L'escalier a dix pieds de largeur,**[2] / **L'escalier a une largeur de dix pieds,** — *The staircase is ten feet broad.*

Cette table a six pieds de longueur sur quatre de largeur, *This table is six feet by four.*

Cet arbre-ci est plus haut que celui-là de vingt pieds, *This tree is twenty feet taller than that.*

[1] Observe that the years must always be expressed in French. If **ans** has already occurred in the sentence, **en** takes its place.

[2] **Long, large,** and **haut** may be used for **longueur, largeur,** and **hauteur** in this construction; **épais** and **profond** are not so used instead of **épaisseur** and **profondeur.**

Savoir (irregular), *to know* (*a fact*).

Present Indicative.	Imperfect Indicative.	Future.
je sais, *I know.*	**je savais**, *I knew.*	**je saurai**, *I shall know.*
tu sais.	**tu savais.**	**tu sauras.**
il sait.	**il savait.**	**il saura.**
nous savons.	**nous savions.**	**nous saurons.**
vous savez.	**vous saviez.**	**vous saurez.**
ils savent.	**ils savaient.**	**ils sauront.**

un édifice, *a building.*
l'escalier (m.), *the staircase.*
long (m.), **longue** (f.), *long.*
large, *broad, wide.*
profond, *deep.*
épais (m.), **épaisse** (f.), *thick.*
l'âge (m.), *the age.*
les dimensions (f.), *dimensions.*
la hauteur, *the height.*
la longueur, *the length.*
la largeur, *the breadth, the width.*
la profondeur, *the depth.*
l'épaisseur (f.), *the thickness.*
le pouce, *the thumb, the inch.*
vraiment, *truly, really.*

1. On a bâti encore un grand édifice dans la rue du Temple. 2. Vraiment? je ne le savais pas. 3. Est-ce une église ou une école? 4. C'est une école. 5. Quel grand édifice! 6. De quelle hauteur est-il? 7. Il a cent pieds de hauteur. 8. Est-ce que cette école est déjà occupée? 9. Combien d'élèves y a-t-il? 10. Il y en a six cents. 11. Quel âge ont-ils? 12. Les plus âgés ont peut-être dix-sept ou dix-huit ans, et les moins âgés en ont treize ou quatorze. 13. Quel âge avez-vous? 14. J'ai dix-neuf ans et demi. 15. Savez-vous quel âge a votre sœur? 16. Elle a seize ans, et mon frère en a treize. 17. Je ne sais pas pourquoi nos amis ne sont pas encore revenus. 18. Nous le saurons bientôt, je pense.

1. How high is this table? 2. It is three feet high. 3. What are the other dimensions? 4. It is four feet wide by five and a half feet long. 5. I knew that it was

a foot longer than ours. 6. Here is another table; this one is thirty inches in height. 7. What a pretty little box! 8. It is a square one, is n't it? 9. This water is very deep. 10. What is its depth? 11. It is said that it is a hundred feet deep. 12. I know that it is over (more than) forty feet in depth. 13. How old are you? 14. Don't you know how old I am (my age)? 15. I know that you are two or three years older than I. 16. How old is your brother? 17. Is he only six? 18. He is over six; he will be seven the first of next month. 19. Is Charles fourteen or fifteen years old? 20. He is neither fourteen nor fifteen, he is only twelve and a half. 21. Really? Are you sure of it? 22. Yes, sir, I know it. 23. What is the length of this room? 24. What a thick book!

53

The interrogative pronoun **lequel**, *which*, *which one*, has the following forms:

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.
lequel, *which, which one.*	**laquelle.**	**lesquels.**	**lesquelles.**
duquel, *of which, of which one.*	**de laquelle.**	**desquels.**	**desquelles.**
auquel, *to which, to which one.*	**à laquelle.**	**auxquels.**	**auxquelles.**

Observe the difference between the use of **quel** (adjective) and **lequel** (pronoun):

Quel homme? *Which man?*
Quel est ce livre? *What is this book?*
Lequel de ces hommes? *Which of these men?*

Dire (irregular), *to say, to tell.*

PRESENT INDICATIVE.	IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.	FUTURE.
je dis, *I say, I am saying, I do say.*	**je disais**, *I was saying, I said, I used to say.*	**je dirai**, *I shall say.*
tu dis.	**tu disais.**	**tu diras.**
il dit.	**il disait.**	**il dira.**

nous disons.	**nous disions.**	**nous dirons.**
vous dites.	**vous disiez.**	**vous direz.**
ils disent.	**ils disaient.**	**ils diront.**

IMPERATIVE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	
dis, *say.*	**disons**, *let us say.*	**dites**, *say.*

une personne, *a person.*
une jeune personne, *a young lady.*
la jeune fille,[1] *the girl.*
les jeunes gens, *the young men.*
le miroir, *the mirror.*
le fauteuil, *the arm-chair.*
sauvage, *wild.*
domestique, *domestic.*
absent, *absent.*
garder, *to guard, to keep.*
emporter, *to carry away* or *off.*
remporter, *to carry back, to win.*
envoyé, *sent* (past part.).
bien (adv.), *well.*
mieux (adv.), *better.*
le mieux (adv.), *best.*
aimer mieux, *to like better, to prefer.*

Notice: (1) The adverb **bien** is irregularly compared. (2) In the superlative of an adverb, **le** is invariable. (3) In the idiom **aimer mieux**, **mieux** is not usually separated from **aimer**, except by a second negative such as **pas, jamais, plus,** etc.

1. Lequel de ces jeunes gens est sourd? 2. Dites-vous que c'est celui qui est près de la table? 3. Laquelle de ces jeunes personnes est votre cousine? 4. Elle n'est pas ici, elle est sortie. 5. Duquel de ces romans parliez-vous? 6. Disiez-vous que vous aimiez mieux celui-ci? 7. De laquelle de ces jeunes filles avez-vous reçu ce joli miroir? 8. De Jeanne; c'est la plus chère de mes amies. 9. A laquelle de ces jeunes personnes a-t-il envoyé les choses qu'il a achetées ce matin? 10. De quelles jeunes personnes parlez-vous? 11. Je parle de celles que nous avons vues l'été dernier à la campagne. 12. Auxquels de ces messieurs doivent-ils de l'argent? 13. Lequel de ces deux écrivains aimez-

[1] **Fille**, *daughter, girl,* is rarely used in the latter sense without an adjective.

vous le mieux? 14. J'aime mieux celui qui a écrit *Les Misérables*. 15. Moi aussi. 16. Tout le monde aussi, n'est-ce pas? 17. Cela va sans dire.

For Oral Drill. — 1. I am going; I am making. 2. Are you doing? Are you saying? 3. Is he not going? Is he not making? 4. Who is making? Who is going? 5. Who says? Who knows? 6. Do you go? Do you know? 7. They are saying; they are doing. 8. We never know; we never do. 9. They always say; they always go. 10. Does she ever know?

Change the tenses of the above sentences to the imperfect (I was going, I was making, *etc.*); *then repeat in the future* (I shall go, I shall make, *etc.*).

(*A*) 1. Here are six hats; which one is the best? 2. I do not know which one is the best, but I know which one I like the best. 3. There are a great many pupils in that school. 4. They say it is our neighbor's children who carry off all the prizes. 5. Who says it? 6. The pupils say it. 7. Which ones? 8. Which of those arm-chairs is the highest? 9. This is much higher than the others. 10. Which [of them] shall you choose? 11. I prefer this one. 12. So do I. 13. Which of these needles shall you keep? 14. This one; carry away the others. 15. Which of the horses they have bought are the strongest and finest? 16. My father says that these, to which the man is giving some water, are the best. 17. How many persons are there here?

(*B*) 1. Here are several pens; which is yours? 2. Which is mine? 3. There are six books on my table; are they yours? 4. Whose are they? 5. Which of these pencils is yours? 6. Haven't you any?

7. Here are two; which do you prefer? 8. Do you like wild animals? 9. Name some. 10. Which ones do you like best? 11. What domestic animals do you like? 12. Do you know which are the most useful to man? 13. Which? 14. Do you prefer dogs to cats? 15. Do you know why? 16. Shall I tell why? 17. Which of the rooms of this building is the largest? 18. All of the boys are here; which of the girls are absent? 19. Which one of my pupils is standing? 20. Which insects make honey? 21. Does this house belong to you? 22. Which of these sentences is the easiest? 23. And you, sir, what do you say? 24. Which one is the shortest? 25. Which of my pupils are the most industrious? 26. Do you know it?

54

Lequel (relative); dont.

(1) We have seen (Lessons 17 and 46) that the nominative case of the relative pronoun is **qui**, and the accusative **que**.

The relative pronoun *which* after a preposition is **lequel (laquelle, lesquels, lesquelles)**.

Où est le crayon avec lequel j'ai écrit cette lettre?
Where is the pencil with which I wrote this letter?
Voici la table sur laquelle j'ai mis votre porte-monnaie.
Here is the table on which I put your purse.

(2) **Où**, *to which, in which, where,* is frequently used for **à** or **dans** and a relative, referring to place and time.

La maison où nous sommes allés, *The house to which we went.*
La ville où il demeure, *The city in which he lives.*
Le moment où elle est partie, *The moment at which* (or *when*) *she started.*

Notice: **d'où** = *whence.*

(3) When *of which, of whom,* or *whose* are not interrogative, they may be expressed by **dont** for both genders and numbers, instead of **duquel, de laquelle, desquels, desquelles**, or instead of **de qui** (persons only).

Apportez-moi le livre dont j'ai parlé, *bring me the book of which I spoke.*
L'homme dont la fille est arrivée, *the man whose daughter has arrived.*
La femme dont (de qui, de laquelle) j'ai vu le fils,[1]
The woman whose son I have seen.

(4) If the object possessed is dependent upon a preposition, then **duquel, de laquelle**, etc., or **de qui** (persons only), must be used instead of **dont**.

L'homme du fils duquel (de qui) nous parlions, *the man of whose son we were speaking.*

Voir (irregular), *to see.*

Present Indicative.	Imperfect Indicative.	Future.
je vois, *I see, I do see, I am seeing.*	**je voyais**, *I saw, I used to see, I was seeing.*	**je verrai**, *I shall see.*
tu vois.	**tu voyais.**	**tu verras.**
il voit.	**il voyait.**	**il verra.**
nous voyons.	**nous voyions.**	**nous verrons.**
vous voyez.	**vous voyiez.**	**vous verrez.**
ils voient.	**ils voyaient.**	**ils verront.**

Imperative.

Singular.	Plural.
vois, *see.*	**voyons**, *let us see.* **voyez**, *see.*

l'adresse (f.), *the address.* **le toit**, *the roof.*
la malle, *the trunk.* **sacrifier**, *to sacrifice.*
de temps en temps, *from time to time.*

1. Montrez-moi la rue dans laquelle vous avez perdu votre chien. 2. Voilà le livre dont je parlais hier.

[1] In a relative clause introduced by **dont**, the noun object must follow the verb: **l'homme dont j'ai trouvé le chapeau.**

3. Où a-t-on mis la feuille de papier sur laquelle vous avez écrit votre nom et votre adresse? 4. Quelqu'un l'a laissée dans la petite chambre où vous avez mis votre malle. 5. Où est la maison dont vous avez parlé? 6. La voilà; n'en voyez-vous pas le toit? 7. Voici le couteau avec lequel j'ai coupé le pain. 8. Où sont les deux plumes avec lesquelles ils ont écrit leurs lettres? 9. Je ne les vois pas. 10. Le garçon dont j'ai emprunté la grammaire est le neveu de Monsieur B. 11. Où voit-on des animaux sauvages? 12. On en trouve beaucoup dans le jardin où nous irons demain. 13. La maison d'où elle est sortie est une des plus jolies de la ville. 14. La dame au fils de laquelle j'ai prêté mes livres français, est l'amie de ma mère. 15. Montrez-moi le tiroir où vous avez mis mes journaux et mes lettres.

For Oral Drill. — 1. I see you; I see them. 2. Do you see me? Do you not see me? 3. Have you seen us? Have you seen them? 4. Shall you see him? Shall you not see her? 5. Had you seen her? Had she seen you? 6. Let us see them; let us not see them. 7. You will have seen them; you will not have seen them. 8. You used to see us; they used to see you. 9. Shall I see you? Shall we see them?

1. Where are the pens with which you wrote your letters? 2. The table upon which you will see your letters and newspapers is in the little room near your own. 3. Show us the books of which you spoke to my sister. 4. When I was in New York, I used often to see the man of whom you are speaking. 5. Did you know that he was here? 6. The ladies whom we saw from time to time are also here this afternoon. 7. Do you see them now? 8. I do not see them, but they were here five minutes ago. 9. Tell me, please, the

name of the city in which they live. 10. Shall I see you at my house next Saturday? 11. No, Miss Barthet; but a week from Sunday you will see me at church. 12. Of what church are you speaking? 13. I am speaking of the one the roof of which we see from this window. 14. Shall we see the prize for which you have sacrificed so much time? 15. When you go to the country next summer, you will see the large white house in which I was born and where I lived when I was young. 16. You will also see the old barn in which the boys used to play. 17. It was there that we used to spend most of the time. 18. Do you know where we live now? 19. I know in what street, but I do not know in what house. 20. Where did you put my souvenirs? 21. I put them into the trunk. 22. Into what trunk? 23. Into the one on which you have put your address. 24. We arrived at the moment when he was finishing his work.

55

Ce qui, ce que.

(1) When the pronoun *what* means *that which*, it is expressed by **ce qui**, if *what* is the subject; by **ce que**, if it is the object.

Donnez-moi ce que vous avez, *give me what you have.*
Ce qui est vrai est bon, *what is true is good.*
Dites-moi ce que c'est, *tell me what it is.*
Ce qui m'amuse, c'est ce tableau, *what amuses me is this picture.*
Ce qui m'amuse, c'est ce qu'il a dit, *what amuses me is what he has said.*
Celui qui est arrivé, (c')est mon père, *he who has come is my father.*

Notice that in some of these examples **ce** is used to repeat the preceding subject. This is the usual construction when the subject is a clause, especially if without the **ce** the meaning of the spoken sentence would not be clear.

Tout ce qui, tout ce que.

(2) *Everything that* or *all that* (sing.) is expressed by **tout ce qui**, if *that* is the subject; by **tout ce que**, if *that* is the object.

Donnez-moi tout ce qui est sur la table, *give me everything that is on the table.*
Donnez-moi tout ce que vous avez, *give me all you have.*

Quoi.

(3) **Quoi**, *what*, may be either a relative pronoun or an interrogative. It never refers to persons and is generally used with a preposition. It is also used alone.

De quoi parlez-vous, *of what are you speaking?*
Voilà de quoi je parle, *that is what I am speaking of.*
Quoi! il est parti? *What! he has gone?*
Il n'a pas de quoi payer, *he has n't anything to pay with.*
Il n'y a pas de quoi (parler), { *there is n't anything worth mentioning,* / *don't mention it, you are welcome.*[1]

Notice also the expression **un je ne sais quoi**, *a certain indefinable something.*

Qu'est-ce qui.

(4) We have seen that the nominative case of the interrogative pronoun *who* is **qui**. The nominative of the interrogative *what* is **qu'est-ce qui.**

Qui est arrivé, *who has arrived?*
Qu'est-ce qui est arrivé, *what has happened?*

Que.

(5) **Que**, either relative or interrogative, is used only as the direct object of a verb.

Que dites-vous, *what do you say?*
Qu'est-ce qu'il a fait, *what did he do?*

[1] In reply to thanks, *You are welcome* is expressed by **Il n'y a pas de quoi** or **Ce n'est pas la peine.**

arriver, *to arrive, to happen.*
payer, *to pay.*
deviner, *to guess.*
remercier, *to thank.*
parler mal, *to speak ill.*
penser mal, *to think ill.*

penser de, *to have an opinion about.*
penser à, *to think of, to consider, to have in mind.*
Que pensez-vous de lui, *what do you think of him?*
Je pense à mes amis, *I am thinking of my friends.*
A quoi pense-t-il, *what is he thinking about?*

1. Savez-vous ce qui est arrivé? 2. Je ne sais pas tout ce qui est arrivé. 3. Devinez ce que j'ai reçu ce matin. 4. De qui l'avez-vous reçu? 5. Dites-moi ce que vous avez fait. 6. Pensez à ce que vous faites. 7. Je pense toujours à ce que je fais. 8. Pensez-vous aussi à ce que vous dites? 9. Dites-moi qui est arrivé. 10. Dites-moi aussi ce qui est arrivé. 11. Je sais ce que c'est. 12. Il pense mal de tout le monde. 13. Mangez ce que vous avez sur votre assiette. 14. Apportez-nous, s'il vous plaît, de la viande, du pain, du beurre et deux tasses de café. 15. Merci, monsieur. 16. Il n'y a pas de quoi, madame. 17. Maintenant, avez-vous de quoi payer? 18. Prenez tout ce que vous voyez.

(*A*) 1. Guess who has come. 2. It is your cousin Mary. 3. It is n't she who has come, it is her brother. 4. Do you know what he has brought? 5. No, what? 6. Think a great deal, but speak little. 7. They say he never says what he thinks. 8. What! he always says everything he thinks. 9. Has she any money? 10. She has lost all she had. 11. Give me everything there is on my table. 12. Here is everything that was in your room. 13. I did not buy everything I saw, because I did n't have anything to pay with.[1] 14. Tell me what has happened. 15. What has happened? 16. I thank you, madam. 17. Don't mention it. 18. He always does everything I desire.

[1] See examples under **quoi**, page 123.

(*B*) 1. What have you done to-day? 2. Don't you know what I have done? 3. Do you know what he will do to-morrow? 4. What has happened? 5. Do you know all that has happened? 6. Of what are you speaking? 7. Of what are you thinking? 8. Of whom are you speaking? 9. Of whom are you thinking? 10. Do you know what I have in my pocket? 11. Guess what I have here. 12. What did you see this morning? 13. Show me what you have written. 14. What! is that all? 15. Tell me who is here to-day. 16. Have you anything to pay with? 17. What! no money? 18. Do you see this package? 19. Do you know what it is? 20. What! you have already opened it? 21. I thank you for (*de*) all you have done for me.

56

Feminine of Adjectives.

(1) We have seen (Lesson 4) that the feminine of an adjective is formed by adding **e** mute to the masculine, while adjectives ending in **e** mute remain unchanged:

MASCULINE.		FEMININE.
vrai,	*true,*	**vraie.**
appliqué,	*diligent,*	**appliquée.**
sincère,	*sincere,*	**sincère.**
moderne,	*modern,*	**moderne.**

(2) Adjectives ending in **-el, -en, -on, -et,** double the final consonant before adding **e** mute for the feminine:

cruel,	*cruel,*	**cruelle.**
tel,	*such,*	**telle.**
un tel,	*such a,*	**une telle.**
ancien,	*ancient,*	**ancienne.**
bon,	*good,*	**bonne.**
muet,	*mute, dumb, silent,*	**muette.**
sujet,	*subject,*	**sujette.**
net,	*clean, neat,*	**nette.**

(3) The following adjectives also double the final consonants in the feminine:

gentil,	*nice, gentle,*	**gentille.**
nul,[1]	*no,*	**nulle.**
pareil,	*like, alike, such,*	**pareille.**
bas,	*low,*	**basse.**
épais,	*thick,*	**épaisse.**
gros,	*big, stout,*	**grosse.**
gras,	*fat,*	**grasse.**
las,	*tired,*	**lasse.**
sot,	*foolish,*	**sotte.**

(4) A few adjectives ending in **-er** and **-et** change **e** to **è** in forming the feminine; for example:

cher,	*dear,*	**chère.**
fier,	*proud,*	**fière.**
léger,	*light,*	**légère.**
premier,	*first,*	**première.**
dernier,	*last,*	**dernière.**
complet,	*complete,*	**complète.**
inquiet,	*uneasy,*	**inquiète.**
secret,	*secret,*	**secrète.**

(5) Adjectives ending in **-f** change **f** to **v**:

actif,	*active,*	**active.**
attentif,	*attentive,*	**attentive.**
neuf,	*new, new-made,*	**neuve.**
vif,	*lively, quick,*	**vive.**

(6) Adjectives ending in **-x** change **x** to **s.**

heureux,	*happy, fortunate,*	**heureuse.**
malheureux,	*unhappy, unfortunate,*	**malheureuse.**
affreux,	*frightful,*	**affreuse.**
généreux,	*generous,*	**généreuse.**
jaloux,	*jealous,*	**jalouse.**
nombreux,	*numerous,*	**nombreuse.**

[1] **Nul** requires **ne** with the verb.

orageux,	*stormy.*	orageuse.
pluvieux,	*rainy,*	pluvieuse.
studieux,	*studious,*	studieuse.

la géographie, *geography.* lourd, *heavy.*
charmant, *charming.* appris, *learned.*
bien, *very, indeed.*

1. Ces dernières nuits ont été très orageuses. 2. Dites-vous que votre sœur est paresseuse? 3. C'est mon frère qui est paresseux. 4. Ma sœur est très appliquée. 5. Cette belle jeune fille est toujours studieuse. 6. Votre cousine n'est-elle pas un peu jalouse? 7. J'ai un chapeau neuf et aussi des bottines neuves. 8. Nos cousins sont heureux, mais nos cousines sont très malheureuses. 9. Ces fraises ne sont-elles pas délicieuses? 10. Vous êtes bien heureuse, madame; vous avez des enfants laborieux. 11. Ces jeunes filles ne sont pas si actives que ces garçons. 12. Les éléphants ne sont pas cruels, mais ces bêtes sauvages sont très cruelles. 13. L'histoire moderne n'est pas si facile que l'histoire ancienne, mais la géographie ancienne est beaucoup plus difficile que la géographie moderne. 14. La langue italienne n'est pas difficile quand on a appris le français. 15. Les grosses fraises ne sont pas si bonnes que les petites. 16. Cette viande est trop grasse; donnez-nous (autre chose,) s'il vous plaît. 17. Voyez-vous cette petite fille? Elle est bien lasse. 18. Pourquoi avez-vous vendu votre petit chien? Il était si gentil! 19. Vous n'êtes jamais trop gentil, vous savez. 20. Ni vous non plus. 21. Ces dames sont jalouses, parce qu'elle a tant de robes neuves. 22. Quelle gentille petite fille!

21. Have you ever read ancient history or studied ancient geography? 2. Which do you prefer? 3. Which do you find the easier? 4. I do not like (either) one.

5. Nor I either. 6. This little beast is pretty, but very cruel. 7. Your watch is too big. 8. This meat is too fat. 9. These men are generous. 10. Are their wives generous too? 11. His sisters are happy, but very tired. 12. Their shoes are new, but her boots are not new. 13. This cream is delicious. 14. It does not rain yet, but I think we shall have a rainy night. 15. It is said that girls are always more attentive and more diligent than boys. 16. It is not true, I am sure (of it). 17. Are n't they a little more studious? 18. Everybody prefers sincere friends to those who are not sincere. 19. Did one ever hear such a story? 20. We like such stories. 21. This table is not heavy; it is very light. 22. That lady is very proud and happy; she has industrious and charming children. 23. Yes, her children are very nice. 24. No[1] pupil is absent to-day. 25. Good! I am glad of it.

57

Feminine of Adjectives (*Continued*).

The following adjectives form their feminine irregularly:

Masculine.		Feminine.
blanc,	*white,*	**blanche.**
franc,	*frank,*	**franche.**
sec,	*dry,*	**sèche.**
public,	*public,*	**publique.**
turc,	*Turkish,*	**turque.**
grec,	*Greek,*	**grecque.**
frais,	*fresh, cool,*	**fraîche.**
faux,	*false,*	**fausse.**
roux,	*red,*	**rousse.**
doux,	*sweet, gentle,*	**douce.**
tiers,	*third,*	**tierce.**

[1] See note, page 126.

causeur,	*talkative,*	**causeuse.**
flatteur,	*flattering,*	**flatteuse.**
bénin,	*benign,*	**bénigne.**
malin,	*cunning,*[1]	**maligne.**
bref,	*brief,*	**brève.**
long,	*long,*	**longue.**
aigu,	*sharp,*	**aiguë.**
favori,	*favorite,*	**favorite.**
jumeau,	*twin,*	**jumelle.**
fou, fol,	*mad,*	**folle.**
mou, mol,	*soft,*	**molle.**
beau, bel,	*beautiful, fine, handsome,*	**belle.**
nouveau, nouvel,	*new*[2],	**nouvelle.**
vieux, vieil,[3]	*old,*	**vieille.**

Observe that each of the last five adjectives of this list has two forms for the masculine. The second form is used only before a noun beginning with a vowel or **h** mute: **un bel oiseau, le nouvel opéra, mon vieil ami.**[3]

la promenade, *the walk.*	**latin,** *Latin.*
la nouvelle, *the news.*	**flatter,** *to flatter.*
l'avenue (f.), *the avenue.*	**causer,** *to chat, to talk.*
un sifflet, *a whistle.*	**siffler,** *to whistle.*

1. Apportez-nous des verres d'eau fraîche. 2. Cette table est longue de cinq pieds et large de trois. 3. La langue grecque est plus riche que la langue latine; elle est aussi plus difficile. 4. On dit que c'est la langue la plus difficile. 5. Je n'ai jamais vu de petite bête plus

[1] Also, *malign, malignant, malicious, mischievous, roguish, shrewd, sly, clever.*

[2] **Nouveau,** standing before the noun, means another: **j'ai acheté de nouveaux livres,** *I have bought some more books;* **une nouvelle maison,** *a new house* (new to us).

Nouveau, after the noun, means *recent:* **j'ai acheté cinq livres nouveaux,** *I have bought five books that have appeared recently.*

Neuf means *newly made, not used yet:* **un habit neuf,** *a new coat;* **une maison neuve,** *a new house* (newly built).

[3] **Vieil** is not absolutely required before a noun beginning with a vowel: **mon vieil ami** or **mon vieux ami,** *my old friend.*

maligne que celle-ci. 6. Cette nouvelle avenue n'est-elle pas publique? 7. Oui, c'est maintenant ma promenade favorite. 8. Tout le monde admire cette longue avenue par laquelle nous sommes venus[1] hier. 9. Ces dames sont bien vieilles. 10. Comment trouvez-vous sa voix[1]? 11. Je la trouve très douce.[2] 12. Sa sœur est la plus franche et la plus aimable des filles. 13. Mon frère a acheté un bel habit neuf, et ma sœur une robe blanche. 14. Cette nouvelle est fausse. 15. Ce bruit[3] n'est pas moins faux.

1. There is a fine[4] animal. 2. Your chain[5] is longer and more beautiful than mine or (than) his. 3. Is that news[6] true? 4. It is not true; it is false. 5. Italian women are more numerous in this country than Greek women. 6. Have you read Rostand's new work? 7. This nice[7] little girl is her father's favorite. 8. Her voice is very gentle. 9. Who is whistling? 10. What a sharp whistle! 11. How do you find the Greek language? 12. This lady talks a great deal, but she is not too talkative. 13. She is always very flattering. 14. She is always flattering somebody. 15. What a beautiful white house! 16. Her hair is red. 17. His sisters are too frank. 18. That poor woman is mad. 19. This beautiful muslin is as white as snow. 20. Why is she so unhappy? 21. Are n't her daughters industrious?

58

Position of Adverbs and of tout, rien, and personne.

(1) Adverbs generally stand after the verb in a simple tense, and before the past participle in a compound tense.

Elle parle bien français, *she speaks French well.*
Elle a bien parlé, *she has spoken well.*

Exceptions: **Hier**, **aujourd'hui**, **demain**, **ici**, **là**, and most adverbial phrases[1] are placed after the past participle.

Ils sont partis hier, *they left yesterday.*
Elle a fini tout à l'heure, *she has just now finished.*

(2) As direct objects, **tout** (*everything, all*) and **rien** (*nothing*) precede the past participle, but **personne** (*nobody*) follows it.

J'ai tout perdu, *I lost everything.*
Je n'ai rien vu, *I have seen nothing.*
Je n'ai rencontré personne, *I met nobody.*

Rien and **personne** (like **jamais**, *never*) require **ne** before the verb; used alone or without a verb, they retain their negative meaning.

Personne n'est absent, *nobody is absent.*
N'avez-vous vu personne? Personne.
Have you seen no one? No one.
N'avez-vous rien trouvé? Rien.
Have you found nothing? Nothing.

ne . . . pas,[2] *not.*
ne . . . point, *not* (emphatic), *not at all.*
ne . . . jamais, *never.*
ne . . . plus,[3] *no more, no longer.*
ne . . . guère, *scarcely, but little.*
ne . . . rien, *nothing, not anything.*
ne . . . personne, *nobody, not anybody, no one.*
hier soir, *last evening.*
ce soir, *this evening, to-night.*
cette nuit, *last night.*
commencé, *begun.* } past
ri, *laughed.* } participles.
dormi, *slept.* }
être bien mis(e),[4] *to be well dressed.*
être mal mis(e), *to be badly dressed.*
enfin, *finally, at last.*
à peine, *hardly.*
tout à fait, *wholly, quite.*
tout à l'heure, *just now.*
alors, *then.*

[1] For example: **tout de suite**, *immediately*; **sur le champ**, *instantly*; **tout à l'heure**, *just now*; **avec plaisir**, *with pleasure*. **A peine**, *hardly*, precedes the past participle. **Tout à fait**, *wholly, quite*, generally precedes.

[2] In these negative expressions, the place of **pas** is taken by **point**, **jamais**, etc. **Personne** alone follows the past participle.

[3] **Plus** (like **jamais**, **rien**, and **personne**), when used without a verb has a negative meaning. **Plus d'argent**, *no more money*; **plus de leçons**, *no more lessons.*

[4] **Mis** (past part. of **mettre**, *to put*) agrees with subject of **être**.

B 1. Mon frère a beaucoup pleuré ce matin. 2. Dites-moi pourquoi. 3. Je vous l'ai déjà dit. 4. Il pensait qu'il avait perdu son argent hier soir. 5. L'avait-il vraiment perdu? 6. Il n'avait rien perdu. 7. Personne n'a rien perdu. 8. Vous avez bien écrit votre thème. 9. Qui a mal agi? 10. Il n'a guère d'argent. 11. Cette lettre est très bien écrite. 12. Saviez-vous alors que votre frère était déjà revenu hier? 13. A quelle heure serez-vous ici demain? 14. Toutes ses amies sont toujours bien mises. 15. Nous sommes partis de Paris hier soir. 16. Personne n'est encore revenu. 17. Je n'ai point réussi. 18. Avez-vous tout vu? 19. Je n'ai rien vu. 20. Quand nous étions chez eux, ils n'avaient encore rien vendu. 21. Personne n'a pris ce que vous avez perdu. 22. Personne? 23. Personne. 24. Mon ami parle bien italien.

B 2. **For Oral Drill.** — 1. He has said nothing; he has seen nobody; he has done well. 2. They have seen everything; they have finally seen everything; they will have seen everything to-morrow. 3. Have you met no one? Have n't you met any one? 4. There is not; there was no longer anything; there will be nobody. 5. Has he lost anything? Who has lost everything? 6. He has not lost anything; he has not lost everything. 7. Nobody came just now; nothing has happened to-day.

B 3 (*A*) 1. You have written your letter badly. 2. His is very well written. 3. There was nobody here yesterday at half-past five in (*de*) the afternoon. 4. When I met your brother just now, he had seen everything. 5. I have not seen anything yet (yet anything seen). 6. Our neighbor has not had much business to-day. 7. Nobody has bought anything because everything is so dear.

8. Those ladies are always well dressed. 9. She laughed so much that I scolded her. 10. I think that poor man has always been so sad that he has never laughed. 11. He has no money at all, and he has scarcely any friends. 12. He has lost everything. 13. No more[1] noise, please. 14. Did you meet no one this morning? 15. No one. 16. What have you for me? 17. Nothing. 18. Let us not wait any longer, let us finish these sentences. 19. We have hardly begun.

(*B*) 1. Did you sleep well last night? 2. At what time did you get here? 3. Has —— written a letter? 4. Has he written it well? 5. Are you very fond of dogs (Do you like much the dogs)? 6. Have you many dogs? 7. How did you like those dogs we saw to-day? 8. Do you speak English? 9. Do you speak French well? 10. What have you lost? 11. Who has lost nothing? 12. Is there anything in this drawer? 13. Who is knocking? 14. What were you doing a moment ago? 15. Who laughed just now? 16. Where shall you spend the night? 17. Whom do you see in the street? 18. Don't you see anybody? 19. Have you entirely finished your exercise? 20. Are there no more sentences?

59

Idioms with Avoir.

(1) In the following idioms **avoir** is used instead of the verb *to be*:

avoir chaud, *to be warm.*
avoir froid, *to be cold.*
avoir faim, *to be hungry.*
avoir soif, *to be thirsty.*
avoir sommeil, *to be sleepy.*
avoir honte, *to be ashamed.*

[1] See note, page 131.

avoir peur, *to be afraid.*	**avoir besoin (de)**, *to need.*
avoir raison, *to be right.*	**avoir l'intention (de)**, *to intend.*
avoir tort, *to be wrong.*	**avoir mal à**, *to have a pain in, to ache.*

In these expressions **bien** is generally used for *very* or *quite* : **vous avez bien raison, il a bien peur.**

Qu'avez-vous ? *What is the matter with you?*
Je n'ai rien, *nothing is the matter with me.*
Il a quelque chose, *something ails him.*
Qu'y a-t-il ? *What is the matter?*
Il n'y a rien, *there is nothing the matter.*
N'importe, *no matter, never mind.*

Recall idiomatic use of **avoir** in asking or stating a person's age (Lesson 52).

Quel âge a-t-il ? *How old is he?*
Il a trente ans, et son frère en a vingt-cinq, *he is thirty, and his brother is twenty-five.*

(2) In speaking of parts of the body, the definite article is ordinarily used for *my, his, her*, etc., if the possessor is the subject of the sentence.

Il a le bras cassé, *his arm is broken.*
Elle a les yeux bleus, *she has blue eyes.*
Montrez-moi la main droite, *show me your right hand.*

(3) With the three words **mal, froid,** and **chaud,** the person spoken of is made the subject of **avoir.**

Il a mal au bras, *his arm is sore*, or *aches.*
J'ai bien froid aux mains, *my hands are very cold.*

le corps, *the body.*	**le cou**, *the neck.*
la tête, *the head.*	**la gorge**, *the throat.*
les cheveux (m.), *the hair.*	**l'épaule** (f.), *the shoulder.*
la figure, **le visage**, *the face.*	**la poitrine**, *the breast.*
	le cœur, *the heart.*
la bouche, *the mouth.*	**le bras**, *the arm.*
la lèvre, *the lip.*	**le coude**, *the elbow.*
la dent, *the tooth.*	**le poignet**, *the wrist.*
la langue, *the tongue.*	**la main**, *the hand.*

la joue, *the cheek.*	**le doigt**, *the finger.*
l'oreille (f.), *the ear.*	**le pouce**, *the thumb.*
l'œil (m.), *the eye.*	**la jambe**, *the leg.*
le nez, *the nose.*	**le genou**, *the knee.*
le menton, *the chin.*	**le pied**, *the foot.*

1. N'avez-vous pas trop chaud si près du feu? 2. J'avais froid tout à l'heure, mais maintenant j'ai trop chaud. 3. Vous avez sommeil, n'est-ce pas? 4. Vous avez raison, monsieur, j'ai bien sommeil. 5. Saviez-vous qu'il avait perdu le bras gauche? 6. Qu'avez-vous ce matin? 7. J'ai mal à la tête. 8. Vous avez faim, peut-être. 9. Non, monsieur, j'ai trop mangé. 10. Donnez-moi la main droite. 11. Avez-vous l'intention de revenir, demain? 12. Qu'y a-t-il? 13. Rien. 14. Elle a tort. 15. N'importe. 16. Ils ont froid aux mains. 17. Ne voyez-vous pas qu'il a perdu la jambe droite? 18. Quel âge a votre sœur? 19. Elle a vingt ans, et son amie en a vingt et un. 20. Elle a les yeux noirs. 21. Le coude, le genou et le pied sont des parties du corps. 22. Il ne parle plus, parce qu'il a mal à la gorge.

(*A*) 1. His eyes hurt him. 2. That old man has only one arm. 3. He lost one when he was young. 4. You are wrong, I think. 5. The elbow and the wrist are parts of the arm. 6. What are you afraid of? 7. I am not afraid of anything. 8. We intend to go to the seashore next summer. 9. How many fingers have we? 10. My knee aches. 11. Give me your hand. 12. Which one,—the right or the left? 13. In winter my feet are always cold. 14. He has acted badly and he is not ashamed of his conduct. 15. No matter. 16. We are cold and hungry. 17. Tell me what is the matter with him. 18. Nothing is the matter with him. 19. He has a broken wrist. 20. She has blue eyes and brown hair. 21. What a beautiful face!

(*B*) 1. Are your ears cold? 2. Is it cold to-day? 3. Is it too warm in this room? 4. What is the matter with you? 5. Have you the tooth-ache? 6. Do you need this pencil? 7. Have you one? 8. Whose is this one? 9. Who is thirsty? 10. Where are your teeth? 11. Have you a sore throat? 12. Is anything the matter with you? 13. Am I right or wrong? 14. Are you always right? 15. Has he blue eyes or brown? 16. How many ears do we have? 17. Have we more eyes than ears? 18. Name ten parts of the head. 19. Name several other parts of the body. 20. Do you intend to stay here this evening? 21. You are sleepy; did n't you sleep well last night? 22. What is the matter? 23. Is there nothing the matter? 24. Are you hungry? 25. You are always hungry, are you not?

60

Conditional Mode.

(1) The present conditional of most verbs may be formed by adding **-ais** to the infinitive. The first person conditional of any French verb is the first person of the future with **s** added. The endings are the same as those of the imperfect.[1]

TERMINATIONS: **-ais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.**

INFINITIVE.	FUTURE.	CONDITIONAL.
porter, *to carry*,	**je porterai**, *I shall carry*,	**je porterais**, *I should carry*.
finir,	**je finirai**,	**je finirais**.
recevoir,	**je recevrai**,	**je recevrais**.
vendre,	**je vendrai**,	**je vendrais**.
avoir,	**j'aurai**,	**j'aurais**.

[1] In other words, to conjugate the conditional, add **s** to the first singular of the future and conjugate with the endings of the imperfect.

être,	**je serai,**	**je serais.**
aller,	**j'irai,**	**j'irais.**
faire,	**je ferai,**	**je ferais.**
dire,	**je dirai,**	**je dirais.**
savoir,	**je saurai,**	**je saurais.**
voir,	**je verrai,**	**je verrais.**

PRESENT CONDITIONAL OF Porter.

je porterais, *I should* or *would*		**nous porterions.**
tu porterais.	*carry.*	**vous porteriez.**
il porterait.		**ils porteraient.**

Conditional Sentences.

(2) The conditional does not denote a condition, but the conclusion to a condition. Neither the future nor the conditional is used after **si** [1] (*if*), except in the sense of *whether*.

Je ne sais pas s'il réussira, *I do not know whether he will succeed.*
Je ne savais pas s'il réussirait, *I did not know whether he would succeed.*

(3) Examine the following examples of conditional sentences :

CONDITION.	CONCLUSION.
Si vous êtes ici demain, *If you are here to-morrow,* *If you will be here to-morrow,*	**je serai content.** *I shall be glad.*
Si vous étiez ici maintenant, *If you were here now,*	
Si vous restiez ici, *If you stayed here,* *If you would stay here,* *If you were to stay here,*	**je serais content.** *I should be glad.*
Si vous étiez resté ici, *If you had stayed here,*	**j'aurais été content.** *I should have been glad.*

[1] **i** is elided in **si** only when followed by **il** or **ils** : **s'il est, s'ils sont.**

It will be seen from these examples that the *if* clause takes the present tense when the conclusion is in the future, and the imperfect when the conclusion is in the conditional. Notice that in the examples this rule holds true, whatever the corresponding English form may be.[1]

If you do (or *will*), *I shall.*
If you did (or *would*), *I should.*

tromper, *to deceive.*
oser, *to dare.*
sans, *without, but for.*
parmi, *among.*
le choix, *the choice.*
longtemps, *a long time, long.*
plus longtemps, *longer.*
il y aurait, *there would be.*
y aurait-il, *would there be?*

1. Si nous avions le temps, nous visiterions cette ville dont il parlait tout à l'heure. 2. Elle est pleine de tableaux magnifiques. 3. Je vous gronderai bien, si vous oubliez ma bague. 4. Ils ne bâtiraient pas tant de maisons, s'ils n'avaient pas beaucoup d'argent. 5. Que feriez-vous, si vous aviez autant d'argent qu'eux? 6. Que ferez-vous lorsque vous serez à Londres? 7. S'il fait trop chaud ici, nous passerons dans la bibliothèque. 8. Si elle avait remporté le prix de français, sa mère aurait été bien heureuse. 9. N'ai-je pas raison? 10. Si vous aviez assez d'argent, où iriez-vous? 11. S'il faisait cela, il tromperait ses meilleurs amis. 12. Sans moi, elle serait tombée. 13. Seriez-vous parti aujourd'hui, si vous aviez reçu cette lettre dont vous me parliez tout à l'heure? 14. Répondriez-vous à sa lettre, si vous aviez de l'encre et une meilleure plume? 15. Je vous aurais attendu jusqu'à deux heures, si j'avais eu le temps.

[1] Recall rules for **quand, aussitôt que,** etc. (Lesson 48), which take the future if futurity is implied, and notice that the contrary is true with **si,** the present being required even if futurity is implied.

¶ 2 **For Oral Drill.** — 1. He will receive; he would receive. 2. If he will sell; if he would sell; if he sold; if he sells; if he were to sell. 3. If he has sold; if he had sold. 4. We shall go; we should go. 5. If we go; if we were to go. 6. She has gone; she had gone; she will have gone; she would have gone. 7. If you see; if you will see; if you saw; if you had seen. 8. I shall do it, if you speak of it; I should do it, if you spoke of it; I should have done it, if you had spoken of it; I will do it, if you will speak of it. 9. Would you do it, if I spoke of it? 10. Will you do it, if I speak of it? 11. Would you not have done it, if I had spoken of it?

¶ 3 1. If he does not obey his parents, he will be unhappy all his life. 2. She would deceive her father, if she dared. 3. But she would not dare. 4. If she had stayed longer yesterday, she would have seen a friend of hers. 5. If you will be here to-morrow evening, you will see him, I think. 6. We should be glad, if he were here now. 7. If it had n't been for you (but for you), I should have lost everything I had. 8. If you were not here, where would you be? 9. If you are not at church next Sunday, where shall I find you? 10. Would he not return all the money he received, if he were not so poor? 11. If she does not prepare her lesson, what shall we do? 12. Would you choose this book, if you had your choice among all these works? 13. Why would you not choose this one? 14. Have you ever visited the largest cities of this country? 15. Should you visit them if you had time? 16. Shall you visit them when you have money enough? 17. If you are at liberty this evening, shall we go to the theatre together?

61

Interrogative Adverbs.

(1) If a sentence begins with an interrogative adverb (**pourquoi, où, quand, comment,** etc.), the rest of the sentence follows the regular order used in asking a question in French (Lesson 5).

Pourquoi votre frère est-il si malheureux?
Why is your brother so unhappy?
Quand ma mère est-elle partie? *When did my mother leave?*
A quelle heure la vôtre est-elle arrivée chez elle?
At what time did yours get home?

(2) An interrogative **lequel, laquelle,** etc., in the objective case, requires the same order.

Lesquels de ses chiens votre frère a-t-il perdus?
Which (ones) of his dogs has your brother lost?

(3) After **où** with the verb in a simple tense, the subject is not usually repeated in the form of a pronoun.

Où est l'église dont vous parliez tout à l'heure?
Where is the church of which you were just now speaking?
Où demeurent vos amis? *Where do your friends live?*
But **Où vos amis sont-ils allés?** or, **Vos amis où sont-ils allés?**

Composite Subject.

When a verb has two or more subjects of different grammatical persons, they are usually summed up by **nous** or **vous**, with which the verb agrees.[1]

Ma mère et moi, nous sommes allés chez vous.
My mother and I went to your house.
Mon frère et vous, vous êtes partis à cinq heures précises.
My brother and you started at exactly five o'clock.
Lui et moi, nous le verrons demain.
He and I shall see him to-morrow.

[1] If the **nous** or **vous** is omitted, the verb agrees with whichever pronoun is understood.

Monsieur, Madame, Mademoiselle.

As a mark of respect, the words **monsieur, madame, mademoiselle**, or their plurals, are placed before the adjective **votre** or **vos** followed by **père, mère, frère, sœur, oncle, cousin, ami**, etc., or their plurals.

J'ai rencontré monsieur votre père et madame votre mère.
I met your father and mother.
Comment se porte mademoiselle votre sœur?
How is your sister?

Jacques, *James.*
Guillaume, *William.*
le quartier, *the quarter.*
le musée, *the museum.*
le bagage, les bagages, *the baggage.*
maintenant que, *now that* (or *now* when *that* is understood).
partout, *everywhere.*
quelque part, *somewhere.*
nulle part,[1] *nowhere.*
sévèrement, *severely.*

1. Mon frère et moi, nous sommes un peu malades aujourd'hui. 2. Pourquoi monsieur votre frère n'a-t-il pas encore répondu à ma lettre? 3. Si vous êtes libre demain soir, que ferez-vous? 4. Quand vous serez libre, je vous visiterai. 5. Combien madame votre mère a-t-elle payé sa maison? 6. Où votre sœur a-t-elle caché ma montre? 7. Elle ne l'a cachée nulle part; la voilà sur la table. 8. Quand mon ami Louis et moi, nous demeurions ensemble dans le quartier latin, nous visitions souvent les musées et les théâtres. 9. Nous ne l'oublierons jamais, j'en suis sûr. 10. Comment votre ami et vous trouviez-vous les tableaux dans le musée du Luxembourg? 11. Nous les trouvions magnifiques. 12. Pourquoi mesdemoiselles vos sœurs ne sont-elles pas contentes maintenant qu'elles ont reçu tant d'argent? 13. Ma mère et moi n'aurions-nous trouvé personne, si nous étions allés chez vous hier

[1] **Nulle part** requires **ne** before the verb.

à quatre heures de l'après-midi? 14. Non, monsieur Guillaume, vous n'auriez trouvé personne.

1. Henry and I have returned from London. 2. When did you and he arrive? 3. We arrived a half-hour ago. 4. Where is your baggage? 5. We left it somewhere. 6. Have n't you looked for it? 7. Yes, we have looked for it everywhere. 8. Mary and I saw it at the station. 9. Why did n't you and she bring it? 10. Because we were not strong enough. 11. What shall we do? 12. I have spoken to James about it; he will bring it this afternoon. 13. If it had n't been for you, we should have lost it. 14. At what time shall you and I go home? 15. When will your parents visit us? 16. Your mother and sister will be here on Tuesday, the 16th, but your father will stay in Paris until the 20th. 17. You forget that you and your brother will have no prize this month, because you have not worked well enough. 18. You know that you always succeed when you work. 19. If you deceive him, he will punish you severely. 20. Which of her friends is your mother visiting? 21. She is visiting a lady who lives in the American quarter. 22. We shall go nowhere to-day, but to-morrow we shall go to the country.

62

PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

(1) There are two classes of personal pronouns, disjunctive and conjunctive.

Disjunctive Pronouns.

moi, *I, me.*	**nous**, *we, us.*
toi, *thou, thee.*	**vous**, *you.*
lui, *he, him.*	**eux**, *they, them* (m.).
elle, *she, her.*	**elles**, *they, them* (f.).

moi-même, *myself.*	**nous-mêmes**, *ourselves.*
toi-même, *thyself.*	**vous-mêmes**, *yourselves.*
lui-même, *himself.*	**eux-mêmes**, *themselves* (m.).
elle-même, *herself.*	**elles-mêmes**, *themselves* (f.).

Also, **vous-même**, *yourself.*

(2) A disjunctive pronoun is used: —

(*a*) **With a preposition**: **chez lui**, *at his house.* (Lesson 26.)
(*b*) Alone: **Qui va là? Moi.** *Who goes there? I.* (Lesson 45.)
(*c*) Predicate nominative: **C'est lui**, *it is he.* **Ce sont eux**, *it is they.* (Lesson 45.)
(*d*) For emphasis: **Moi, je le ferai**, *I shall do it.* **Nous le ferons nous-mêmes**, *we shall do it ourselves.* (See Lesson 64.)
(*e*) When separated from the verb by a word (other than **ne** or a conjunctive pronoun): **Lui seul l'a fait**, *he alone has done it.* **Je n'aime que lui**, *I love no one but him.* **Nous sommes plus riches qu'eux**, *we are richer than they.*

Conjunctive Pronouns.

(3) A conjunctive pronoun is used as subject, direct object, or indirect object of a verb expressed. (If the verb is understood, a disjunctive pronoun must be used, as in (2), *b* above.)

Subject. (nominative)	Direct Object. (accusative)	Indirect Object. (dative)
je, *I.*	**me**, *me.*	**me**, *to me.*
tu, *thou.*	**te**, *thee.*	**te**, *to thee.*
il, *he.*	**le**, *him, it.*	**lui**, *to him.*
elle, *she.*	**la**, *her, it.*	**lui**, *to her.*
nous, *we.*	**nous**, *us.*	**nous**, *to us.*
vous, *you.*	**vous**, *you.*	**vous**, *to you.*
ils, *they* (m.).	**les**, *them* (m.).	**leur**, *to them* (m.).
elles, *they* (f.).	**les**, *them* (f.).	**leur**, *to them* (f.).

(4) **Se**, *himself, herself, itself, one's self, themselves*, a reflexive pronoun, is either singular or plural, direct or

indirect object, according to the construction of the sentence. To prevent confusion, examples of its use will not be given until Lesson 65 is reached. It must not be confused with the disjunctives, **lui-même** and **eux-mêmes**. For the form **soi**, see Lesson 96.

(5) A personal pronoun used as the direct or indirect object of a verb always precedes the verb, except in the imperative affirmative.

Il me prête un dollar, *he lends me a dollar.*
Prêtez-moi[1] **encore un dollar**, *lend me another dollar.*
Ne lui prêtez rien, *don't lend him anything.*
Répondez-vous à votre ami, *do you answer your friend?*
Je lui réponds toujours, *I always answer him.*

une offre, *an offer.*
refuser, *to refuse.*
promis, *promised* (past part.)
fermer à clef, *to lock.*
contre, *against.*
quant à, *as for.*
selon, *according to.*
au contraire, *on the contrary.*

demander quelque chose à quelqu'un,[2] *to ask something of somebody, to ask somebody for something.*
J'ai demandé un canif à un de mes élèves, *I asked one of my pupils for a penknife.*
Je lui ai demandé un canif, *I asked him for a knife.*

1. Parlez-vous contre moi ou contre elle? 2. Je ne parle ni contre vous ni contre elle. 3. Je ne lui aurais pas prêté ma montre. 4. Si nous arrivons avant eux, nous ne fermerons pas la porte à clef. 5. Elles n'agiront certainement pas contre leur intérêt. 6. Voici un porte-monnaie que j'ai acheté pour vous. 7. Si vous ne le trouvez pas beau, je le garderai pour moi-même ou je

[1] The disjunctives **moi** and **toi** are used for **me** and **te** in the imperative affirmative.

[2] Notice that the thing asked for is in the accusative, and the person from whom a thing is asked is in the dative, whatever be the corresponding English form.

le donnerai à votre frère. 8. Je suis sûr qu'il l'admirera et qu'il l'acceptera avec grand plaisir. 9. Est-ce pour moi ou pour vous-même que vous travaillez ? 10. C'est pour moi-même. 11. Qui avez-vous vu aujourd'hui ? 12. Lui. 13. Selon eux, nous ne réussirons pas. 14. Je lui ai donné plusieurs journaux français. 15. Les a-t-elle envoyés à son amie ? 16. Est-ce que vous m'apportez des lettres ou des livres ? 17. Il leur a demandé de l'argent, mais ils ne lui ont rien donné. 18. Quant à elle, je ne l'aime pas. 19. Sans lui, je ne leur aurais jamais écrit cette sotte lettre.

For Oral Drill. — 1. I see you. 2. Do you see me ? 3. I am not looking at him, I am looking at them. 4. Is he looking at us ? 5. At whom are you looking ? 6. Don't look at me. 7. Look at her. 8. Don't look at her. 9. Look at him. 10. What do you see ? 11. I give him nothing. 12. Give them something. 13. Do you do it ? 14. Haven't you done it ? 15. Don't do it. 16. Do it. 17. Do you know it ? 18. Don't say it. 19. They haven't said it.

1. As for you, my friend, I am certain that you will succeed. 2. He does nothing ; she works all the time. 3. Speak to me ; don't speak to her. 4. Shall you accept his offer ? 5. Certainly, I shall accept it with a great deal of pleasure. 6. Your brother has written me, but I haven't answered him yet. 7. If you had lent me your pen, I should have written to him this morning. 8. Did he speak to you against me ? 9. He never speaks against you ; on the contrary, he often speaks in your favor (for you). 10. Let us never speak against any one. 11. Is it for their parents or for themselves that these children are working ? 12. It is for themselves. 13. If

he gives me that money, I shall not keep it. 14. Explain to me why you will not keep it. 15. Why did you refuse her what she asked you for? 16. I had promised it to my neighbor. 17. Ask your neighbor for it. 18. He would punish her severely if she did not obey him.[1] 19. I shall give him back his book, when he gives me back mine. 20. I think you will wait a long time. 21. So do I (I too). 22. Is it you who have bought a new house? 23. It is n't I, it is he.

63

Personal Pronouns: two Objects.

(1) When two personal pronoun objects stand before the verb, the first and second persons precede the third; when both are third person, the direct object precedes the indirect.

Je vous le donne, *I give it to you.*
Il me le donne, *he gives it to me.*
Je le lui donne, *I give it to him.*
Je ne vous le donne pas, *I do not give it to you.*
Je ne vous l'ai pas donné, *I did not give it to you*
Ne me le donnez-vous pas, *do you not give it to me?*
Ne me l'avez-vous pas donné, *did you not give it to me?*

(2) When two personal pronouns stand after the verb (imperative affirmative), the direct object precedes the indirect.

Donnez-le-moi, *give it to me.*
Donnez-les-nous, *give them to us.*
Donnez-la-leur, *give it to them.*

Observe that in the imperative negative, the pronouns precede the verb.

Ne me le donnez pas, *don't give it to me.*
Ne le lui donnez pas, *don't give it to him (to her).*

[1] Remember that **obéir** takes the dative case.

Briefly: Direct and indirect object pronouns precede the verb, except in the imperative affirmative. Before the verb, the order is 1st, 2d, 3d person; if both pronouns are 3d person, the order is direct, indirect. In the imperative affirmative (pronouns after the verb), the order is always direct, indirect.

un article, *an article.*
un instant, *an instant.*
demander pardon à, *to ask pardon of.*
pardonner, *to pardon.*
supposer, *to suppose.*
de ma part, *from me, on my part.*
de sa part, *from him, on his part.*
de votre part, *from you, on your part.*

1. Monsieur, je vous ai demandé le Journal des Débats il y a une demi-heure, et vous ne me l'avez pas donné. 2. Pardon, monsieur, je finis un article très intéressant; je vous le donnerai dans un instant. 3. Cet argent est à votre père, rendez-le-lui. 4. Je pense que voici mon verre; remplissez-le-moi, s'il vous plaît. 5. Je vous remercie. 6. Quand me prêterez-vous l'ouvrage nouveau de Winston Churchill? 7. Vous n'avez pas oublié que vous me l'avez promis, je suppose. 8. C'est ma voisine Mme. N. qui l'a à présent, mais elle va me le rendre ce soir. 9. C'est mon crayon que vous avez là près de vous; passez-le-moi, s'il vous plaît. 10. Je trouve que ces règles ne sont pas très faciles, mais je suppose que vous nous les expliquerez. 11. Dites-lui ce qui est arrivé. 12. Ne nous le dites pas. 13. Si vous lui demandez son parapluie, je suis sûr qu'il vous le refusera. 14. Ne le lui demandez pas. 15. Dites-lui bien des choses de ma part. 16. Ces jolies fleurs sont à ma tante; rendez-les-lui. 17. Je vous demande pardon, mon ami. 18. Et je vous pardonne avec plaisir.

For Oral Drill. — 1. He gives it to me. 2. He does not give it to you. 3. Does he give it to you? 4. Does n't he give it to you? 5. Has n't he given it to me? 6. Do you give them to him? 7. Give them to

us. 8. Don't give them to her. 9. I ask you for it. 10. Do you ask me for it? 11. Ask them for it. 12. Don't ask us for it. 13. Has n't he asked you for it yet? 14. Ask them for them.

1. I have asked you for your pen-holder, and you have n't given it to me. 2. I know it; I have n't given it to you, because I have n't it any longer. 3. To whom have you lent it? 4. I have lent it to her. 5. Has he asked your pardon? 6. If he asks my pardon, I will forgive him. 7. Forgive me too. 8. This pen is not a very good one; do not give it to him. 9. Give it to me. 10. This pencil belongs to her; give it back to her. 11. Do not give it back to her; give it to her sister. 12. You promised her this French book; why don't you give it to her? 13. If you had promised it to me, would n't you have given it to me? 14. Did you ever speak to me of her? 15. I have never spoken to you of her, but I have often spoken to her of you. 16. Mary has asked her brother for his friend's letter, but he will not give it to her. 17. When you meet your uncle, thank him in our behalf. 18. I will do it with pleasure.

64

Personal Pronouns (*Continued*).

(1) **Le** (*so* or *it*). In English, *I am, we are,* etc., may be used alone in answer to a question; the French use **le, la,** or **les** with the verb, to represent the complement of the verb *to be.*

(a) If the complement understood is a noun (or an adjective used as a noun, as **le** or **la malade**, *the patient*),

use **le, la, les**, according to the gender and number of the noun represented.

Etes-vous la fille de ce monsieur? *Are you this gentleman's daughter?*
Oui, je la suis. *Yes, I am.*
Etes-vous les fils de M. Cadieux? *Are you the sons of Mr. Cadieux?*
Non, monsieur, nous ne les sommes pas. *No, sir, we are not.*

(b) If the complement understood is an adjective (or a noun used as an adjective), **le** alone is used.

Etes-vous contentes, mesdames? *Are you pleased, ladies?*
Nous le sommes. *We are.*
Etes-vous gouvernante? *Are you a governess?*
Je le suis. *I am.*

Observe this adjective use of a noun without an article to state a person's position or profession;

Mon père est médecin, *my father is a doctor.*
Le vôtre est avocat, *yours is a lawyer.*

(2) The dative case *to him* is distinguished from *to her* by the use of the disjunctive pronoun with **à**. The same is true of *to them*, masculine and feminine.

C'est à lui que je le donne, non pas à elle, *I give it to him, not to her.*

(3) The disjunctive pronoun is used instead of the conjunctive, when the verb has two direct or two indirect object pronouns.

J'ai rencontré lui et elle, or
Je les ai rencontrés, lui et elle, } *I met him and her.*
Je parlerai à lui et à elle, *I will speak to him and to her.*

le beau-frère, *the brother-in-law.*
la belle-sœur, *the sister-in-law.*
la permission, *the permission.*
la modiste, *the milliner.*
la couturière, *the dress-maker.*
reprocher (à), *to reproach.*
emprunter (à), *to borrow.*
réclamer (à), *to claim.*

1. Si son beau-frère et sa belle-sœur lui **réclamaient** l'argent qu'ils lui ont prêté, est-ce qu'il ne le leur **rendrait** pas? 2. Il le leur rendrait certainement, s'il l'avait. 3. Etes-vous la dame dont mon frère a trouvé la montre? 4. Je la suis. 5. Si vous lui demandez un peu d'argent, je suppose qu'il ne vous le refusera pas. 6. Elle m'a demandé mon nouveau parapluie, mais je ne le lui ai pas donné. 7. Pourquoi me le reprochez-vous? 8. Si vous la rencontrez aujourd'hui, racontez-lui l'affaire, mais ne lui parlez pas de ce que je vous ai dit. 9. Ne le leur dites pas, à eux; dites-le à elles. 10. Permettez-moi de vous offrir ce petit souvenir. 11. Je vous remercie; je l'accepterai avec la permission de ma mère. 12. On m'a emprunté presque tous mes livres. 13. Qui vous les a empruntés? 14. Est-ce vous qui me les avez empruntés? 15. Ce n'est pas moi; c'est un de vos autres amis. 16. Etes-vous le garçon qu'on a puni ce matin? 17. Je ne le suis pas, madame. 18. J'en suis bien content. 19. Moi, je le suis aussi. 20. Cette femme est-elle couturière? 21. Oui, elle l'est.

1. Lend me your gold watch, please. 2. I shall not lend it to you, because you would lose it. 3. Are you sure of it? 4. I am. 5. You are always borrowing something of me. 6. If you reproach him for it, I shall scold you. 7. Are you happy, Mary? 8. I am. 9. Are you John's sister? 10. I am. 11. Are you a milliner, madam? 12. I am not. 13. He is industrious, and so is she. 14. You are not. 15. Are you the gentlemen who were[1] here yesterday? 16. We are. 17. Give it to her, do not give it to them. 18. I should have given it to her if she had asked me for it. 19. Had n't she

[1] Third person plural. Compare with **Est-ce vous qui êtiez ici?**

already asked for it? 20. If you lose anything, look for it yourself. 21. Lend him the watch he has asked you for; but do not lend him any money, because he would never give it back. 22. Do you know it? 23. I do. 24. Here is Jane's letter; give it to her. 25. No, don't. 26. I won't.

65

Pronominal Verbs: reflexive use.

Pronominal or reflexive verbs are conjugated with two pronouns of the same person, one the subject, and the other the direct or indirect object. Any transitive verb may be conjugated reflexively.

Reflexive verbs follow the conjugations to which they belong, and the pronouns are placed according to the rules already given for the position of personal pronouns (Lesson 62). **Se** always precedes the other pronouns of the third person.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

se cacher, *to hide one's self.*

PRESENT INDIC.	je me cache, *I hide myself.*
	tu te caches.
	il / elle — se cache.
	nous nous cachons.
	vous vous cachez.
	ils / elles — se cachent.
IMPERFECT.	je me cachais.
FUTURE.	je me cacherai.
CONDITIONAL.	je me cacherais.
IMPERATIVE.[1]	cache-toi,[2] cachons-nous, cachez-vous.

[1] Imperative negative: **ne te cache pas, ne nous cachons pas, ne vous cachez pas.**

[2] Remember that **moi** and **toi** regularly take the place of **me** and **te** in the imperative affirmative.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

se trahir, *to betray one's self.*

PRESENT INDIC.	**je me trahis**, *I betray myself.*
IMPERFECT.	**je me trahissais.**
FUTURE.	**je me trahirai.**
CONDITIONAL.	**je me trahirais.**

THIRD CONJUGATION.

s'apercevoir, *to perceive.*[1]

PRESENT INDIC.	**je m'aperçois**, *I perceive.*
IMPERFECT.	**je m'apercevais.**
FUTURE.	**je m'apercevrai.**
CONDITIONAL.	**je m'apercevrais.**

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

se rendre, *to surrender* (*one's self*).

PRESENT INDIC.	**je me rends**, *I surrender.*
IMPERFECT.	**je me rendais.**
FUTURE.	**je me rendrai.**
CONDITIONAL.	**je me rendrais.**

se cacher, *to hide* (*one's self*).
se flatter, *to flatter one's self.*
se montrer, *to show one's self.*
se blâmer, *to blame one's self.*
s'admirer, *to admire one's self.*
se porter, *to be* (with reference to health).
se porter bien, *to be well.*
se porter mal, *to be ill.*
se reposer, *to rest, to take a rest.*

s'appeler,[2] *to call one's self.*
s'amuser, *to enjoy one's self.*
se dépêcher, *to hurry, to hasten*
se mêler de, *to meddle with.*
se tromper, *to be mistaken.*
se trahir, *to betray one's self.*
s'apercevoir, *to perceive.*[1]
se perdre, *to get lost.*
se rendre, *to surrender* (one's self).

la route, *the route, the road.*
seul, *alone.*
voyager, *to travel.*
mais, *why* (exclamation).

[1] **Apercevoir**, *to perceive* or *discover an external object*; **s'apercevoir**, *to perceive a fact.* **J'aperçois mon frère**, *I perceive my brother.* **Je m'aperçois que mon frère est arrivé**, *I perceive that my brother has arrived.*

[2] The verb **appeler** has the l doubled before a mute **e**: **j'appelle**, *I call*, **tu appelles, il appelle, ils appellent**, but **nous appelons, vous appelez.**

Comment vous portez-vous ?
Comment allez-vous ?
Comment ça va (familiar), } *How do you do?*
Je me porte bien,
Ça va bien, } *I am well.*
Comment s'appelle-t-il, *What is his name?*

1. Ne trouvez-vous pas que cette petite fille s'admire beaucoup ? 2. On me dit que toutes les jeunes filles s'admirent assez. 3. Vous vous trompez, monsieur ; vous n'en savez rien. 4. Pardon, madame, mais je sais qu'elles ne s'admireront pas tant, lorsqu'elles seront plus vieilles. 5. Comment vous portez-vous ? 6. Je me porte très bien, je vous remercie, monsieur ; et vous ? 7. Je ne me porte pas très bien ce matin. 8. Etes-vous vraiment malade ? 9. Un peu, oui. 10. Qu'avez-vous ? 11. J'ai mal à la gorge et aussi à la tête. 12. Comment s'appelle ce monsieur ? 13. Il s'appelle Joly, je pense ; il est professeur d'histoire. 14. Et cette dame, comment s'appelle-t-elle ? 15. Je pense que c'est Madame Joly. 16. Ces messieurs se flattent que nous leur raconterons notre histoire, mais ils se trompent ; nous la garderons pour d'autres. 17. Ne vous perdrez-vous pas si vous voyagez seul ? 18. Moi, me perdre ! et comment me perdrais-je ? Est-ce que je n'ai pas passé vingt fois par cette route ? 19. Mais oui, c'est vrai ! 20. De quoi vous mêlez-vous ? 21. Je me mêle de mes affaires.

For Oral Drill. — 1. He enjoys himself. 2. He is not enjoying himself. 3. Is he not enjoying himself ? 4. We shall enjoy ourselves. 5. Let us enjoy ourselves. 6. Enjoy yourself. 7. They used to enjoy themselves. 8. She would enjoy herself. 9. They surrender. 10. They will not surrender. 11. Let us surrender. 12. Let us not surrender. 13. Do you

surrender? 14. I am hurrying. 15. Please hurry [up]. 16. Don't hurry. 17. Everybody is hurrying.

(*A*) 1. My name is Mary, and my sister's name is Jane. 2. What is your name? 3. Is your name Louise? 4. That young man's name is John. 5. I am well to-day, but my father is not well. 6. He is very ill. 7. His aunt is not well, and they say that she will never be well. 8. Did you know that they were not well? 9. Why no! 10. They will not show themselves here any more. 11. There are people (*personnes*) who have a good time everywhere. 12. No one has lost your newspaper, you have lost it yourself. 13. Don't hide; I see you. 14. Explain yourself, sir. 15. She is mistaken. 16. Hide. 17. I will at once. 18. He attends to his own affairs. 19. Attend to your own business, please. 20. I always do mind my own business. 21. I perceive that you flatter yourself.

(*B*) 1. What is your name? 2. What is your friend's name? 3. Have you brothers and sisters? 4. What are their names? 5. How are you? 6. I am well; and you? 7. Are all your friends well? 8. Are you attending to my affairs or your own? 9. Are you working or resting? 10. Are you having a good time? 11. Where do you go in summer? 12. Do you enjoy yourself? 13. Are you hurrying? 14. What are the children in this picture doing? 15. This lady flatters herself she sings well; she is much mistaken, is n't she? 16. Is everybody mistaken sometimes? 17. Does one often blame one's self? 18. Who is ill? 19. What is the matter with him? 20. Am I enjoying myself?

66

Pronominal Verbs: reciprocal use.

(1) Some pronominal verbs may be used in the plural either reflexively or reciprocally.

Nous nous flattons, *we flatter ourselves* or *each other.*
Ils se défendent, *they defend themselves* or *each other.*
Elles se blessent, *they wound themselves* or *each other.*

(2) When the verb is used in a reciprocal sense, ambiguity is prevented by the use of **l'un l'autre**,[1] if the verb has two subjects; by **les uns les autres**, if there are more than two subjects.

Nous nous flattons l'un l'autre, *we flatter each other* (two persons).
Ils se défendent les uns les autres, *they defend one another* (more than two persons).
Elles se blessent l'une l'autre, *they wound each other* (two persons).

But in **ils se séparent**, *they part*, **ils se querellent**, *they quarrel*, **ils s'embrassent**, *they kiss each other*, there is no ambiguity, and **l'un l'autre**, etc., are not needed.

assurer, *to assure.*	**se défendre**, *to defend one's self* or *each other.*
attaquer, *to attack.*	**se séparer**, *to part.*
blesser, *to wound.*	**se quereller**, *to quarrel.*
tuer, *to kill.*	**embrasser**, *to embrace, to kiss.*

1. Je pense que vous vous flattez toujours l'un l'autre. 2. Au contraire, votre frère et votre sœur se querellent souvent. 3. C'est vrai, ils se grondent quelquefois; ils ne s'aiment pas trop. 4. Si quelqu'un vous attaque quand vous serez absent, je vous défendrai; et, si quelqu'un m'attaque quand je serai absent, vous me

[1] Do not confuse with **l'un et l'autre**, *both:* **Ils sont partis l'un et l'autre**, *they have both left.* Notice also **l'un ou l'autre**, *either*, and **ni l'un ni l'autre**, *neither.*

défendrez. 5. J'accepte votre offre avec bien du plaisir. 6. Vous le ferez, n'est-ce pas ? 7. Je ne l'oublierai pas, je vous assure. 8. Nous nous défendrons ainsi l'un, l'autre. 9. Si vous vous séparez dans le bois et si vous perdez votre chemin, nous vous chercherons l'un et l'autre. 10. On me dit que les sœurs ne se querellent jamais. 11. Quelle histoire ! vous vous trompez, je vous assure. 12. Celles-ci se querellent souvent, mais elles finissent par s'embrasser. 13. Vos parents se portent-ils bien ? 14. Toujours bien, merci. 15. Ne vous blessez pas l'une l'autre. 16. Ces messieurs se blâment les uns les autres.

For Oral Drill. — 1. They (f.) admire themselves. 2. They (f.) admire each other (two persons). 3. They admire one another (more than two persons). 4. Are you amusing yourselves ? 5. Are you amusing each other ? 6. Part. 7. Let us not part. 8. Do you blame us ? 9. Do you blame yourselves ? 10. Do you blame each other ? 11. Do not blame us. 12. Do not blame each other. 13. They are fond of her. 14. They are fond of each other.

1. We never blame ourselves, I assure you. 2. You know, I suppose, that we always blame each other. 3. These two friends are quarrelling, are they not ? 4. Will they not wound each other ? 5. Will they kill each other ? 6. If this man killed his friend, he would kill himself too, I think. 7. Why do you not like each other ? 8. Who told you that we did (do) not like each other ? 9. Nobody ; but you are always scolding each other. 10. We are not quarrelling. 11. These two brothers quarrel sometimes, it is true, but in spite of that (*cela*) they are very fond of each other. 12. We

always defend one another. 13. Yes, but when you are together you always quarrel. 14. If we lose our way in this wood, we will not separate. 15. If any one attacks us, we will defend ourselves. 16. Who will attack us? 17. I will defend myself and you will also defend yourself. 18. We will defend each other. 19. You forget that I am no longer the young man you saw five years ago. 20. You are mistaken, I do not forget it. 21. Were you and your brother looking for each other this morning?

67

Compound Tenses.

(1) The compound or perfect tenses of a verb are formed by combining its past participle with the various tenses of an auxiliary verb. All transitive and most intransitive verbs form their compound tenses with the auxiliary verb **avoir**. For intransitive verbs conjugated with **être**, refer to the list given in Lesson 25.[1]

donner, *to give*	COMPOUND TENSES.	**retourner**, *to go back.*[2]
j'ai donné, *I have given.*	PAST INDEFINITE	**je suis retourné,** *I have gone back.*
j'avais donné, *I had given.*	PLUPERFECT INDIC.	**j'étais retourné,** *I had gone back.*
j'aurai donné, *I shall have given.*	FUTURE PERFECT	**je serai retourné,** *I shall have gone back.*
j'aurais donné, *I should have given.*	CONDITIONAL PERFECT	**je serais retourné,** *I should have gone back.*

[1] Certain verbs are conjugated with **avoir** or **être**, according to the sense. With **avoir**, attention is called to the action itself, its duration, etc.; with **être**, the result of the action is indicated: **Vous avez grandi en peu de temps**, *You have grown up in a short time;* **Vous êtes grandi maintenant**, *You are grown up now.*

[2] Three French verbs may be translated *return* in English: **rendre**, *to give back*, **revenir**, *to come back*, **retourner**, *to go back.*

(2) Reflexive and reciprocal verbs are always conjugated with **être**.

Se défendre, *to defend one's self.*

Past Indefinite.	Pluperfect.
je me suis défendu, *I have defended*	je m'étais défendu,
tu t'es défendu. [*myself.*	*I had defended myself.*
il s'est défendu.	Future Perfect.
elle s'est défendue.	je me serai défendu,
nous nous sommes défendus.	*I shall have defended myself.*
vous vous êtes défendus.[1]	Conditional Perfect.
ils se sont défendus.	je me serais défendu,
elles se sont défendues.	*I should have defended myself.*

(3) With reflexive and reciprocal verbs, **être** takes the place of **avoir**, and, therefore, the past participle agrees with the preceding *direct* object (Lesson 30).

Ils se sont aimés, *they loved each other.*
Ils se sont écrit une lettre, *they have written a letter to each other.*
Les lettres qu'ils se sont écrites, *the letters they have written each other.*
Ma sœur s'est coupée, *my sister has cut herself.*
Ma sœur s'est coupé[2] **le doigt**, *my sister has cut her finger* (literally, *the finger for herself*).

Observe that in the first, third, and fourth of these examples the past participle agrees with the preceding direct object. In the second and fifth, however, the direct object does not precede the verb, the reflexive pronoun being in the dative case.

se lever, *to rise, to get up.*
se coucher, *to go to bed.*
se promener, *to take a walk* or *a ride.*
s'enrhumer,[3] *to take cold.*
fâcher, *to vex.*
se fâcher, *to get angry.*
adresser, *to address.*
commencer, *to begin.*
grandir, *to grow tall, to grow up.*
simplement, *simply.*
sitôt, *so soon.*
fort (adv.), *very, hard.*

[1] No **s** in this form if **vous** is singular.

[2] Compare: **Ma sœur s'est cassé le bras, ma sœur a le bras cassé,** and **ma sœur m'a cassé le bras.**

[3] **s'enrhumer**, *to catch cold*; **être enrhumé** or **avoir un rhume**, *to have a cold.*

1. A quelle heure vous êtes-vous couché hier soir? 2. Je me suis couché à dix heures et demie. 3. A quelle heure votre frère s'est-il levé ce matin? 4. Il s'est levé à sept heures moins un quart. 5. Votre sœur s'est-elle promenée aujourd'hui? 6. Elle s'est promenée une demi-heure. 7. Elle s'est un peu enrhumée hier soir; c'est pourquoi elle ne se porte pas mieux aujourd'hui. 8. Elles se sont adressées à nous. 9. Elles se sont adressé des lettres. 10. Nous avons vu les lettres qu'elles se sont adressées. 11. Est-ce que vos cousins se sont fâchés lorsque[1] vous leur avez raconté l'affaire? 12. Henri m'a dit simplement que je me trompais, mais Louise s'est fâchée[2] tout de suite. 13. Est-ce que vous ne vous seriez pas fâché, si j'avais fait cela? 14. Nous nous sommes promenés si longtemps ce matin que ma sœur était fort lasse.[3] 15. Mais ne vous êtes-vous reposés nulle part[4]? 16. Si nous étions restés chez nous hier soir, nous ne nous serions pas enrhumés.

For Oral Drill. — 1. I am amusing them. 2. I am enjoying myself. 3. I have amused them. 4. I have enjoyed myself. 5. I used to enjoy myself. 6. I had enjoyed myself. 7. I shall enjoy myself. 8. I should have amused her. 9. I should have enjoyed myself.

Repeat these sentences, making them negative, interrogative, or negative-interrogative, and changing the person and gender of the subject pronouns to third person singular feminine, first person plural masculine, etc.

1. I got up at eight this morning. 2. At what time did you get up? 3. We got up at half-past nine. 4. What a lazy[6] man! 5. I was not well. 6. What was the matter with you? 7. I caught cold two or three days ago, and I had the tooth-ache this morning. 8. Go

to bed at once! you are sleepy. 9. If I went to bed so soon, I should n't rest. 10. Don't get angry. 11. Get up, your friends have arrived already. 12. When she has rested a little longer, perhaps another half-hour, you will tell her that we are ready. 13. Where are the letters you sent each other? 14. We have given them back to each other. 15. Would you have gone to bed so soon, if it had n't been so cold? 16. Have they been out this evening? 17. Yes, sir, they went out with their father at a quarter before eight; they walked until quarter past nine, when (and then) they returned. 18. They enjoyed themselves greatly (much), and I think he did also (he also, I think). 19. Go back home now; and when you are here to-morrow, we will finish together what we began yesterday.

68

En and Y.

(1) **En** and **y**, although used frequently as adverbs, are pronouns. **En** = **de** and a noun or pronoun. **Y** = **à** and a noun or pronoun.

For the use of **en** (*of it, of them, some, any*) with words of quantity, numerals, etc., recall Lesson 37.

Avez-vous des crayons, *have you pencils?*
Oui, j'en ai, *yes, I have.*
Il n'en a pas, *he has n't any.*
Elle en a un, *she has one.*
Apportez-en, *bring some.*

(2) **Y** (*to it, to them, there*) is rarely used in reference to persons.

Pensez-vous à vos leçons, *are you thinking of your lessons?*
J'y pense, *I am thinking of them.*
Pensez-y, *think of them.*
Pensez-vous à vos amis, *are you thinking of your friends?*
Je pense à eux, *I am thinking of them.*

(3) *There* (expressed or understood in English) is expressed by **y** in referring to a place already mentioned, and by **là** in pointing out a place or thing.

Regardez cette maison-là, *look at that house.*
J'y ai demeuré trois mois, *I lived there three months.*
C'est là que vous trouverez ce que vous cherchez.
That is where you will find what you are looking for.

Position of y and en.

(4) **Y** and **en** follow the other pronouns. **Y** precedes **en**.

Je vous les y porterai, *I shall carry them to you there.*
Je vous y en porterai, *I shall carry you some there.*
Il y en a beaucoup, *there are many of them.*

(5) A past participle does not agree with a preceding **en**.[1]

Je n'en ai pas vu, *I have n't seen any.*

(6) In the imperative affirmative, **y** and **en** are joined to the verb, to other pronouns, and to each other.

Prêtez-nous-en, *lend us some.*
Donnez-m'en,[2] *give me some.*

car (conjunction), *for.* **de tout mon cœur**, *with all my heart.*
au moins, *at least.* **quelques-uns, quelques-unes**, *a few, some.*
remercier quelqu'un de quelque chose, *to thank somebody for something.*

1. Avez-vous de l'eau fraîche ? 2. Oui, nous en avons. 3. Donnez-en un verre à votre frère. 4. Vous parlez toujours de mes affaires ; pourquoi vous en mêlez-vous ? 5. Vous vous trompez, je vous assure, si vous pensez que je m'en mêle. 6. N'êtes-vous jamais entré dans cette

[1] If **en** is used with an adverb of quantity which precedes the verb, agreement takes place: **Combien en a-t-on vus ?**

[2] Notice that **me** and **te** do not become **moi** and **toi** before **en**, when used with the imperative affirmative.

belle église ? 7. Non, je n'y suis jamais entré. 8. Combien de livres allemands avez-vous ? 9. J'en ai plus que vous. 10. Il y en a dix sur cette table. 11. Il y a beaucoup de fautes dans sa lettre, mais la vôtre en est pleine. 12. J'en ai compté au moins une douzaine. 13. Voici l'avenue où vos amies se sont promenées tant de fois lorsqu'elles étaient ici l'année dernière. 14. Nous les y avons rencontrées bien des fois. 15. N'y avez-vous jamais vu mon père et ma mère ? 16. Ce n'est pas là que je les ai vus, c'est à l'opéra. 17. Oui, ils y sont allés de temps en temps. 18. Je désirais beaucoup des romans intéressants lorsque j'étais à la campagne, et votre sœur m'y en a envoyé quelques-uns. 19. Les lui avez-vous empruntés ou vous les a-t-elle donnés? 20. Elle m'en a donné plusieurs, mais il y en a aussi que je lui rendrai l'été prochain. 21. Mon frère a reçu des pièces d'or ; il m'en a donné quelques-unes.

1. Have you any money about (*sur*) you? 2. Have I any money? My pockets are full of it. 3. If you have so much, you will give me some, won't you? 4. If you would lend a little to your brother, I am sure he would be very glad of it. 5. He would thank you for it with all his heart. 6. How many books did you leave at home this morning? 7. I left two or three there, but I brought most of them to school. 8. If you have any good hot coffee, bring us a cup (of it), please, for we are very cold. 9. Have you caught cold? 10. Has your mother been at church to-day? 11. She has not, but I have. 12. Have you? 13. Were there many American ladies there? 14. There were a few, at least a dozen. 15. How many times have you been (gone) at the opera? 16. I have been (gone) there twice. 17. He has also been there from time to time. 18. She used to have a

great many friends when she was young; now that she has grown up,[1] she has more than ever. 19. Are you speaking of it? 20. Think of it, but do not speak of it. 21. I will not speak of it there to any one. 22. Are you thinking of it?

69

Personal Pronoun Objects: Summary.

(1) The position of personal pronouns (**se** included) *before the verb* may be shown by the following table:[2]

1. **Me, te, se, nous, vous.**
2. **Le, la, les.**
3. **Lui, leur.**
4. **Y.**
5. **En.**

Or **Me, te, se, nous, vous | le, la, les | lui, leur | y | en.**

Il me le demande.
Ne les leur rendez pas.
Il leur y en a apporté.
On nous les y a envoyés.

(2) In the imperative affirmative, which requires the pronouns after the verb, **le, la, les** precede the other pronouns, and **me** and **te** become **moi** and **toi**, except before **en.**

Montrez-les-moi. **Donnez-m'en.**

le parc, *the park.*
la bonne, *the maid, the servant.*
le boulanger, *the baker.*
le gâteau, *the cake.*
la tranche, *the slice.*
la cuisine, *the kitchen.*
la cuisinière, *the cook.*
la salle à manger, *the dining-room.*

1 See note 1, page 157.

2 In case teachers do not care to use this table, taken from an early edition of Magill's grammar, this lesson, with the exception of the vocabulary, may be omitted, or the exercises may be used for further practice in the use of personal pronouns.

le déjeuner, *the breakfast.*
déjeuner, *to breakfast.*
le dîner, *the dinner.*
dîner, *to dine.*
le savon, *the soap.*
la serviette, *the napkin, the towel.*
le linge, *the linen, the washing.*
laver, *to wash.*
se laver, *to wash (one's self).*
la brosse, *the brush.*
brosser, *to brush.*
le peigne, *the comb.*
peigner, *to comb.*
mériter, *to deserve.*
compris, *understood* (past part.).
volontiers, *willingly.*

1. N'avez-vous pas compris ce que je vous ai dit? 2. Vous avez de si bon lait que je vous en demanderai encore un peu. 3. La bonne en désire aussi; ne lui en donnerez-vous pas? Volontiers. 4. Elle dit qu'elle vous en remercierait beaucoup. 5. Votre frère a tant de jolis romans allemands que je lui en emprunterai quelques-uns. 6. Il ne vous les prêtera pas, je vous assure, car il ne m'en a jamais prêté un seul. 7. Elle n'a pas mérité le prix, parce que, si elle l'avait mérité, on le lui aurait donné. 8. Lui, il ne l'a pas mérité non plus. 9. Ce pauvre garçon a bien faim; coupez-lui une grosse tranche de pain, et donnez-lui aussi du beurre et un verre de lait. 10. Il y en a assez pour lui et pour nous. 11. Vous trouverez ce que vous avez perdu, si vous le cherchez. 12. Ce sont là des histoires intéressantes que vous m'avez racontées. 13. Ne lui en racontez pas. 14. Racontez-m'en souvent. 15. Lui répondez-vous, lorsqu'elle vous parle? 16. Voici sa lettre; répondez-y. 17. N'y pensez plus.

For Oral Drill — 1. We lend them to you. 2. Do you lend them to her? 3. Lend them to her. 4. Lend them some. 5. Lend me some. 6. Have you lent it to us? 7. Has she lent me any? 8. Shall you lend them to them? 9. Are you speaking of it? 10. Are you thinking of it? 11. Let us think of it. 12. Let us speak of it. 13. Speak of it. 14. Think of it.

Repeat, making each sentence negative.

(*A*) 1. There are a great many bakers in this town, but there is only one in our street. 2. We sent our servant there this morning. 3. She bought us bread and cake there. 4. Our cook has bought us some there too. 5. These children have been playing in the yard behind the house and have not washed their hands yet. 6. Here are soap, water, and towels; wash at once. 7. Here is the brush; brush your hair. 8. Here is my dog; if you have any meat, give him some. 9. Here is some bread too, but don't give him any, for he does n't like it. 10. If those apples are not ripe, bring us some others (of them). 11. If you are in Paris next summer, I think I shall visit you there. 12. I shall not be there next year, but my sister will. 13. Bring us a napkin, please. 14. Give us also a slice of bread, a piece of meat, some butter, and a cup of black coffee. 15. I thank you for it. 16. What day of the week are the clothes washed? 17. Don't ask me; I know nothing about it. 18. Comb your hair,[1] and brush your coat.

(*B*) 1. Did n't I ask you what time it was? 2. Did you understand my question? 3. If you understood it, why did n't you answer it? 4. If I ask your pardon, will you forgive me? 5. Do you forgive me [for] it willingly? 6. Are you listening to what I am saying? 7. Is he? 8. Has your father bought a new house? 9. Who sold it to him? 10. Have I told you what has happened? 11. At what time do you get up? 12. At what time do you breakfast? 13. Do you dine at noon? 14. When do you dine? 15. Where do you dine? 16. Do we (does one) always dine there? 17. Shall you relate to us all the amusing stories you heard at Mrs. N.'s? 18. John has won the prize; does he deserve it? 19. Is he proud of it? 20. Would he be proud of it, if he did

[1] **Se peigner** or **se peigner les cheveux**, *to comb one's hair.*

not deserve it? 21. I have n't any more money; have you any? 22. How much? 23. Have you more than I? 24. Have you ever been for a walk in that beautiful park? 25. What did you see there? 26. Were you alone? 27. Have you a good cook? 28. Is she in the kitchen?

70

The Definite Article.

(1) The definite article is used in a general sense (Lesson 33).

L'or et l'argent sont des métaux précieux, *gold and silver are precious metals.*

La rose est la reine des fleurs, *the rose is the queen of flowers.*

(2) The definite article is used before names of continents, countries,[1] provinces, rivers, and mountains.

l'Asie, *Asia.*
l'Allemagne, *Germany.*
l'Angleterre, *England.*
la Suisse, *Switzerland.*
l'Espagne, *Spain.*
les États-Unis, *United States.*
la Seine, *the Seine.*
le Rhin, *the Rhine.*
le Mont Blanc, *Mont Blanc.*
les Alpes, *the Alps.*
les Montagnes Rocheuses, *the Rocky Mountains.*

(3) The article is omitted before the name of a country used adjectively.

Le roi d'Italie, *the King of Italy.*
La bière d'Allemagne, *German beer.*
Du vin de France, *French wine.*
La reine de Hollande, *The Queen of Holland.*

(4) The article is omitted after **en**, *in*, the preposition regularly used to express *where, where to*, before feminine names of countries.

Aller, ou voyager, en Europe, en Asie, en Afrique, en Chine, en Angleterre, en Russie, en France, en Écosse (*Scotland*), **en Normandie, en Alsace.**

[1] The names of countries, cities, etc., found in the examples of this lesson are not repeated in the vocabulary.

(5) It is not used after **à**, *to, at, in,*[1] before names of towns.

à Liverpool, à Rome, à Berlin, à Constantinople. But **à la Haye**, *at the Hague*, **à la Nouvelle-Orléans**, *in New Orleans*, **au Havre**, *at Havre.*

(6) But it is used after **à** with masculine names of countries.

Demeurer au Japon, au Mexique, au Canada, au Brésil, au Chili, aux États-Unis.

(7) *In* is expressed by **dans** before the name of a country accompanied by an adjective or any other attribute.

Dans l'Amérique du Nord (du Sud), *in North (South) America.*
Dans toute la France, *in the whole of France.*
Notice also: **Dans le midi de la France**, *in the south of France.*

(8) *From* is expressed by **de** without the article before names of towns and feminine names of countries, and by **de** with the article (**du, de la, de l', des**) before masculine names of countries or names of countries accompanied by an attribute.

Partir, ou venir, de Paris, de Londres, de France, d'Angleterre, d'Italie, etc. **Partir, ou venir, du Japon, du Mexique, du Canada, de l'Amérique du Nord, des Indes Orientales (ou Occidentales).**

le président, *the president.*
le roi, *the king.*
la reine, *the queen.*
l'empereur, *the emperor.*
l'impératrice, *the empress.*
le prince, *the prince.*
la princesse, *the princess.*
la capitale, *the capital.*
la terre, *the earth, the land.*
le fleuve, *the river.*
le palais, *the palace.*
royal, *royal.*
les habitants (m.), *the inhabitants.*
habiter, *to live in, to inhabit.*
précieux, *precious.*

[1] Notice that **dans Paris** means inside the city, not in the suburbs, while **à Paris** means either.

1. J'irai en France le mois prochain. 2. Si mes amis y vont avec moi, nous ne partirons pas avant le 21 du mois. 3. Nous avons visité plusieurs pays l'été dernier: la Belgique, la Hollande, la Prusse, l'Autriche et l'Italie. 4. Avez-vous jamais été en Espagne? 5. Oui, j'y ai été deux fois. 6. Dans deux ou trois ans, si nous sommes assez riches, nous irons au Canada, aux États-Unis, et au Mexique. 7. Monsieur votre frère n'est-il pas allé passer l'hiver en Italie? 8. Non, monsieur, il est allé dans le midi de la France, à la petite ville de Cannes. 9. La laine d'Espagne, dit-on, est préférable à celle d'Angleterre et à celle de Saxe. 10. Ces messieurs sont-ils venus du Japon ou d'Espagne? 11. Ces messieurs-ci sont venus d'Angleterre. 12. Avez-vous visité d'autres pays? 13. Lesquels? 14. Quel pays habitent les Espagnols?

(*A*) 1. When we were in Washington last year, we saw the president. 2. Napoleon III was the last emperor of France. 3. When we are in Europe next year, we shall visit the royal palace of Fontainebleau and also that of Versailles. 4. The Rhine is a much longer river than the Thames. 5. Paris, on the Seine, is the capital of France. 6. It is not the largest city in the world, but it is certainly the most beautiful. 7. London has a great many more inhabitants. 8. I have one brother that lives in Mexico, another in China, and a sister in Canada. 9. We came from Canada. 10. Two friends of ours went to Europe six months ago. 11. They are spending the winter in Rome. 12. They have seen the pope, but they have not seen the King of Italy. 13. They have not yet been received at court. 14. Man's heart is never satisfied. 15. The Hague is an interesting city; it is the capital of Holland. 16. Everybody is fond of Switzerland.

(*B*) 1. Is France larger than the United States? 2. Is it larger or smaller than Germany? 3. Which is the smallest country in Europe? 4. Which is the largest? 5. In what country do we live? 6. Do we live in North or South America? 7. What is the capital of this country? 8. Who is the president now? 9. Where does he live? 10. Who has seen him? 11. Did you ever see a queen? 12. Has England a king or a queen? 13. Tell me the name of the Emperor of Germany. 14. Have the French[1] a king or an emperor? 15. Is Chamonix in Switzerland or in France? 16. The French love France, and the English love England; what country do we love? 17. Are princes always happy? 18. Are there princesses who are unhappy? 19. Where is London? 20. Where is Glasgow? 21. Have you ever been there? 22. What are the most useful metals? 23. Which are the most precious?

71

The Definite Article (*Continued*).

(1) The definite article is frequently used instead of the possessive adjective, when there is no possibility of a misunderstanding (Lesson 59).

Il a levé les mains, *he raised his hands.*
Elle s'est cassé le doigt, *she broke her finger.*
Elle a le doigt cassé, *she has a broken finger.*
Il m'a saisi le bras, *he seized my arm.*

(2) The definite article is used instead of a possessive adjective in expressions like the following:

Elle est debout, le livre à la main, *she is standing with the book in her hand.*
Il est parti, le chapeau sous le bras, *he left with his hat under his arm*

[1] Adjectives of nationality used as proper nouns begin with capitals.

(3) It is used for *a* or *an* before nouns of weight, measure, or number; but **par** is used for *a* or *an* before time.

Le miel coûte quinze sous la livre, *honey costs fifteen cents a pound.*
Ce drap coûte un franc le mètre, *this cloth costs one franc per metre.*
Les crayons coûtent dix sous la douzaine, *pencils cost ten cents a dozen.*

But

Il gagne six francs par jour, *he earns six francs per day.*
Il mérite deux mille francs par an, *he deserves two thousand francs a year.*

(*a*) A similar use is that with the days of the week to express a regular occurrence.

Le dimanche est le premier jour de la semaine.
Que faites-vous le samedi?
But **Où serez-vous samedi prochain?**

(4) It is also used with titles, professions, and before a proper noun preceded by an adjective (except in direct address), or after monsieur, madame, or mademoiselle.

Le président Carnot a été assassiné en 1894, *President Carnot was assassinated in 1894.*
Bonjour, docteur, *good-day, doctor.*
Bon soir, monsieur le comte, *good evening, count.*
Le petit Henri est malade, *little Henry is ill.*

(5) Likewise, before adjectives used as nouns.

Aimez-vous mieux le bleu que le jaune, *do you prefer blue to yellow?*
Avez-vous appris l'espagnol, *have you learned Spanish?*
Sait-il l'italien, *does he know Italian?*

With the verb **parler**, the article is usually omitted before the unmodified name of a language, and it is always omitted after **en**.

Parle-t-il bien anglais, *does he speak English well?*
Il s'exprime bien en italien, *he expresses himself well in Italian.*

(6) Regularly in the partitive article: **du, de la, de l', des**[1] (Lesson 38).

Voici des livres; en voulez-vous, *here are books, will you have some?*

Exceptions (**de** only):

(*a*) In expressions denoting quantity, measure, and material (Lessons 34, 35, 36).

Combien de paires de gants, *how many pairs of gloves?*
Une table de bois, *a wooden table.*

(*b*) After negative verbs (Lesson 40).

Il n'y a pas d'argent, *there is n't any money.*

(*c*) Adjective before the noun (Lesson 41).

Donnez-nous de meilleur pain, *give us better bread.*
But **Avez-vous du pain noir,** *have you any black bread?*

(*d*) After a verb, an adjective, or any expression, followed by **de**.

Se nourrir de noix, *to live (feed) on nuts;* **être fatigué de livres,** *to be tired of books;* **avoir besoin d'amis,** *to need friends.*

The Indefinite Article.

(1) With an unmodified predicate noun, denoting a profession, a trade, or a nationality, **un** or **une** is omitted.

Son père est médecin; le mien est avocat, *his father is a doctor; mine is a lawyer.*
Elle est Française,[2] *she is a French woman.*

Exception:

After **voici, voilà, c'est,** or **ce sont.**
Voici un médecin, *here is a doctor.*
C'est une Allemande, *she is (that is) a German woman.*

[1] In meaning, **des** is the plural of **un** and **une**. **Il a un livre; il a des livres.**

[2] Notice again use of capitals with adjectives of nationality used as proper nouns.

le métier, *the trade, the profession.*
le professeur, *the professor.*
le peintre, *the painter.*
le ministre, *the minister.*
l'architecte, *the architect.*
le charpentier, *the carpenter.*
le coiffeur, *the barber.*
le jardinier, *the gardener.*
le dentiste, *the dentist.*
le musicien, *the musician.*
la musique, *the music.*
l'étage (m.), *the story* (of a house).
parisien, *Parisian.*
canadien, *Canadian.*
hollandais, *Dutch.*
se coucher, *to go to bed.*
s'exprimer, *to express one's self.*
enseigner, *to teach.*
comme, *as, like;* (exclamation) *how!*

1. Quelle est l'adresse de M. Grandet? 2. C'est 52 rue St. Honoré. Il demeure au deuxième étage. 3. Le président et sa famille habitent la Maison Blanche. 4. Ce Canadien est-il peintre ou musicien? 5. Il n'est ni l'un ni l'autre, il est architecte. 6. Il est arrivé à quatre heures, la canne à la main. 7. Nous avons lu l'histoire de Henri quatre. 8. N'avez-vous ni livre ni papier? 9. Je n'ai ni l'un ni l'autre. 10. Voyez-vous ces messieurs? 11. Ce sont des professeurs anglais qui sont venus visiter les écoles américaines. 12. Ce monsieur-là est Hollandais. 13. Aimez-vous la musique? 14. Parlez-vous italien? 15. J'ai étudié l'italien il y a longtemps, mais je ne sais pas le parler. 16. Quelle est l'adresse des Foulquier? 17. C'est 78 avenue de la Grande Armée, près du Bois de Boulogne. 18. Avez-vous jamais vu le prince de Galles (Wales)? 19. Je n'ai jamais vu ni prince ni princesse. 20. Mon père a vu le roi Edouard VII.

(*A*) 1. This American speaks French like a Parisian. 2. Who says so? 3. The Parisians say so. 4. Say it in French. 5. He has also learned Italian, Spanish, and German. 6. I have an American friend who speaks modern Greek well. 7. Does he express himself as well in Greek as in English? 8. She is an Englishwoman.

9. Those are English professors. 10. There they are now. 11. When I saw her, she was sitting near the window with a straw hat on her head. 12. I have a headache. 13. He has toothache and a sore foot. 14. Eggs are sometimes sixty cents a dozen. 15. How much does that (*cela*) cost? 16. That costs ten cents a pound. 17. That costs dear. 18. We wrote to him three times a week. 19. He has black hair. 20. That carpenter you were speaking of builds a great many houses; he earns thirty dollars a week. 21. This poor French painter earns only nine hundred francs a year. 22. Spanish and Italian are easy, but German is difficult for most Frenchmen. 23. Queen Victoria had the best heart in the world. 24. The wicked are always unhappy.

(*B*) 1. Who has a gold watch? 2. Have you anything in your hand? 3. Anything for me? 4. How much do I owe you? 5. Who is hungry? 6. Is any one sleepy? 7. Who needs money? 8. Do you? 9. Does this man like children? 10. Do I live at your house? 11. Where do I live? 12. Did your brother live in Germany last year? 13. Are you studying German? 14. Have you been taught French? 15. Do you speak English? 16. Do you know Spanish? 17. What is your father's trade? 18. Is he a doctor or a lawyer? 19. Do you like languages? 20. Where is German spoken? 21. Are letters brought to you every day? 22. At what time do you go to bed? 23. Who cuts your hair? 24. What is your address? 25. Where is little Mary to-day? 26. How much does butter cost? 27. Do you like cheese? 28. What color do you prefer? 29. Do you like it better than yellow? 30. When you are in France next summer, shall you speak French? 31. Will they answer you in English?

72

How Long?

(1) An action or state which began some time ago and is still going on, is expressed in French by the present tense. In such cases, *how long* = **depuis quand** (literally, *since when*).

Depuis quand êtes-vous ici, *how long have you been here?*
Je suis ici depuis trois mois, *I have been here three months.*
Depuis quand travaille-t-elle, *how long has she been working?*
Elle travaille depuis une demi-heure, *she has been working a half hour.*

(*a*) These ideas may also be expressed by another idiom:

Combien (de temps) y a-t-il que vous êtes ici?
Il y a trois mois que je suis ici.
Combien y a-t-il (de temps) qu'elle travaille?
Il y une demi-heure qu'elle travaille.

(2) If the action or state is entirely past, *how long* = **combien de temps** with the past indefinite (perfect).

Combien de temps êtes-vous resté ici, *how long did you stay here?*
Je suis resté ici (pendant) trois mois, *I stayed here three months.*
Combien de temps a-t-elle travaillé, *how long did she work?*
Elle a travaillé une demi-heure, *she worked half an hour.*

Combien de temps may not be used with the simple imperfect to denote length of time.

Pendant expresses the whole duration of an action or state from beginning to end. In this sense it may generally be omitted. Compare with **depuis quand**, which denotes action still going on.

(3) If the action or state is future, *how long* = **combien de temps** with the future tense.

Combien de temps serez-vous ici, *how long shall you be here?*
Je serai ici trois mois, *I shall be here three months.*
Combien de temps travaillera-t-elle, *how long will she work?*
Elle travaillera une demi-heure, *she will work half an hour.*

surtout, *above all, especially.* **seulement,** *only.*
donc, *then, therefore, pray.* **ensuite,** *afterwards, next.*

1. Je demeure à Glasgow depuis quinze ou seize ans. 2. Henri y a demeuré pendant trois ans, de 1900 à 1903. 3. Il était trois heures quand j'ai commencé mes exercices. 4. Il est maintenant quatre heures et demie; je travaille donc depuis une heure et demie. 5. J'étudierai encore une demi-heure, et ensuite je visiterai ma tante qui est un peu malade depuis hier. 6. Votre cousin n'est-il pas à Londres depuis longtemps? 7. Oui, monsieur, mon cousin demeure à Londres depuis trois mois. 8. J'ai demeuré à Londres quinze jours, il y a bien longtemps. 9. J'étais alors très jeune, et j'aimais le plaisir plus que le travail. 10. J'ai peu voyagé depuis, mais je pense que je visiterai bientôt Paris. 11. Quand êtes-vous allé à Edimbourg? 12. Il y aura trois mois à la fin de la semaine prochaine. 13. Combien y a-t-il de temps que votre frère est revenu? 14. Il y a quinze jours qu'il est arrivé de Bruxelles. 15. Combien de temps êtes-vous restés à Paris? 16. Nous sommes restés trois jours à Marseille, deux à Lyon, deux à Dijon, et huit à Paris. 17. Combien de temps resterez-vous à Londres? 18. Quinze jours seulement.

(*A*) 1. Is n't it your uncle who lives in that old house? 2. Yes, sir, it is he; he has lived in it for over twenty years. 3. How long have your father and mother been travelling in Europe? 4. They have been there for several months. 5. What cities have they visited? 6. They have visited all of the most interesting cities of

France, Germany, and Holland. 7. How long were they at the Hague? 8. They were there two or three weeks. 9. It is there that they read Dumas's La Tulipe Noire for the first time. 10. They were there when you were, were they not? 11. When they were in Paris, they sent us a beautiful gift. 12. Have n't they been in Switzerland yet? 13. They are there now. 14. How long have they been there? 15. For seven or eight weeks, I think. 16. Are they fond of the Alps? 17. Very; my father, especially. 18. Where will they spend the winter? 19. They will be in Rome four months; then they will go to Naples, where they will stay from the first of April until the fifth or sixth of May. 20. They will be in America before June first.

(*B*) 1. At what time did you come in? 2. What time is it now? 3. How long have you been here? 4. How long shall you stay here? 5. At what time did these pupils come to school this morning? 6. Did they come yesterday? 7. How long did they stay? 8. Who stayed the longer, you or I? 9. I was here an hour ago; where were you? 10. Were you alone? 11. Where do you live? 12. Have you lived there long? 13. How long? 14. I have been looking for my pen for ten minutes; have you seen it? 15. Who took it? 16. Did n't you know it was mine? 17. You have some friends who have been travelling for a long time, have you not? 18. Have n't they always travelled a great deal? 19. How long were they in Canada last summer? 20. How long have you studied French? 21. Who studies German? 22. How long has he studied it? 23. How long did you study the seventy-first lesson? 24. When did you study it?

73

The Past Definite (Preterite).

avoir.	**être.**	**donner.**
j'eus, *I had.*	**je fus,** *I was.*	**je donnai,** *I gave*
tu eus.	**tu fus.**	**tu donnas.**
il eut.	**il fut.**	**il donna.**
nous eûmes.	**nous fûmes.**	**nous donnâmes.**
vous eûtes.	**vous fûtes.**	**vous donnâtes.**
ils eurent.	**ils furent.**	**ils donnèrent.**

finir.	**recevoir.**	**vendre.**
je finis, *I finished.*	**je reçus,** *I received.*	**je vendis,** *I sold.*
tu finis.	**tu reçus.**	**tu vendis.**
il finit.	**il reçut.**	**il vendit.**
nous finîmes.	**nous reçûmes.**	**nous vendîmes.**
vous finîtes.	**vous reçûtes.**	**vous vendîtes.**
ils finirent.	**ils reçurent.**	**ils vendirent.**

Using the above paradigms as models, learn to conjugate the past definite of any regular verb; also, of the irregular verbs already given: **aller, j'allai, tu allas,** *etc.;* **faire, je fis,** *etc.;* **dire, je dis,** *etc.;* **savoir, je sus,** *etc.;* **voir, je vis,** *etc. Observe that the only change of vowel occurs in the third person plural of the first conjugation.*

Use of Past Tenses.

(1) We have seen (Lessons 10 and 67) that the conversational past tense, denoting what happened, is the *past indefinite* (perfect).

(2) We have also seen (Lesson 42) that the *imperfect* is used to express a customary or continued past action, or a description of the state of things when something took place or while it was taking place; also with **si** in conditional clauses (Lesson 60).

(3) The *past definite* is used only in a formal narrative[1] or historical style to denote an action or state which was definitely completed in past time.

Study carefully the following examples:

J'ai vu votre cousine il y a quelques jours, *I saw your cousin a few days ago.*

Où était-elle ? Elle était chez elle.

Where was she? She was at home.

Etes-vous allé la voir ? *did you go and see her?*

Quand j'étais à Paris, j'allais souvent à l'opéra.

When I was in Paris, I often went (used to go) to the opera.

Le prince Edouard dans cette bataille ne perdit pas soixante hommes.

Prince Edward in that battle did not lose sixty men.

Les anciens Egyptiens embaumaient les morts, les Grecs et les Romains les brûlaient.

The ancient Egyptians embalmed the dead, the Greeks and Romans burned them.

On embauma le corps d'Alexandre et on le transporta en Egypte.

They embalmed the body of Alexander and carried it to Egypt.

le libraire, *the book-seller.*	**le paysan,** *the peasant, countryman.*
l'ennemi (m.), *the enemy.*	**louer,** *to praise.*
la bataille, *the battle.*	**couronner,** *to crown.*
une épée, *a sword.*	**s'écrier,** *to exclaim, to cry out.*

1. Le roi donna dix louis au paysan et lui pardonna sa faute. 2. Un officier blessé fut transporté chez lui, où deux médecins furent appelés. 3. On demanda à un petit garçon, pourquoi il désirait du sel; c'est, répondit-il, pour la viande qu'on me donnera. 4. Aussitôt qu'il eut fini son travail, il partit pour la campagne. 5. Il me demanda pardon et m'assura qu'il me donnerait

[1] The past anterior (compound of the past definite) expresses an action immediately prior to that expressed by the past definite. It is used only after **quand, aussitôt que, à peine,** etc.

Après qu'il eut parlé, il s'assit, *after he had spoken, he sat down.*

À peine fut-il arrivé que midi sonna, *he had scarcely arrived when it struck twelve.*

tout ce que je désirais. 6. La reine lui donna de beaux bijoux; ils étaient dans une boîte d'or. 7. Quand nous étions jeunes, je travaillais pendant que ma sœur jouait. 8. Elle chantait tous les jours. 9. Son maître lui prêta quinze francs et lui demanda s'il en était content. 10. Voici la petite histoire que l'on m'a racontée: Il y avait une fois un homme qui était très pauvre. Il avait une femme qui était malade depuis longtemps et cinq enfants qui avaient toujours faim. Un jour une fée (*a fairy*) arriva et lui dit, "Mon pauvre ami, je vous apporte quelque chose dont vous avez besoin," *etc.*

1. The tree fell and killed the man who was cutting it. 2. Their daughter won the prize and received a beautiful book. 3. After the death of the queen, they crowned her son. 4. The old book-seller often told us stories, and one day he told us the story of his life. 5. The poor man cut the bread and afterwards he gave the knife to a child that was standing near him. 6. My father says that he used to forget everything when he was at school. 7. Now he never forgets anything. 8. Who won the battle, the English or the French? 9. Napoleon lost the battle of Waterloo. 10. Was he not a great general in spite of that? 11. At last the general perceived the enemy. 12. He perceived that the soldiers were not far from the city which he was defending. 13. What did he do? 14. He seized his sword and cried, "Let us receive them well!" 15. What happened then? 16. His men obeyed him immediately and defended the city. 17. The king praised the general and gave him a magnificent sword.

The names, *descriptive past*, given to the imperfect, and the *narrative past*, given to the past definite, in the Grandgent grammars, are highly suggestive of the proper use of these tenses.

74

Peculiarities in Verbs of the First Conjugation.

All the verbs of the first conjugation but two (**aller**, *to go*, and **envoyer**, *to send*) are regular, and consequently are conjugated like **donner**. A few present some peculiarities caused by changes made for the sake of pronunciation. These verbs are: —

1st. Those having an **e** mute before their last syllable, such as **mener, lever, appeler, jeter.**

2d. Those having an **é** before their last syllable, as **célébrer, préférer, espérer.**

3d. Those ending in **-yer.**
4th. Those ending in **-cer** or **-ger.** } See Lesson 75.

E mute before a Final Syllable.

Verbs of the first conjugation having an **e** mute in the syllable next before the ending of the infinitive change that **e** mute to **è**, when, in the course of the conjugation, the syllable following contains **e** mute.

lever, *to lift.*

PRESENT INDICATIVE.
je lève.
tu lèves.
il lève.
nous levons.
vous levez.
ils lèvent.

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.
je levais.
tu levais,
etc.

PAST INDEFINITE.
j'ai levé.

PAST DEFINITE
je levai,
etc.

FUTURE.
je lèverai,
etc.

CONDITIONAL.
je lèverais,
etc.

IMPERATIVE.
lève.
levons.
levez.

Exceptions: — Most verbs ending in **-eler**, as **appeler**, and **-eter**, as **jeter**, double the **l** or the **t**, instead of changing **e** mute to **è**, the effect on the pronunciation being the same.

appeler, *to call*; **jeter**, *to throw*.

PRESENT INDICATIVE.
appelle, jette.
appelles, jettes.
appelle, jette.
appelons, jetons.
appelez, jetez.
appellent, jettent.

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.
appelais, jetais,
etc.

PAST DEFINITE.
appelai, jetai.

FUTURE.
appellerai, jetterai.

CONDITIONAL.
appellerais, jetterais

IMPERATIVE.
appelle, jette.
appelons, jetons.
appelez, jetez.

Acheter, *to buy*, **geler**, *to freeze*, and a few other verbs follow the rule for **lever**, instead of doubling **l** or **t**:

j'achète, tu achètes, il achète, nous achetons, etc.; j'achèterai, etc.
je gèle, tu gèles, il gèle, nous gelons, etc.; je gèlerai, etc.

É before a Final Syllable.

All verbs of the first conjugation having an **é** in the syllable next before the ending of the infinitive change that **é** into **è**, when the following syllable contains **e** mute, except in the future and in the conditional.

célébrer, *to celebrate*.

PRESENT INDICATIVE.
je célèbre.
tu célèbres.
il célèbre.
nous célébrons.
vous célébrez.
ils célèbrent.

PAST DEFINITE.
je célébrai,
etc.

FUTURE.
je célébrerai.
tu célébreras,
etc.

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.
je célébrais,
etc.
PAST INDEFINITE.
j'ai célébré,
etc.

CONDITIONAL.
je célébrerais,
etc.
IMPERATIVE.
célèbre.
célébrons.
célébrez.

Note carefully that there is no change of accent in the future or conditional of verbs having **é** in the penult.

mener,[1] *to guide, to lead, to take.*
amener, *to bring* (to escort hither).
ramener, *to bring back.*
emmener, *to take away.*
promener, *to take out for a walk, a drive, etc.*
se promener, *to go for a walk, a drive, etc.*
appeler, *to call.*
s'appeler, *to be called, to be named.*
jeter, *to throw.*
acheter, *to buy.*
geler, *to freeze.*
espérer, *to hope.*
régner, *to reign.*

préférer, *to prefer.*
répéter, *to repeat.*
posséder, *to possess.*
la bonne, *the maid.*
la fête, *the festival, the birthday.*
la poupée, *the doll.*
le cas, *the case.*
le chiffre, *the figure, the number.*
la glace, *the ice.*
ailleurs, *elsewhere.*
d'ailleurs, *besides.*

fort (adv.), *hard, very.*

1. Ma petite sœur préfère ces poupées-ci à celles-là, mais je trouve celles-là bien plus belles que celles-ci. 2. Est-ce que vous n'exagérez pas un peu? 3. J'exagère peut-être quelquefois, mais je n'exagère pas dans ce cas-ci. 4. Quand célébrerez-vous la fête de votre cousine? 5. Je pense que sa fête tombe le 13 du mois prochain. 6. Le 13! c'est un bien vilain chiffre! Je préférerais le 12 ou le 14. 7. D'ailleurs le 13 est un dimanche, nous célébrerons cette fête le 12. 8. Espérons que le temps sera beau; l'année dernière nous avons eu un temps très orageux.

1 Distinguish carefully difference in meaning of **mener** and its compounds and **porter** and its corresponding compounds: **porter,** *to carry, to bear;* **apporter,** *to bring;* **rapporter,** *to bring back;* **emporter,** *to carry away.*

9. Vous êtes bien content ce soir : il gèle très fort, vous patinerez demain. 10. Nous n'avons pas patiné l'hiver dernier; il n'a presque jamais gelé. 11. Où achetez-vous vos livres et vos plumes ? 12. J'achète mes livres, mes plumes et mes journaux chez le libraire au coin de notre rue. 13. Comment t'appelles-tu, mon enfant ? 14. Marie ! c'est un bien joli nom ; Marie, mène-moi près de ta maman. 15. La bonne promènera les enfants ce soir ; ils ne sont pas prêts maintenant. 16. N'est-ce pas vous qui possédez tant de grandes maisons ? 17. Non, monsieur, ce n'est pas moi, c'est mon frère.

1. Would they not prefer these books to those ? 2. Let us hope that they will always be happy. 3. Do you not exaggerate his fortune ? 4. I never exaggerate anything ; he possesses many houses and lands. 5. I hope you will not forget the book I lent your sister on Tuesday last. 6. When will you celebrate my birthday ? 7. [On] what day does it fall ? 8. On the 13th of the month. I think it is also on a Friday. 9. Unfortunate [man], we shall never celebrate your birthday ; choose another day, if you please, but do not choose the 23d, because we shall be too busy that day. 10. If you bring your friends we will take them with us. 11. When will the maids take the children out to walk ? 12. I shall buy those pictures for my mother. 13. Where are you taking my brother ? 14. I am taking him to school 15. Throw away that pear, it is very bitter. 16. Guess who called us when we were out walking. 17. I hope that we shall skate to-morrow. 18. Is it freezing a little this evening ? 19. I think it is freezing hard ; it has been freezing for [the last] twenty-four hours. 20. The ice will be strong enough to-morrow.

75

Verbs ending in -yer.

In verbs ending in -yer, the **y** becomes **i** before **e** mute.

However, verbs ending in **-ayer** may keep the **y** throughout or change to **i** before **e** mute: payer, *to pay*, je paye or je paie, je payerai or je paierai. In verbs in -eyer the **y** remains unchanged.

employer, *to employ, to use.*

PRESENT INDICATIVE.
j'emploie.
tu emploies.
il emploie.
nous employons.
vous employez.
ils emploient.

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.
j'employais, etc.
nous employions, etc.

PAST INDEFINITE.
j'ai employé,
etc.

PAST DEFINITE.
j'employai.
tu employas.
il employa.
nous employâmes.
vous employâtes.
ils employèrent.

FUTURE.
j'emploierai, etc.

CONDITIONAL PRESENT.
j'emploierais, etc.

IMPERATIVE.
emploie.
employons.
employez.

Verbs ending in -cer or -ger.

In a verb ending in -cer or -ger, **c** or **g**, being soft in the infinitive, must be kept soft throughout the verb. When, therefore, in any tense, **c** or **g** would be followed by **a** or **o**, a cedilla is placed under the **c** and a silent **e**[1] is placed after the **g**, to keep them soft.

placer, *to place;* plaçant, *placing;* nous plaçons, *we place.*
manger, *to eat;* mangeant, *eating;* nous mangeons, *we eat.*

[1] Observe that the **e** inserted after **g** to keep it soft is merely an orthographical sign, and has no effect except on the quality of the **g**. See Introduction, page 8.

commencer, *to begin.* **protéger**, *to protect.*

PRESENT INDICATIVE.

je commence.	je protège.
tu commences.	tu protèges.
il commence.	il protège.
nous commençons.	nous protégeons.
vous commencez.	vous protégez.
ils commencent.	ils protègent.

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.

je commençais, etc.	je protégeais, etc.
nous commencions, etc.	nous protégions, etc.

PAST DEFINITE.

je commençai, etc.	je protégeai, etc.
ils commencèrent.	ils protégèrent.

FUTURE.

je commencerai.	je protégerai.

CONDITIONAL PRESENT.

je commencerais.	je protégerais.

appuyer, *to support, to lean.*
aboyer, *to bark.*
effrayer, *to frighten.*
balayer, *to sweep.*
un balai, *a broom.*
annoncer, *to announce.*
prononcer, *to pronounce.*
menacer, *to threaten.*
corriger, *to correct.*
envoyer, *to send.* Future and conditional, irregular: **j'enverrai, j'enverrais.**
déranger, *to disturb.*
se déranger, *to disturb one's self, to be disturbed.*
obliger, *to oblige.*
le coin, *the corner.*
le devoir, *duty, exercise* (lesson), *task.*
sale, *dirty.*
assez, *rather, somewhat.*

1. Essayez ce crayon-ci, c'est mon meilleur. 2. Vraiment, il est très bon; j'essaierai aussi votre plume. 3. Combien payez-vous vos plumes et vos crayons? 4. Je paie très cher les plumes et les crayons que j'achète chez

le libraire du coin. 5. Nettoyez un peu cette table, elle est toujours sale. 6. Monsieur, je nettoie cette table tous les matins. 7. Ce vilain petit chien que vous amenez toujours avec vous aboie presque tout le temps. 8. On dit que les chiens qui aboient ne mordent jamais. 9. Le proverbe est assez juste, mais votre chien a mordu hier le doigt de Charles. 10. Appuyez, s'il vous plaît, ma chaise contre cette table. Merci. 11. Je mangeais, je pense, lorsque vous êtes entré. 12. Vous mangiez, en effet, avec vos frères et vos sœurs, mais je n'ai dérangé personne. 13. Nous ne prononçons pas les langues anciennes mieux que vous. 14. Si nous dérangeons votre frère, maintenant qu'il est occupé, il ne sera pas content. 15. J'achèterai cette montre la semaine prochaine; je n'ai pas assez d'argent aujourd'hui. 16. Protégeons les malheureux. 17. Si vous menacez cet enfant, il ne travaillera plus. 18. Ne menaçons personne.

(*A*) 1. You will frighten your mother if you break that glass. 2. They would pay us this evening what they owe us, if they had money enough. 3. She is very lazy; she does not employ her time well. 4. If you pay my aunt before Saturday, I am certain that she will be rather pleased. 5. Why does he not send that book to his cousin? 6. Why will you not send my letters to your sister as soon as you receive them? 7. Those dogs bark all night. 8. Have you not cleaned my watch? 9. Do not try his pen; it is a poor one. 10. My brother was eating his breakfast, when my aunt came in this morning. 11. He used to correct all my letters and all my exercises. 12. Let us not dine before seven o'clock. 13. Let us always oblige our friends. 14. Formerly they pronounced very well. 15. Why do you always disturb

your uncle? 16. When he was young he ate too often. 17. They announced the sad news to their friends as soon as your letter arrived. 18. Don't disturb yourself.

(*B*) 1. What do we eat? 2. Who is reigning now in England? 3. Who throws my books out of (*par*) the window when I am out? 4. If you had a brother, who would take him to school? 5. Nobody. 6. Would n't you? 7. Do you skate? 8. When? 9. Shall you skate to-morrow? 10. Did you skate last winter? 11. Is it freezing now? 12. Do we pronounce French well? 13. Do you try? 14. Do you know who sweeps this room? 15. Do you? 16. With what do they sweep? 17. Where do you buy books in this town? 18. Where do you buy yours? 19. Who pays [for] them? 20. Who is calling us? 21. [On] what day does your birthday come (fall)? 22. Who celebrates it? 23. Do you like ices? 24. Is there any one here who does n't eat them? 25. Do dogs frighten you when they bark? 26. Do barking dogs (dogs that bark) bite? 27. Shall you repeat what I have told you? 28. What 's your father's name? 29. What 's yours? 30. How do you employ your time? 31. Do we always correct what we have written? 32. Do you go walking or riding? 33. When I am in Europe, what shall I send you? 34. At what time shall you get up to-morrow morning? 35. Is your name Charles or John? 36. Have you written these sentences well? 37. Are you sure? 38. Who told you so?

76

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

General Statement of its Use.

(1) The subjunctive mode is rarely used in a principal clause.[1] It is used in a subordinate clause, when the principal clause implies necessity, uncertainty, or emotion.

Il faut qu'elle soit punie.
It is necessary that she should be punished, or *she must be punished.*[2]
Je ne crois pas qu'il ait vu son fils, *I do not think he has seen his son.*
J'ai peur qu'elle ne soit morte, *I am afraid she is dead.*

(2) If, however, the thought expressed in the principal clause implies certainty or probability, the verb in the subordinate clause is in the indicative. Compare:

Je pense que la santé est préférable à tous les biens.
I think health is preferable to all riches.
Je ne pense pas que la santé soit préférable à tous les biens.
I do not think health is preferable to all riches.

Observe that the conjunction **que**, by which a subjunctive is generally introduced, itself governs no mode. It is the thought contained in the verb of the principal clause that determines the mode used in the subordinate clause.

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE.

avoir		**être**	
que j'aie.	**que nous ayons.**	**que je sois.**	**que nous soyons.**
que tu aies.	**que vous ayez.**	**que tu sois.**	**que vous soyez.**
qu'il ait.	**qu'ils aient.**	**qu'il soit.**	**qu'ils soient.**

IMPERATIVE.

aie, *have.* **ayons,** *let us have.*	**sois,** *be.* **soyons,** *let us be.*
ayez, *have.*	**soyez,** *be.*

[1] For the subjunctive in principal clauses, see Lesson 86.

[2] Instead of saying in English "*It is necessary that I should go,*" "*It is necessary that he should work to win,*" etc., say "*I must go,*" "*He must work to win,*" etc.

Impersonal Verbs.

Impersonal verbs that do not imply certainty or probability are followed by the subjunctive.

Subjunctive.	Indicative.
il semble, *it seems,*	**il me (lui, nous,** etc.) **semble,** *it seems to me (to him, to us,* etc.).
il faut, / **il est nécessaire,** *it is necessary.*	**il paraît,** *it appears, it is evident, it transpires.*
il importe, / **il est important,** *it is important.*	**il résulte,** / **il s'ensuit,** *it follows, the result is.*
il convient, / **il est convenable,** *it is fitting, it is proper.*	**il est sûr,** / **il est certain,** *it is sure, certain.*
il vaut mieux, / **il est préférable,** *it is better, or preferable.*	**il est évident,** *it is evident, plain.*
il se peut, / **il est possible,** *it may be.*	**il est démontré,** *it is proved.*
il est juste, *it is right.*	**il est clair,** *it is clear, obvious.*
il est faux, *it is false.*	**il est manifeste,** *it is manifest.*
il est bon, *it is good.*	**il est décidé,** *it is decided.*
il est essentiel, *it is essential.*	**il est vrai,** *it is true.*
il est indispensable, *it is indispensable.*	**il est probable,** *it is probable.*
il est urgent, *it is urgent.*	**il est vraisemblable,** *it is likely.*
il est temps, *it is time.*	**il est incontestable,** *it is incontestable.*
il est heureux, *it is fortunate.*	**il arrive,** *it happens.*

Il semble, *it seems,* is also frequently followed by the indicative. This is the case when there is no doubt in the mind of the speaker.

1. Il faut que mon frère ait ce livre aujourd'hui. 2. Il est urgent qu'il l'ait. 3. Il me semble que vous avez eu tort dans cette discussion; est-ce qu'on parle ainsi à sa sœur? 4. J'ai eu tort, c'est vrai, mais il est certain qu'elle m'a beaucoup dérangé. 5. Il paraît que sa mère est malade depuis quinze jours. 6. Je leur ai sacrifié mon temps et mes ambitions; faut-il encore qu'ils aient tout mon argent? 7. Se peut-il que M. votre cousin soit

encore ici après cette affaire dont vous me parliez hier? 8. Il est essentiel que j'aie de l'argent avant huit heures; envoyez-le-moi. 9. Est-il indispensable que madame votre mère ait cette lettre cette semaine? 10. Oui, mademoiselle, c'est urgent; il faut qu'elle ait tous les détails de l'affaire avant son départ. 11. Il est clair que vous avez sommeil; couchez-vous vite. 12. Il est vrai que je suis fatigué car j'ai beaucoup marché aujourd'hui, et il est possible que j'aie sommeil. 13. Il est décidé qu'on ne donnera pas à votre ami la permission qu'il demandait. 14. Il se peut qu'elle ait acheté une nouvelle maison. 15. Il est probable qu'elle demeurera tout près de nous.

1. Is it possible that I am wrong? 2. It is possible that you are wrong, but it is probable that you are right. 3. Is it right that he should be punished? 4. Yes, it is (*c'est*) right; he has disobeyed his father and refused his sister everything she has asked him for. 5. It is right, then, that he be punished. 6. It may be that your sister and her friend have already arrived. 7. I must have some paper, ink, and pens at once. 8. My father has been travelling for some time, and it is possible that he is now in Paris. 9. It is time that I should have news of him (some of his news). 10. She must have her new dress to-night. 11. It is important for her to have it, but must she have it? 12. It is certain that she will not have it before to-morrow. 13. Is it possible that they have not brought it? 14 It is evident that they have left it at home. 15. I think that it is better that they have forgotten it; I am glad of it. 16. Must you have that money soon? 17. Must you not have it to-day?

77

Formation of the Present Subjunctive.

There are two methods[1] of obtaining the present subjunctive from the primitive tenses (or principal parts). Neither method is without exceptions, and neither applies to **avoir** or **être**.

First Method. Change **-ant** of the present participle to **-e**. In regular verbs of the third conjugation, **e** before **v** in the stem must be changed to **oi**.

donnant: que je donne.
recevant: que je reçoive.

Second Method. Drop **-nt** of the third person plural present indicative.[2] This rule applies to all regular verbs and to about twenty more of the irregular verbs than are covered by the first method, while the present subjunctive of only two verbs, **savoir** and **pleuvoir**, may be obtained by the first method and not by the second.

In other words, since the ending of the third person plural, **-ent**, is silent, when we pronounce the third person plural present indicative of most French verbs, we are also pronouncing the first person singular present subjunctive.

ils donnent: que je donne.
ils reçoivent: que je reçoive.

[1] Teachers will state to their pupils which method is to be followed. The other may be entirely ignored.

[2] In the principal parts, give the first person singular only of the present indicative, the pupil being required to know the tense so well that the third person plural is instantly ready for use in the formation of the present subjunctive.

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE OF REGULAR VERBS.

TERMINATIONS: -e, -es, -e, -ions, -iez, -ent.

These are also the terminations for all irregular verbs, except **avoir** and **être** (Lesson 76).

porter	recevoir
que je porte.	que je reçoive.
que tu portes.	que tu reçoives.
qu'il porte.	qu'il reçoive.
que nous portions.	que nous recevions.
que vous portiez.	que vous receviez.
qu'ils portent.	qu'ils reçoivent.
finir	**vendre**
que je finisse.	que je vende.
que tu finisses.	que tu vendes.
qu'il finisse.	qu'il vende.
que nous finissions.	que nous vendions.
que vous finissiez.	que vous vendiez.
qu'ils finissent.	qu'ils vendent.

Using these four verbs as models, be prepared to conjugate the present subjunctive of any of the regular verbs previously given.

There is no future subjunctive. The present subjunctive is used to express both present and future time.

1. On me dit qu'il est essentiel que vous arriviez à Londres avant le 1er avril. 2. Il est bien important que je finisse, le plus tôt possible, tout ce que j'ai déjà commencé; alors il sera possible que j'y arrive à temps (*in time*). 3. Vous lui avez désobéi: il est juste qu'on vous punisse. 4. Il est évident que l'on nous attendra. 5. Il me semble qu'il n'est pas certain qu'on nous attende. 6. Il est préférable que vous lui rendiez ce livre vous-même. 7. Il vaut mieux que nous restions ici ce soir

8. Il est temps que vous fermiez vos livres. 9. Il est juste que vous me payiez ce que vous me devez. 10. Est-il possible que je vous doive quelque chose? 11. Il est certain que vous m'avez emprunté dix francs, il y a plus de six mois. 12. Se peut-il que vous l'oubliiez? 13. Il faut que nous nous le rappelions, n'est-ce pas? 14. Il est probable que ma sœur sera ici bientôt. 15. Il importe peu qu'elle soit avec nous. 16. Il vous semble que j'ai tort, mais je vous prouverai le contraire.

1. Is it possible that you relate false stories? 2. It transpires that the story I was telling is not false. 3. It is fortunate for you that it is true. 4. It seems as if you worked well, but I am not sure. 5. It seems to him that you are his friend. 6. It is possible that you are mine too, but it seems to me that you are not. 7. It has been decided at last that we will give you the first prize. 8. Is it fitting that I should receive it? 9. That letter must be sent [express two ways] before 1:30. 10. We must begin as soon as she gets here. 11. Children must obey their parents. 12. It is probable that they will not always do it, and their parents must have a great deal of patience. 13. It is urgent that she answer the letter she received a few days ago. 14. It is possible that you are poorer than I, but it seems to me that you are much richer. 15. It is time for you to go to bed; it is eleven o'clock. 16. At what time must I get here to-morrow morning? 17. It is evident that you study several hours a day. 18. It is good that you prepare your lessons so well. 19. If my father accepts your invitation, it will be possible for us to be at your house on Saturday next.

78

Negative and Interrogative Verbs.

(1) Verbs used negatively or interrogatively and implying uncertainty are followed by the subjunctive with the conjunction **que**; if there is no doubt in the mind of the speaker, the indicative is used.

1. **Je crois qu'il est malade,** *I believe that he is ill.*
2. **Croyez-vous qu'il soit malade,** *do you believe that he is ill?*
3. **Je ne crois pas qu'il soit malade,** *I do not believe that he is ill.*
4. **Il n'est pas certain qu'il soit malade,** *it is not certain that he is ill.*
5. **Oubliez-vous qu'il est malade,** *do you forget that he is ill?*
6. **Saviez-vous qu'il était malade,** *did you know that he was ill?*
7. **Ne croyez-vous pas qu'il est malade,** *do you not believe that he is ill?*
8. **N'est-ce pas qu'il est malade,** *is n't he ill?*

Remarks on examples given above.

1. I do not know that he is ill, but I do not doubt it.

2. I am asking for information because I am in doubt, hence the subjunctive. If, however, I believed that he was ill and if I were merely trying to find out if you also believed it, the indicative would be used. **Croyez-vous que je suis malade? Il ne croit pas que je suis ici. Croyez-vous que je ferai cela?** In these three examples there is no doubt in the mind of the speaker.

3. I do not believe he is ill — doubt of the strongest kind.

4. Impersonal verbs implying certainty or probability when used negatively or interrogatively imply doubt and require the subjunctive. **Il ne me semble pas qu'il soit malade,** but **ne vous semble-t-il pas qu'il est malade?** See 7 and 8.

5 and 6. I have no doubt as to his being ill.

7 and 8. A negative-interrogative calls for an affirmative answer. **Ne dites-vous pas qu'il a tort? Ne trouvez-vous pas que cette petite fille est gentille?**

(2) The subjunctive is not used after **est-ce que? n'est-ce pas que?** nor generally after such verbs as **savoir,** *to know,* **faire savoir,** *to let know,* **dire,** *to tell,* **apprendre,** *to*

learn, to hear, to inform, **informer**, *to inform*, when they are used interrogatively or negatively, if there is no doubt in the mind of the speaker.

The verb **espérer** takes the subjunctive only when used negatively or interrogatively.

Croire (irregular), *to believe, to think.*

PRESENT PARTICIPLE. **croyant.**

PAST PARTICIPLE. **cru.**

PRESENT INDICATIVE.
je crois.
tu crois.
il croit.
nous croyons.
vous croyez.
ils croient.

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.
je croyais.

PAST DEFINITE.
je crus.

FUTURE.
je croirai.

PAST INDEFINITE.
j'ai cru.

CONDITIONAL.
je croirais.

trahir, *to betray.*
regretter, *to regret.*
prétendre, *to pretend.*
de son mieux, *one's best.*
assez, / **un peu,** } *somewhat, rather.*

1. Mlle. votre sœur espère, je crois, que vous lui enverrez l'argent que vous lui avez promis. 2. Je ne crois pas que vous lui ayez prêté le livre que vous lui réclamez. 3. Supposez-vous que nous osions jamais lui en parler? 4. Oubliez-vous qu'elle est plus âgée que nous? 5. Si vous êtes puni, ne croyez pas que j'en sois la cause: je n'ai parlé de vous à personne. 6. Vous ne m'aviez pas dit que vous étiez indisposé: j'espère que vous vous portez mieux. 7. N'espérez pas que je trahisse mon ami pour vous faire plaisir. 8. Ne savez-vous pas que M. votre frère est revenu de Paris? 9. Ils se flattent que je répondrai à leur lettre, mais ils se trompent. 10. Elle

ne croit pas que vous préfériez mon livre au sien. 11. Je vous demande pardon, mais je vous assure qu'elle a écrit six lettres depuis mon arrivée. 12. Ne vous imaginez pas que nous nous amusions ici sans vous; nous vous regrettons beaucoup et nous parlons de vous à chaque instant. 13. Je suppose que vous me défendrez si l'on m'attaque. 14. Je ne pense pas que l'on vous attaque, mais, si on le fait, je serai là et vous défendrai. 15. Je n'espère pas qu'il réussisse, mais je pense qu'il travaillera bien. 16. Croient-ils que je les attende? 17. Oui, monsieur, ils espèrent que vous les attendrez.

(*A*) 1. She does not think that her father has come. 2. She thinks that her mother has come. 3. Does she think that we have come? 4. It may be that they have come. 5. She must finish her work at once. 6. I do not pretend that he is right, but I think you are wrong. 7. I hope you will answer your sister's letter; do you forget she is ill? 8. I do not forget that she is ill, but I shall not answer her letter yet. 9. She thinks that you have forgotten her. 10. I do not suppose you will give her all that money. 11. She does not hope that her father will give her any, but I think that he will. 12. I must have some paper, some ink, and a better pen. 13. Did you tell them that I would thank them myself? 14. Don't you find [that] this water [is] very good? 15. Do you believe that they are in London? 16. Do (*est-ce que*) you believe that (*cela*)? 17. Is (*est-ce que*) not that true?

(*B*) 1. Do you think that this subject is an easy one? 2. You think that this subject is somewhat difficult, do you not? 3. Don't you think that it 's very interesting? 4. Did you know that everybody believes that it is the

most difficult in the whole French grammar? 5. Have I told you that the French [people] themselves are not always sure about it? 6. Is it possible that I have not told you that (*cela*)? 7. Must we study it? 8. You hope that soon you will find it easier, don't you? 9. Do you hope that I am wrong? 10. Don't you think I am right? 11. Do you think that English history is interesting? 12. Is it possible that French history is much more interesting? 13. Does (*est-ce que*) nobody know that we are here? 14. Does any one know that I have lent you some money? 15. Who told you that everybody knows it? 16. It seems to me that you have learned this lesson well; does it seem to you that I am right? 17. Is it right for you to believe that?

79

Verbs of Emotion.

(1) Words or phrases expressing *will, wish, command, doubt, fear, expectation, prohibition, permission, complaint, joy, sorrow, surprise,* or any other emotion, are followed by the subjunctive with the conjunction **que**:

Je désire que vous lui parliez, *I wish you to speak to him.*
Je défends que vous l'attendiez, *I forbid you to wait for him.*

Vouloir (irregular), *to wish.*

Present Participle.	Past Participle.
voulant.	**voulu.**
Present Indicative.	**Imperfect Indicative**
je veux.	**je voulais.**
tu veux.	**Past Definite.**
il veut.	**je voulus.**
nous voulons.	**Future.**
vous voulez.	**je voudrai.**
ils veulent.	

Past Indefinite.	Conditional.
j'ai voulu.	**je voudrais.**

je veux, *I wish, want, command.*
je veux bien, *I am willing, consent.*
je voudrais or **je voudrais bien**, *I should like.*

Notice the difference in meaning between the present indicative and the conditional of the verb **vouloir**.

Il veut le faire, *he wishes (wills, means) to do it.*
Il voudrait le faire, *he would like to do it.*
Je veux être à Paris avant le 1er mai, *I wish (intend) to be in Paris before the first of May.*
Je voudrais y être maintenant, *I should like to be there now*, or *I wish I were there now.*

(2) In French, the subjunctive is always used after verbs expressing *wish* or *will*, except only when both verbs (that is, the verb expressing *wish* or *will* and the verb depending on it) have the same person or persons for subjects; in which case the second verb is put in the infinitive.

Je veux que vous restiez ici, *I wish you to stay here.*
Il veut rester ici, *he wishes to stay here.*

défendre, *to forbid.*
répliquer, *to reply.*
souhaiter, *to wish (to make a wish for).*
douter, *to doubt.*
ordonner, *to command.*
exiger, *to demand, insist.*
trouver bon, *to approve.*
trouver mauvais, *to disapprove.*
surpris, *surprised.*

1. Je doute qu'il réussisse. 2. Je désire que vous m'attendiez. 3. Il veut que nous lui obéissions sans répliquer. 4. Vous ordonnez qu'on vous obéisse. 5. Elle exige que nous vous attendions. 6. Je défends qu'on le punisse. 7. Je suis surpris que vous lui parliez encore après ce qu'il a dit et fait contre vous. 8. Je regrette

beaucoup que vous m'ayez attendu, mais je vous assure que ce n'est pas ma faute. 9. Adieu, monsieur, je souhaite que vous vous portiez bien. 10. Je désire que vous m'accompagniez, mais je ne l'exige pas. 11. Voulez-vous bien permettre que ma sœur et moi nous jouions un peu? 12. Je veux que vous restiez ici l'une et l'autre, vous n'avez pas encore appris vos leçons. 13. Je voudrais aller à la campagne, mais ce n'est pas possible. 14. Nous doutons fort qu'il vous attende. 15. Ma mère est bien aise que vous soyez enfin revenu. 16. Obéis, si tu veux qu'on t'obéisse un jour. — (*Voltaire.*)

1. They wish you to speak to me. 2. Do you wish to speak to me? 3. Does he wish me to speak to you? 4. He wishes to speak to me. 5. Do you wish him to speak to you about it? 6. Do you not wish her to sing that song? 7. No, I want you to sing it yourself. 8. Does she wish to sing it? 9. I hope she will reply to my letter this week. 10. She forbids me to speak to you. 11. Are you not surprised that your brother has already come back? 12. Do you insist upon my being punished? 13. I consent to your playing a little, but you must stay here. 14. We wish we were in Paris. 15. I wish to go there next summer. 16. They wish us to dine with them on Monday. 17. We regret that you have not received our letter. 18. She doubts that we shall arrive before her. 19. I want to work with you, and I want you to work with me. 20. Did you not know that I had met him? 21. Must I work all the time? 22. It is not probable that you will work too much.

80

Ne and the Subjunctive.

The following verbs meaning *to fear*, **craindre**, **avoir peur**, and **trembler**, and the two verbs **prendre garde** (*to take care*) and **empêcher** (*to prevent, to keep from*) not only are followed by the subjunctive, but they also require **ne** before it. (See page 205.)

J'ai peur qu'il ne réussisse, *I fear that he will succeed.*
Empêchez qu'il ne réussisse, *prevent his succeeding.*

But note that, after verbs of *fearing* used negatively or interrogatively, **ne** is omitted.

Craignez-vous qu'il soit venu, *are you afraid that he has come?*
Je crains qu'il ne soit venu, *I am afraid that he has come.*
Je crains qu'il ne soit pas venu, *I am afraid that he has not come.*
Je ne crains pas qu'il soit venu, *I am not afraid that he has come.*
Je ne crains pas qu'il ne soit pas venu, *I am not afraid that he has not come.*

Craindre (irregular), *to fear.*

PRESENT PARTICIPLE, **craignant.** PAST PARTICIPLE, **craint.**

PRESENT INDICATIVE.
je crains.
tu crains.
il craint.
nous craignons.
vous craignez.
ils craignent.

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.
je craignais.

PAST DEFINITE.
je craignis.

FUTURE.
je craindrai.

PAST INDEFINITE.
j'ai craint.

CONDITIONAL.
je craindrais.

le billet, *the note.* **découvert**, *discovered* (past part.).
insulter, *to insult.* **tranquille**, *tranquil, calm.*
soyez tranquille, *rest assured, don't worry.*

1. Je crains bien que vous ne vous soyez trompé. 2. Je ne crains pas que vous perdiez votre belle montre, vous n'êtes plus un enfant. 3. Soyez tranquille, j'em-

pêcherai qu'on ne vous dérange. 4. Préférez-vous que je les punisse moi-même ? 5. Je le ferai bien, si vous le voulez, mais je crois qu'il vaut mieux que ce soit vous. 6. Ils méritent bien que nous les corrigions, mais ne soyons pas trop sévères. 7. Quoi ! vous souffrez qu'on vous batte ! un grand garçon comme vous ! 8. Trouvez bon que je vous punisse quand vous le méritez : vous m'en remercierez plus tard. 9. Je tremble que cette affaire ne soit découverte. 10. Ne craignez pas que je vous afflige : je garderai tous mes chagrins pour moi seul. 11. Ne me parlez pas ainsi, j'aime mieux que vous me grondiez. 12. Est-il possible que vous souffriez qu'on vous insulte ? 13. Mon père n'aime pas que vous voyagiez seul. 14. Trouvera-t-il mauvais aussi que nous voyagions ensemble ? 15. Je voudrais vous accompagner, mais je crains bien qu'il ne s'y oppose ; il veut que vous restiez ici.

1. I fear you will lose the money which I have given you. 2. But my sister does not fear that you will lose it. 3. I am afraid you are wrong. 4. Are you afraid that I have forgotten you ? 5. I shall not suffer (*souffrirai*) you to insult me. 6. I shall not punish her; I much prefer that she ask my pardon. 7. We shall prevent them from succeeding. 8. Do you disapprove of her not answering your note ? 9. Do you approve of their disobeying you ? 10. I tremble lest you should be discovered. 11. Do not fear that I shall be betrayed. 12. She requires (*exige* or *veut*) me to wait for her. 13. I hope you are better. 14. We are glad you are better. 15. Does he know that you are much better to-day ? 16. They want us to take a walk together. 17. They do not fear that we shall lose our way. 18. Take care (*prenez garde*) not to lose it.

81

Subjunctive in Adjective Clauses.

(1) A relative pronoun (où, *in which*, included) is followed by the subjunctive whenever *doubt, uncertainty*, or *purpose* is implied.

Je cherche quelqu'un qui me rende service.
I am looking for some one who will oblige me.

But

J'ai un ami qui me rendra service.
I have a friend who will oblige me.

(2) The subjunctive is used after a superlative and after *first, last*, and *only*, unless the thought is stated as absolute fact. Accordingly, it is not used when the relative clause is merely explanatory or when the superlative is followed by **de**.

C'est le plus beau livre qu'on ait jamais écrit.
It is the finest book that was ever written.
C'est le premier (dernier, seul) homme qui l'ait fait.
He is the first (last, only) man that has done it.

But

C'est le plus beau des livres que j'ai lus.
It is the finest of the books that I have read.
La meilleure élève, qui était malade, n'a pas gagné le prix.
The best pupil, who was sick, did not win the prize.

Connaître (irregular), *to know, to be acquainted with.*

Present Participle.	Past Participle.
connaissant.	connu.

Present Indicative.

je connais.	nous connaissons.
tu connais.	vous connaissez.
il connaît.	ils connaissent.

Imperfect Indicative.	Future.
je connaissais.	je connaîtrai.
Past Definite.	Conditional.
je connus.	je connaîtrais.

Past Indefinite. j'ai connu.

Paraître, *to appear*, is conjugated like **connaître**.

1. Voilà un beau cheval, c'est le plus bel animal que j'aie jamais vu. 2. C'est, en tout cas, le plus beau des chevaux qui étaient hier sur le champ de course. 3. Votre cousine est la femme la plus heureuse que je connaisse. 4. Vous avez raison; c'est bien certainement la plus aimable des femmes que je connais. 5. De ces trois officiers, c'est le plus jeune que vous connaissez, n'est-ce pas? 6. Il y a peu d'hommes qui sachent supporter l'adversité. 7. Cette "Histoire de France" est la meilleure de celles que j'ai dans ma bibliothèque. 8. C'est, je crois, le seul livre sérieux qu'ils aient chez eux. 9. J'ai besoin d'une histoire qui soit intéressante pour les enfants. 10. Cette ménagerie est la plus grande qui soit jamais venue ici. 11. Voici la plus belle de toutes les ménageries que j'ai vues. 12. J'irai dans un pays qui soit bon pour la santé. 13. Je connais un pays qui est bon pour la santé. 14. Votre frère est le premier qui soit arrivé. 15. Voilà le meilleur élève qui se soit jamais assis sur les bancs de cette école.

1. This is (*voici*) the most beautiful bird that we ever saw. 2. Do not cut this rose, it is the only one we have in our garden. 3. Give me back my French dictionary, please; it is the best one I have ever seen. 4. It is always the best books that I choose. 5. We are now looking for a house where we shall be happy. 6. We have found a house where we shall be happy. 7. That is a portrait of his daughter, who died in 1900. 8. Is it the youngest

of his daughters that is dead? ' 9. Of these four ladies, it is the tallest that I know. 10. Is n't she the happiest woman you know? 11. She is the happiest of the women that I know here. 12. Of the women I know, she is the happiest. 13. Is there a man who is content with (*de*) what he possesses? 14. I know a man who is never unhappy, and yet (*cependant*) he possesses almost nothing. 15. I have been visiting my friend, who is ill. 16. Everybody desires friends that are faithful.

82

Subjunctive in Adverbial Clauses.

(1) Certain conjunctions of *purpose, condition, time,* etc., are followed by the subjunctive.

Compare the following lists of conjunctions taking respectively the subjunctive and the indicative.

Subjunctive.	Indicative.
avant que, *before.*	**après que**, *after.*
jusqu'à ce que, **en attendant que**, *until.*	**pendant que**, **tandis que**, *while.*
afin que, **pour que**, **de sorte que**, *so that, in order that.*	**puisque**, *since.*
au cas que, *in case (that).*	**parce que**, *because.*
pourvu que, *provided.*	**lorsque**, **quand**, *when.*
supposé que, *suppose.*	**aussitôt que**, **dès que**, *as soon as*
quoique, **bien que**, **encore que**, *although.*	**si**, *if.*
soit que . . . ou que, *either . . . or.*	**tant que**, *so long as.*
non que, *not (that).*	**à mesure que**, *as, in proportion as.*
sans que, *without.*	**peut-être que**, *perhaps.*
que,[1] used for one of the above conjunctions or for **si**, *if.*	**comme**, *as.*
	que,[1] used for one of the above conjunctions, except **si**.

[1] For use of **que** see Lesson 87.

(2) Three conjunctions require not only the subjunctive, but also **ne** before it.

à moins que, *unless.* **de crainte que,** **de peur que,** } *for fear, lest.*

(3) The following conjunctive expressions also take the subjunctive.

si (with adj. or adv.) . . . **que,**
quelque (with adj. or adv.) . . . **que,** } *however.*
qui que, *whoever.*
quoi que, *whatever.*

1. Je suis venu moi-même afin que vous me racontiez toute l'affaire. 2. Il faut que tout soit prêt avant que M. votre père arrive. 3. Il me gronde (soit) que j'aie raison ou que j'aie tort. 4. Puisque vous êtes beaucoup plus fort que moi, vous porterez les paquets. 5. Bien que vous soyez beaucoup plus âgé que moi, j'ose dire que vous avez tort et que c'est moi qui ai raison. 6. Nous travaillerons jusqu'à ce que vous arriviez. 7. Pourvu que j'aie votre approbation, je serai content. 8. Est-ce que vous croyez que vous l'insulterez sans qu'il vous punisse? 9. Supposé que votre chien me morde, est-ce que vous croyez que je ne lui donnerai pas de bons coups de pied? 10. Je ne vous raconterai pas l'histoire, de peur que vous ne la répétiez à votre cousin. 11. Je lui ai dit qu'il finisse son travail tout de suite. 12. Il m'avait dit qu'il avait déjà fini son travail. 13. Faites-lui savoir que je veux le voir. 14. Le lion n'attaque jamais l'homme à moins qu'il ne soit provoqué.

1. I like him although he does not always obey me. 2. You must work until I am ready. 3. I do not think he will reply to your letter before we arrive from the country. 4. In case you need money, he will send you all of his. 5. Since he has a great deal more than I,

I will accept his offer. 6. He will not give me the money he has promised me, unless I obey him. 7. I shall not punish you to-day, although you deserve it. 8. He will go away (*partira*) lest we shall scold him. 9. You must be diligent so that your mother may be pleased with you. 10. Although you have promised me a holiday, you have not given it to me. 11. I shall give you a beautiful book illustrated by Gustave Doré, provided you win the first prize in (*de*) French. 12. I shall not win that prize unless you help me a little. 13. She does not dare to come here, for fear you will scold her. 14. She stayed at home until we had gone. 15. I shall not look for your ring until (before) you look for it yourself. 16. He flatters us so that we may forgive him for what he has done. 17. If you get here before twelve and if (*que*) I am not ready, wait for me until I have finished my work. 18. I hope you will not wait too long. 19. Before he buys a house, he must have another thousand dollars. 20. However rich one may be, one never has money enough.

83

Present Subjunctive in Subordinate Clauses.

The most common uses of the present subjunctive in subordinate clauses may be seen from the following summary: —

Used after:	Exceptions.
Impersonal verbs,	Fact and probability.
Negative verbs, Interrogative verbs,	No doubt in the mind of the speaker.
Verbs of emotion, etc.	**Espérer** (affirmative).
Superlatives,	Followed by a genitive.
Certain relatives, Certain conjunctions.	No doubt or purpose implied.

Present Subjunctive of Irregular Verbs Already Used.

For rules for determining the present subjunctive of a verb, see Lesson 77.

dire	voir	aller	vouloir
que je dise.	que je voie.	que j'aille.	que je veuille.
que tu dises.	voies.	ailles.	veuilles.
qu'il dise.	voie.	aille.	veuille.
que nous disions.	voyions.	allions.	voulions.
que vous disiez.	voyiez.	alliez.	vouliez.
qu'ils disent.	voient.	aillent.	veuillent.

The present subjunctives of **faire, savoir, craindre,** and **connaître** are conjugated without change of stem: **que je fasse, que je sache, que je craigne, que je connaisse.** In **envoyer** and **croire** the same changes occur as in **voir: que j'envoie, que je croie.**

Distinction between savoir and connaître.

Savoir means *to know through the mind, to realize, to have learned, to know that something is so, to know how to.* It never has a person for its object and may be followed by a conjunction or a verb.

Savez-vous votre leçon, *do you know your lesson?*
Combien de langues sait-il, *how many languages does he know?*
Je sais qu'elle est ici, *I know that she is here.*
Il sait lire et écrire, *he knows how to read and write.*

Connaître means *to be acquainted with, to know by sight* or by the other senses, *to recognize.* It may have a person or thing for its object, but can never be followed by a conjunction or a verb.

Nous connaissons de vue ce monsieur, *we know that gentleman by sight.*
Connaissez-vous les œuvres de Lamartine, *do you know Lamartine's works?*
Je connais le dictionnaire de Littré, *I know Littré's dictionary.*

1. Il n'est pas absolument nécessaire que j'y aille, mais il est préférable dans mon intérêt, et peut-être, aussi

dans le vôtre, que je sois présent à la discussion. 2. Adieu, mon ami; je souhaite que vous soyez toujours heureux. 3. Merci; j'espère que vous le serez aussi. 4. On me dit que votre cousine, Yvonne, est la jeune fille la plus aimable qu'on ait jamais vue. 5. De toutes mes cousines, c'est certainement Yvonne qui est la plus charmante. 6. Qui que vous soyez, il n'est pas convenable que vous soyez impoli. 7. Bien que vous soyez devenu riche et que vous connaissiez bien du monde, il faut que vous ne soyez pas trop fier, si vous voulez que l'on vous aime. 8. Il importe qu'il sache ce que vous avez fait. 9. Il est temps que vous le lui disiez. 10. Je cherche un homme qui soit digne de grands honneurs. 11. Ne croyez-vous pas que je vous connaisse, Monsieur? 12. Doutez-vous qu'elle sache sa leçon? 13. Il me semble qu'elle l'a bien préparée aujourd'hui. 14. Il paraît que vous vous trompez quelquefois.

1. They do not believe that she knows it. 2. They do know that she is acquainted with us. 3. If you go for a walk with us, you must be ready before ten. 4. I want you to see my friends when you are in Paris next year; they will wish to see you, I am sure. 5. You must send them a note before you call so that you will find them at home. 6. If you do not do it, I am afraid that they will not be there. 7. Is it not probable that they will have come back from the shore before the first of August? 8. Whatever you may say, I shall never believe him to be guilty. 9. Do you think that he knows it? 10. Don't you think I know him better than you do? 11. We wish no one to fear us, but we wish to be obeyed. 12. I hope you believe it. 13. I doubt his sending them any money before we see him. 14. Don't you know that it is not certain you will suc-

ceed? 15. Is there any one that is always happy? 16. He is the best man I know. 17. He is also the only man that I know well. 18. You say that because you do not wish to appear proud of your friends.

84

The Use of the Tenses of the Subjunctive.

(1) After the present or future in the principal clause or, in conversation, after the conditional, the present of the subjunctive is used; after any other tense, the imperfect subjunctive.

Je veux **Je voudrai** **Je voudrais**	**qu'il le fasse.**	**Je voulais** **Je voulus** **Je voudrais**[1] **J'ai voulu** **J'avais voulu** **J'aurais voulu** — **qu'il le fît.**

(2) When the subjunctive is in a compound tense, the tense of the auxiliary **avoir** or **être** depends on the tense of the verb in the principal clause.

Espérez-vous qu'il l'ait fait?
Espériez-vous qu'il l'eût fait?

(3) The imperfect subjunctive is avoided in French whenever possible. If an infinitive construction cannot be substituted, the present subjunctive is used.

Compare:

Il empêchait que nous n'arrivassions à temps.
Il nous empêchait d'arriver à temps.
Je voudrais que vous m'accompagnassiez.
Je voudrais que vous m'accompagniez.

[1] In a formal, dignified style.

Imperfect Subjunctive.

The imperfect subjunctive of any French verb may be formed by adding **-se** to the second person singular of the past definite. There are no exceptions to this rule. In all conjugations except the first, the first person singular of the past definite may be used instead of the second.

Past Definite.		Imperfect Subjunctive.
1st person.	2d person.	
donnai,	donnas.	que je donnasse.
allai,	allas.	que j'allasse.
reçus,	reçus.	que je reçusse.
eus,	eus.	que j'eusse.
fus,	fus.	que je fusse.

avoir.	être.	donner.
que j'eusse.	que je fusse.	que je donnasse.
que tu eusses.	que tu fusses.	que tu donnasses.
qu'il eût.	qu'il fût.	qu'il donnât.
que nous eussions.	que nous fussions.	que nous donnassions.
que vous eussiez.	que vous fussiez.	que vous donnassiez.
qu'ils eussent.	qu'ils fussent.	qu'ils donnassent.

finir.	recevoir.	vendre.
que je finisse.	que je reçusse.	que je vendisse.
que tu finisses.	que tu reçusses.	que tu vendisses.
qu'il finît.	qu'il reçût.	qu'il vendît.
que nous finissions.	que nous reçussions.	que nous vendissions.
que vous finissiez.	que vous reçussiez.	que vous vendissiez.
qu'il finissent.	qu'ils reçussent.	qu'ils vendissent.

Form and conjugate the imperfect subjunctive of other regular verbs and of the irregular verbs already given: **dire, faire, savoir, aller, voir, croire, vouloir,** *etc.*

1. Je veux que vous soyez plus attentif. 2. Je voudrais que vous soyez (fussiez) plus attentif. 3. Il est indispensable qu'il ait ses livres ce soir 4. Il était indispen-

sable qu'il eût ses livres ce soir. 5. Mon père craint que vous ne soyez fatigué. 6. Mon père craignait que vous ne fussiez fatigué. 7. Il est temps qu'il finisse sa lettre et qu'il l'envoie à la poste. 8. Il était temps qu'il finît sa lettre et qu'il l'envoyât à la poste. 9. Je préfère qu'elle choisisse elle-même ce qu'elle désire. 10. Je préférerais qu'elle choisît elle-même ce qu'elle désire. 11. J'ai préféré qu'elle choisît elle-même ce qu'elle désirait. 12. J'empêcherai qu'il ne ferme la porte. 13. J'ai empêché qu'il ne fermât la porte. 14. C'est le plus beau morceau de musique que j'aie jamais entendu. 15. C'était le plus beau morceau de musique que j'eusse jamais entendu. 16. Ne lui parlez pas de peur qu'elle ne fonde en larmes. 17. Je ne lui ai pas parlé de peur qu'elle ne fondît en larmes. 18. Il travaille beaucoup, bien qu'il soit malade. 19. Il travaillait beaucoup, bien qu'il fût malade.

1. It is time for her to choose (that she should choose). 2. It was time for her to choose. 3. You are the only man whom (*à qui*) she obeys. 4. You were the only man whom she obeyed. 5. It is certain that I am right. 6. It was certain that I was right. 7. I should like to have him receive these letters in time (*à temps*). 8. I wished him to receive those letters in time. 9. I shall not accept their invitation unless I have the permission of my father and mother. 10. Do you believe they are guilty? 11. Did you believe they were guilty? 12. He approves of my being (he finds good that I am) idle. 13. He approved of my being idle. 14. Do you think that he is right? 15. Did you think that he was right? 16. I think that he is wrong. 17. I fear that he is wrong. 18. I do not think he is wrong. 19. I did not think that he was wrong. 20. I feared he was wrong.

85

Further Drill on the Subjunctive.

Falloir and Pleuvoir.

The verbs **falloir**, *to be necessary*, and **pleuvoir**, *to rain*, are impersonal.

	Falloir.	Pleuvoir.
Pres. Indic.	il faut.	il pleut.
Imperf. Indic.	il fallait.	il pleuvait.
Past Definite.	il fallut.	il plut.
Future.	il faudra.	il pleuvra.
Pres. Condit.	il faudrait.	il pleuvrait.
Pres. Subj.	qu'il faille.	qu'il pleuve.
Imperf. Subj.	qu'il fallât.	qu'il plût.

Plus and Davantage, *more*.

Plus is always followed by the second term of the comparison.

J'en ai plus que vous; j'en ai plus de cinquante.
I have more than you; I have more than fifty.

Exception: **ne . . . plus.**

Je ne travaille plus: je n'en peux plus.
I do not work any more: I can't stand it any longer.

After **davantage**, the second term of the comparison is understood.

Il veut que je travaille davantage, *he wants me to work more* (*than I do*).

1. Elle ne croit pas qu'il ait reçu tout cet argent ce matin. 2. Elle ne croyait pas qu'il eût reçu tout cet argent ce matin. 3. Je souhaite que vous ayez ma lettre à temps. 4. Je voudrais bien que vous ayez ma lettre à temps. 5. Il faut que vous l'ayez à temps. 6. Je veux qu'il étudie davantage. 7. Il fallait qu'il étudiât davantage. 8. Ne commencez pas la discussion avant que votre frère arrive. 9. Vous êtes entré dans la dis-

cussion avant que votre frère arrivât. 10. Il faudra que vous me rendiez ce livre. 11. Savez-vous qu'il pleut? 12. Quoiqu'il pleuve, nous ne resterons plus dans la maison. 13. Il faut que vous y restiez jusqu'à sept heures. 14. Croyez-vous qu'il faille que j'attende plus d'une heure? 15. Il faudra que vous travailliez davantage, si vous voulez être riche. 16. Il n'a pas osé entrer de crainte que l'heure ne fût passée. 17. Savez-vous s'il pleuvra? 18. Nous sommes heureux que vous soyez ici. 19. Nous voudrions que vous y restiez toujours. 20. Merci, mon ami, j'espère y passer tout le reste de ma vie.

(*A*) 1. Do you know who I am? 2. I do not believe that she has gone away. 3. What must he do? 4. He must finish his work before we arrive. 5. What shall you do in case he repeats that story? 6. I am glad that you are better to-day. 7. I wish you to lend me this book as soon as you have finished it. 8. I am surprised that you haven't finished it yet. 9. She fears we shall disobey her. 10. They feared we should disobey them. 11. Do not fear that you will be disobeyed. 12. He was the best man I ever met. 13. I shall never forgive you, unless you stay here until you see him. 14. Is it probable that we shall see him soon? 15. Have you learned that his sister is dead? 16. Is it possible that you don't know what has happened? 17. He says that you are wrong. 18. What do you wish me to do? 19. I insist on your knowing your lesson. 20. Are you sorry that I haven't even (*même*) looked at it? 21. I do not know anybody that is as unfortunate as he, although he is rich. 22. What she says is true. 23. Whatever she may say, and however poor she may be, it seems to us that she is happier than the other women that we know.

(*B*) 1. Who is the richest man you know? 2. Is he the only rich man you ever saw? 3. You are afraid that you will never be as rich as he, are you not? 4. You never will be, unless you work more. 5. Do you think I am right? 6. Don't you think I am older than you? 7. Isn't it probable that I am? 8. Did you know that we saw a friend of yours a few days ago? 9. Do you wish to go with me, or do you wish me to go alone? 10. Although we correct our sentences, isn't it possible that there are some mistakes that we do not see? 11. Whatever he says, don't you think it is right for him to do his duty? 12. Haven't you told any one that I am here to-day? 13. Have you understood all we have said? 14. Do you wish me to give you something to write? 15. What is the first French book you ever read? 16. Have you read only one? 17. Do you know who wrote it? 18. Must I tell you the writer's name?

86

Subjunctive in Independent Clauses.

(1) The subjunctive in an independent clause usually expresses a wish. Strictly speaking, the following examples consist of subordinate clauses, with the principal clauses suppressed.

Ton règne vienne, ta volonté soit faite, *Thy kingdom come, Thy will be done.*

Ainsi soit-il, *so let it be!*

Vive l'empereur, *long live the emperor! Three cheers for the emperor!*

Sauve qui peut, *let him save himself who can* (*every man for himself*).

Dieu me soit en aide, *God help me!*

Honi soit qui mal y pense, *evil to him that evil thinks.*

Plût à Dieu que ce ne fût pas vrai, *would to God it were not true!*

(2) The third persons singular and plural are used to fill out the paradigm of the imperative.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
	donnons, *let us give.*
donne, (*do thou*) *give.*	**donnez**, *give.*
qu'il donne, *let him give.*	**qu'ils donnent**, *let them give.*

Que tout le monde fasse son devoir, *let everybody do his duty.*

(3) Observe the use of the present subjunctive of **savoir** to express a softened assertion:

Je ne sache rien de plus charmant, *I know nothing more charming.*
Est-il venu quelqu'un pendant mon absence ? Pas que je sache.
Has any one come during my absence? Not that I know of.
Il se porte bien, autant que je sache, *he is well, so far as I know.*

Also: **Qui vive ?** *Who goes there?*

Dussé-je mourir, je le ferai, *Were I to die, I shall do it.*
Soit ! or **Qu'il en soit ainsi !** *So be it!*

(4) The pluperfect subjunctive (**j'eusse fait, je fusse allé**, etc.) is sometimes used in an elevated style in both parts of a conditional sentence.

Il est vrai, s'il m'eût cru, qu'il n'eût point fait des vers. (*Boileau.*)
It is true, if he had believed me, he would have made no verses.
Si le sombre empire de Pluton se fût entr'ouvert, je n'aurais pas été saisi, je l'avoue, d'une plus grande horreur. (*Fénélon.*)
If the dark empire of Pluto had half opened before me, I should not have been seized, I admit, with greater horror.
O Fabricius, qu'eût pensé votre grande âme, si, pour votre malheur, rappelé à la vie, vous eussiez vu la face pompeuse de cette Rome, sauvée par votre bras. (*J. J. Rousseau.*)
O Fabricius, what would your great soul have thought, if, unhappily for yourself, recalled to life, you had seen the gorgeous appearance of this Rome, saved by your arm!

la paix, *peace.*	**bénir**, *to bless.*
la lune, *the moon.*	**fâché**, *sorry, vexed, angry.*

domestique (m. or f.), *the servant.*

1 Cet homme était toujours bien méchant. 2. Périsse sa mémoire! 3. Elle doutait que vous fussiez arrivé avant elle. 4. Plût à Dieu que je ne fusse pas venu! 5. Qui l'eût dit! Qui l'eût cru! 6. Exigez-vous que je fasse ce que je ne veux pas faire? 7. Qui que vous soyez, n'attendez pas que Dieu vous nourrisse sans que vous travailliez vous-même. 8. Que tout le monde se lève aussitôt qu'il entrera. 9. Croyez-vous que tout soit prêt? 10. Vous êtes la seule femme que je connaisse ici. 11. Leur avez-vous dit que nous voulons qu'ils achètent les places? 12. La sentinelle s'écrie, "Qui vive!" 13. Trouvez-vous que cette ville soit plus belle que Londres? 14. Ne trouvez-vous pas que Paris est magnifique? 15. Je ne sache rien de plus beau que ce jardin. 16. Je regrette qu'il vous ait raconté cette histoire fausse. 17. Dieu vous pardonne!

1. It is possible that my father is not the best man in the world, but it seems to me that he is the best man that I know or have ever seen. 2. God bless you! You have spoken well. 3. I don't suppose that you believe it. 4. Has anybody ever visited the moon? 5. Nobody, so far as I know. 6. Did you know that it was raining? 7. Never mind (*n'importe*); let it rain! 8. I should like to have it rain two or three hours. 9. Do you hope it will freeze to-night? 10. We are looking for a servant that is faithful. 11. We have one that is always faithful. 12. We are very sorry that you haven't one also. 13. Do you think I am right when I say that this music is the best we ever heard? 14. Whatever you do, do it well. 15. You wish it, so be it. 16. The king is dead; long live the king! 17. Peace be with you! 18. Is it possible that you do not know your brother's best friends?

87

(1) **Que** may be used to avoid the repetition of any conjunction. It requires the subjunctive *only* when it stands for a conjunction that requires the subjunctive, or for **si**.

Comme je n'ai pas beaucoup d'argent, et que je suis un peu malade, je ne ferai pas ce voyage.
As I have not much money, and as I am not very well, I shall not take that journey.
Venez ici que nous vous grondions, *come here, so we may scold you.*
S'il vient et que je ne sois pas à la maison, faites venir mon frère.
If he comes and I am not at home, send for my brother.

(2) **Ne** is required before the following verb when **que** stands for **à moins que, avant que, sans que, jusqu'à ce que, de peur que,** and **de crainte que** (also **depuis que** and **il y a . . . que**).

Je ne partirai pas d'ici que vous ne m'ayez tout raconté.
I shall not leave this place till you have told me everything.
Prenez garde (de peur) qu'il ne vous voie, *take care lest he see you.*
Il y a deux mois que je ne l'ai vu, *I have not seen him for two months.*

Venir (irregular), *to come.*

Present Participle.	Past Participle.	
venant, *coming.*	**venu,** *come.*	
Pres. Indic.	Past Def.	Pres. Subj.
je viens.	je vins.	que je vienne.
tu viens.	tu vins.	que tu viennes.
il vient.	il vint.	qu'il vienne.
nous venons.	nous vînmes.	que nous venions.
vous venez.	vous vîntes.	que vous veniez.
ils viennent.	ils vinrent.	qu'ils viennent.
Imperf. Indic.	Future.	Imperf. Subj.
je venais.	je viendrai.	que je vinsse.
Past Indef.	Condit. Pres.	que tu vinsses.
je suis venu.	je viendrais.	qu'il vînt, etc.

Tenir, *to hold,* is conjugated like **venir**.

1. Nous regrettons beaucoup que vous soyez malade ce matin. 2. J'espère que vous vous portez un peu mieux maintenant. 3. Je souhaite que vous vous portiez bien demain. 4. Qu'avez-vous donc, mon ami? Il y a bien quinze jours que nous ne vous avons vu. 5. Croyiez-vous que je fusse malade? 6. Je craignais que vous ne le fussiez. 7. Ils ne partiront pas sans que nous les voyions. 8. Qui que vous soyez, votre devoir est d'obéir à la loi. 9. Qui que ce soit que vous blâmiez, vous avez tort. 10. Plût à Dieu que le sacrifice de ma vie pût sauver la sienne. 11. Je ne joue jamais avec lui que je ne perde. 12. Faites-lui savoir que je suis parti. 13. Je voudrais que vous prépariez mieux vos leçons. 14. Il est possible que je le fasse quand je serai plus âgé. 15. Je désire que vous n'attendiez plus, il faut que vous commenciez tout de suite. 16. C'est dommage que nous soyons si pauvres. 17. Il est probable que nous ne le serons pas toujours.

1. Are you afraid he will come? 2. Do you think he will? 3. What do you want me to do? 4. I want you to study more. 5. When she comes, we shall be very happy. 6. I beg your pardon, but I am happy that she is n't here. 7. Would she be happy if she knew that? 8. Do not tell it to her for fear she will be unhappy. 9. If they come this afternoon, and I am not here, they will wait for me, will they not? 10. Whatever you do, do not stay here any longer. 11. Although you are wise, it is possible that you are mistaken. 12. I told him that, so that he might know it. 13. Three cheers for France! 14. Do you approve of my aunt's travelling alone in Europe? 15. I did n't know that she was going alone. 16. I thought she was going with some friends of yours. 17. I am sorry you do not

know her. 18. Are you afraid it will rain to-morrow? 19. What shall you do if it rains? 20. I do not know whether it will rain or not, but I must finish my work. 21. I hope it will not snow. 22. Do you forget that we are older than you?

88

THE INFINITIVE.

An infinitive may be used in the nominative or in the objective case, or it may be used after such prepositions as **de, à, par, pour, après, sans, avant de,** etc.

The Infinitive without a Preposition.

(1) An infinitive may be the subject or a predicate nominative.

La voir, c'est l'aimer, *to see her is to love her.*
A quoi sert tarder, *what is the use of delaying?*
Promettre et tenir sont deux.
It is easier to promise than to perform.
Il faut parler, *it is necessary to speak.*

In the last example, **parler** is the logical subject of **il faut.**

(2) An infinitive may be the direct object. Of the verbs requiring no preposition,[1] learn the following:

aimer mieux, *to like better.*	**pouvoir,** *to be able.*
aller, *to go.*	**préférer,** *to prefer.*
compter, *to intend.*	**prétendre,** *to pretend.*
croire, *to believe.*	**regarder,** *to look at.*
désirer, *to desire, to wish.*	**savoir,** *to know how.*
écouter, *to listen.*	**sembler,** *to seem.*
entendre, *to hear.*	**venir,** *to come.*
espérer, *to hope.*	**voir,** *to see.*
faire, *to make.*	**vouloir,** *to wish.*
laisser, *to let.*	**il faut,** *it is necessary.*
oser, *to dare.*	**il vaut mieux,** *it is better.*

[1] The complete list will be found on page 348.

Aller and **venir**, followed by an infinitive without a preposition, sometimes have the meaning of *go and, come and.*

Il est allé lui parler, *he went and spoke to her.*

Elle est venue nous aider, *she came and helped us.*

Than before an infinitive is expressed by **que de.**

Il vaut mieux rire que de pleurer, *it is better to laugh than to cry.*

The Infinitive with *Pour.*

(3) When the English *to* means *in order to, for the purpose of* (especially unfulfilled purpose), it is expressed by **pour.**

Elle viendra pour nous rendre visite, mais nous serons partis.
She will come to visit us, but we shall be gone.

(4) An infinitive without a preposition is sometimes used as an exclamation, a question, or an imperative.

Que faire, *what's to be done?*
Agir ainsi, *act thus!*
Voir page 60, *see page 60.*

Note also: **Je ne sais que faire,** *I do not know what to do.*

Pouvoir, *to be able (can, may).*

PRESENT PARTICIPLE, pouvant. PAST PARTICIPLE, **pu.**

PRES. INDIC.	PAST DEF.	PRES. SUBJ.
je peux, je puis.	je pus.	que je puisse.
tu peux.	tu pus.	que tu puisses.
il peut.	il put.	qu'il puisse.
nous pouvons.	nous pûmes.	que nous puissions.
vous pouvez.	vous pûtes.	que vous puissiez.
ils peuvent.	ils purent.	qu'ils puissent.
IMPERF. INDIC.	FUTURE.	IMPERF. SUBJ.
je pouvais.	je pourrai.	que je pusse.
PAST INDEF.	CONDIT. PRES.	que tu pusses.
j'ai pu.	je pourrais.	qu'il pût, etc.

1. J'aimerais mieux lui parler que de lui écrire. 2. Elle est allée voir son oncle, qui est arrivé ce matin de Paris. 3. Quand comptez-vous partir? 4. Pouvez-vous venir nous voir ce soir ou demain matin? 5. N'espérez pas me tromper; vous n'êtes pas assez malin pour cela. 6. Est-ce que vous avez osé lui dire une pareille chose? 7. Il ne veut pas aller vous voir. 8. Nous ne voulons pas dire que vous avez tort. 9. Pourquoi ne veniez-vous pas nous voir plus souvent lorsque nous demeurions si près de vous? 10. Je l'ai vu passer sous nos fenêtres, mais je n'ai pas osé l'appeler. 11. Nous ne vivons pas pour manger, mais nous mangeons pour vivre. 12. Elles viennent me parler. 13. Elles sont venues pour me parler, mais elles ne m'ont pas trouvé. 14. J'ai fait tout mon possible pour gagner son amitié, mais il paraît que je n'ai pas réussi. 15. Maintenant, que faire? 16. Vouloir, c'est pouvoir. 17. Voir la dernière page de ce livre. 18. Ces hommes-là croient toujours parler à des soldats.

1. We went and saw (we went to see) our aunt this morning; she is much better. 2. Do you intend to leave on Friday? 3. I hope to see you[1] on Thursday. 4. She did not dare to look at them. 5. She does not wish to come to-day, unless you think that she will find her father here. 6. Seeing is believing. 7. I like better to leave to-day than stay until the eleventh. 8. She will not be willing to accompany us. 9. They may come and see us this morning. 10. They came to see us last evening, but we were out. 11. We shall do our very best[2] to receive him with honor. 12. He said that to deceive me. 13. She did it to please you. 14. I do not know how to thank her. 15. Thank her? 16. They

[1] A pronoun is placed before the verb of which it is the object.

[2] See French sentence 14, above.

went to London in order to see you. 17. Do you think they can return soon? 18. It seems to me that you are mistaken; I do not believe that I am acquainted with this lady. 19. You do not seem to believe what I say. 20. Let them come! I would rather see them to-day than to wait until a week from Friday. 21. May I come too? 22. You may come, and you may bring all your friends with you.

89

The Infinitive with the Preposition *de*.

(1) Certain verbs require **de** before the infinitive. With most of these verbs the true meanings of **de**, *of, from, concerning*, are implied. The following are among those most frequently used:[1]

cesser de, *to cease to.*
commander de, *to command to.*
conseiller de, *to advise to.*
craindre de, *to fear to.*
défendre[2] **de**, *to forbid to.*
dire de, *to tell to.*
écrire de, *to write to.*
essayer de, *to try to.*
éviter de, *to avoid.*
négliger de, *to neglect to.*
ordonner de, *to order to.*
permettre de, *to allow to.*
promettre de, *to promise to.*
recommander de, *to recommend to*
refuser de, *to refuse to.*
remercier de, *to thank for.*
venir de, *to have just.*

(2) The verb **avoir** followed by a noun requires **de** before the next verb, if that verb cannot be changed into an infinitive passive:

avoir la bonté de, *to have the kindness to, to be so good as to.*
avoir le courage de, *to have the courage to.*
avoir l'intention de, *to intend to.*
avoir raison de, *to be right to.*
avoir tort de, *to be wrong to.*
avoir peur de, *to be afraid to.*

[1] A more complete list is given in the appendix, page 348.

[2] **Défendre**, *to defend*, takes the accusative; **défendre**, *to forbid*, the dative.

avoir l'audace de, *to have the audacity to.*
avoir le plaisir de, *to have the pleasure of* (doing).
avoir l'occasion de, *to have an opportunity to.*
avoir besoin de, *to need to.*
avoir coutume de, *to be accustomed to.*
avoir envie de, *to have a mind* or *a wish to, to feel like.*

(3) An adjective preceded by the impersonal verb **il est, il était,** etc., requires **de** before the infinitive:

Il est difficile de faire ce que vous désirez.
It is difficult to do what you wish.

Mettre, *to put, to put on.*

PRESENT PARTICIPLE, **mettant.** PAST PARTICIPLE, **mis.**

PRESENT INDICATIVE.

je mets, tu mets, il met, nous mettons, vous mettez, ils mettent.

PAST DEFINITE, **je mis.**

se mettre, *to place one's self, to sit.*
admettre, *to admit.*
commettre, *to commit.*
permettre, *to permit.*
promettre, *to promise.*
soumettre, *to submit.*
omettre de faire, *to omit doing.*

absurde, *absurd.*
la discussion, *the discussion.*
sonner, *to ring.*
vouloir dire, *to mean.*

1. Il a cessé de travailler au mois de janvier dernier. 2. Je ne vous conseille pas de l'attendre, il n'arrive jamais à temps. 3. Est-ce que vous craignez de lui parler? C'est l'homme le plus aimable du monde. 4. Je vous défends de sortir. 5. N'essayez pas de me tromper. 6. Il a refusé de nous accompagner. 7. Elle n'a pas eu le courage d'entrer. 8. Il est plus facile de dire cela que de le faire. 9. J'ai eu l'occasion de faire la connaissance de Mme votre tante; c'est une charmante

[1] Hereafter only tenses that cannot be formed regularly will be given.

vieille dame. 10. Je pense que vous avez eu tort de lui reprocher cette action, il ne vous le pardonnera jamais. 11. Où avez-vous coutume de vous promener ? 12. Avez-vous absolument besoin de les voir ? 13. Est-ce que vous avez peur de venir avec nous ? 14. Je pense qu'il serait utile de leur annoncer votre retour. 15. Il m'a écrit de lui envoyer tout ce qu'il a laissé chez nous. 16. Vous a-t-il ordonné de le faire ? 17. Permettez-lui de venir vous voir demain. 18. Je vous remercie de ce conseil et je vous promets de le suivre. 19. Qui est-ce qui vous permet de parler ? 20. Qu'est-ce que cela veut dire ?

1. He promises to start for London with me this evening. 2. I had the pleasure of meeting your uncle last night. 3. They tried to deceive me. 4. She refused to come with me. 5. Did he avoid speaking to us ? 6. Have the kindness to ring. 7. You are right to forget that discussion. 8. We have a mind to go to the seashore at the beginning of next week. 9. I hope you will not have the boldness to ask him for more money. 10. Be so good as to shut the door. 11. It is time to set out. 12. It is absurd to speak so (*ainsi*). 13. She neglects writing [infinitive] to us. 14. We had the pleasure of seeing your mother this morning. 15. Do not forbid his coming with us. 16. You are the only one who has encouraged us in our labors. 17. Allow me to take your watch. 18. Promise to give it back to me. 19. Put on your hat and gloves, and we will go for a walk. 20. Will you promise to take me to the theatre this evening ? 21. I cannot promise you (it). 22. Do not omit more than two of these sentences. 23. What do you mean ? 24. I mean that I cannot allow you to be idle.

90

The Infinitive with the Preposition à.

(1) Certain verbs require **à** before the following infinitive. In many of these verbs the true meanings of **à**, *to, at, in*, are implied. Such are :[1]

aider à, *to help to.*	**engager à**, *to induce to.*
aimer à, *to like to.*	**enseigner à**, *to teach to.*
s'appliquer à, *to apply one's self to.*	**s'habituer à**, *to get accustomed to.*
apprendre à, *to learn, to teach to.*	**inviter à**, *to ask, invite to.*
s'attendre à, *to expect to.*	**se mettre à**, *to begin to.*
consentir à, *to consent to.*	**renoncer à**, *to renounce, to give up.*
décider à, *to persuade to.*	**réussir à**, *to succeed in.*
se décider à, *to decide to.*	**tarder à**, *to be late in, to delay in.*

venir à, *to chance to.*

(2) The verb **avoir** followed by a noun requires **à** before the next verb, if that verb can be changed into the infinitive passive.

J'ai une lettre à écrire, *I have a letter to write* (meaning *to be written*).
Ils ont une maison à louer, *they have a house to let* (meaning *to be let*).

Compare with Lesson 89, (2).

(3) An adjective preceded by **c'est, c'était,** or **cela est, cela était,** requires **à** before the next verb (passive idea).

C'est difficile à faire,
Cela est difficile à faire, } *that is difficult to do* (meaning *to be done*).

Compare with Lesson 89, (3).

(4) Like a number of other verbs, **commencer** and **continuer** take either **de** or **à** ; with these two verbs **à** seems to be the more commonly used, regardless of meaning.

[1] See list in the Appendix, page 350.

(5) Observe the following examples of **venir**:

Il est venu m'en parler, *he came and spoke to me about it.*
Elles viennent d'arriver, *they have just arrived.*
Si elle vient à finir avant nous, *if she happens to finish before we do.*
Ils sont venus nous voir, mais nous venions de sortir, *they came to see us, but we had just gone out.*

Écrire, *to write.*

PRESENT PARTICIPLE, **écrivant.** PAST PARTICIPLE, **écrit.**

PRESENT INDICATIVE.

j'écris, tu écris, il écrit, nous écrivons, vous écrivez, ils écrivent.

PAST DEFINITE, **j'écrivis,** etc.

1. Elle s'est appliquée à me tourmenter hier soir et ce matin. 2. Ne vous attendez pas à le voir avant midi et demi. 3. Ils n'ont pas consenti à me laisser rester ici. 4. Vous ont-ils enfin décidé à venir jouer avec nous? 5. J'ai consenti à les visiter l'un après l'autre. 6. Il ne s'est pas encore habitué à faire cinq repas par jour. 7. Mme votre mère m'a invité à dîner chez vous ce soir; j'ai accepté son invitation avec beaucoup de plaisir. 8. Il y a deux ans que j'ai renoncé à fumer. 9. Avez-vous enfin réussi à rencontrer ce monsieur qui vous écrit si souvent? 10. Il me semble que vous avez beaucoup tardé à venir. 11. Avez-vous beaucoup à faire ce matin? 12. J'ai trois lettres à écrire et deux personnes à visiter. 13. Il est difficile de faire tout cela en si peu de temps. 14. Oui, c'est plus facile à dire qu'à faire. 15. Tout le monde se mit à chanter et à danser. 16. Je viens de finir ce que j'avais à faire.

1. They have letters to write. 2. I have nothing to fear. 3. Have you any money to give her? 4. I have invited them to dine with us. 5. She is always late in

getting here. 6. He succeeded in winning the second prize. 7. Do you consent (*consentez-vous*) to see him? 8. That is not easy to do. 9. I intend to write to him on Saturday next. 10. What has induced you to do it? 11. When will you give up asking him for money? 12. What a beautiful apple! Is it good to eat? 13. Everybody likes to travel. 14. Have n't they a house to sell? 15. No, sir, but they have one to let. 16. How long have you been writing? 17. I wish to teach you to speak this language. 18. I cannot help you to learn it unless you will write a great many sentences every day. 19. You must get accustomed to studying five or six hours a day. 20. That is strange to hear. 21. It is possible that I am mistaken, but I fear you have forgotten what I told you to do. 22. I beg your pardon, sir, but we have just done it. 23. Write me your name at the bottom (*au bas*) of this paper.

91

The Subjunctive and Infinitive Modes Compared.

When the subjunctive mode can be avoided by using the infinitive in the secondary clause, as in the following cases, it should be done, since the frequent use of the subjunctive makes the style heavy.

(1) When two verbs have the same person for subject, the second is generally in the infinitive. See Lesson 79, (2).

Est-ce que vous craignez de lui parler, *do you fear to speak to him?*
Je voudrais bien être à votre place, *I wish I were in your place.*

(2) If the two clauses have the same person for subject, the conjunction which joins them may often be changed to a preposition, and the verb following will in consequence be in the infinitive:

Conjunction.		Preposition.
afin que,	*in order that,*	**afin de.**
pour que,	*in order that,*	**pour.**
avant que,	*before,*	**avant de.**
sans que,	*without,*	**sans.**
à moins que,	*unless,*	**à moins de.**
de crainte que,	*for fear that, lest,*	**de crainte de.**
de peur que,	*for fear that, lest,*	**de peur de.**
jusqu'à ce que,	*till, until,*	**jusque.**

Venez me voir avant de lui écrire, *come to see me before you write to him.*

Il ne sortira pas de peur de vous rencontrer, *he will not go out lest he should meet you.*

Après is used with the perfect of the infinitive.

Les enfants courent dans le jardin après avoir fini leurs devoirs.
The children run in the garden after finishing their tasks.

(3) **Falloir.** If the subject of *must* is a noun, **falloir** is followed by the subjunctive; if the subject is a personal pronoun, or if the statement is general, **falloir** may be followed by the infinitive.

Il faut que Jean le fasse, *John must do it.*
Il faut qu'il le fasse, / **Il lui faut le faire,** } *he must do it.*
Il me (vous, leur) faut le faire, *I (you, they) must do it.*
Il faut qu'on le fasse, / **Il faut le faire,** } *one must do it,* or *it must be done.*

Observe also:

Il leur faut de l'argent, *they must have (want) money.*
Il faut un dé à ma sœur, *my sister needs a thimble.*
Un homme comme il faut, *a gentleman.*

Courir, *to run.*

PRESENT PARTICIPLE. **courant.** PAST PARTICIPLE. **couru.**

PRESENT INDICATIVE.

je cours, tu cours, il court, nous courons, vous courez, ils courent.

FUTURE. **je courrai.** PAST DEFINITE. **je courus.**

CONDITIONAL, **je courrais.**

Mourir, *to die.*

PRESENT PARTICIPLE. **mourant.** PAST PARTICIPLE. **mort.**

PRESENT INDICATIVE.

je meurs, tu meurs, il meurt, nous mourons, vous mourez, ils meurent.

FUTURE. **je mourrai.** PAST DEFINITE. **je mourus.**

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE.

que je meure, que tu meures, qu'il meure, que nous mourions, que vous mouriez, qu'ils meurent.

IMPERATIVE.

meurs, mourons, mourez.

Notice the doubled r in the future and conditional of courir and mourir, distinguishing in pronunciation these forms from those of the present and imperfect.

1. Mon père a ordonné que les enfants descendissent au salon. 2. Mon père a ordonné aux enfants de descendre tout de suite au salon. 3. Elle commande que je lui achète un journal français. 4. Elle m'a commandé de lui acheter un journal français. 5. Je ne sortirai pas avant qu'il nous ait donné sa parole. 6. Je ne sortirai pas avant d'avoir obtenu votre promesse. 7. Il craint qu'elle ne meure. 8. Il craint de mourir. 9. Elle dit vous avoir écrit. 10. Elle dit que vous m'avez écrit. 11. Elle me dit de vous écrire. 12. Il prétend avoir raison. 13. Il prétend que je n'ai pas raison. 14. Il

croit avoir bien fait. 15. Il croit que vous avez bien fait. 16. Je crois vous avoir écrit. 17. Que faut-il faire pour gagner la vie? 18. Il faut travailler. 19. Combien de temps faut-il pour apprendre à parler français? 20. Cela dépend de bien des choses. 21. Le vieux roi mourut en 1693, à l'âge de quatre-vingts ans.

1. I fear I am wrong. 2. I feared I was wrong. 3. I am sorry I am late (*être en retard*). 4. I was sorry I was late. 5. She has ordered me to punish you. 6. The doctor has ordered that I should run a little every day. 7. I think I have seen you this morning. 8. I thought I had seen you somewhere. 9. He pretends he has spoken to you. 10. He will not try it for fear he should make a mistake. 11. I shall speak to him before I write to you. 12. I wish I were in the country that I might (*pour pouvoir*) rest. 13. It is time to finish your letter. 14. Is it possible to do that? 15. That is impossible to do. 16. Must one always do one's best? 17. Must you stay here long? 18. He now believes she is dead. 19. He says that he does not believe me. 20. We (*on*) must not believe all we hear. 21. The poor old woman of whom I was speaking to you the other day died yesterday. 22. The pupils are running in the yard behind the school.

92

The Present Participle.

A present participle may be used either as an adjective or as a verb.

(1) As an adjective, a present participle follows and agrees with the noun that it modifies.

Ces hommes prévoyants ont aperçu le danger, *these farsighted men have perceived the danger.*

(2) As a verb, it is invariable and usually refers to the subject.

Ces hommes, prévoyant le danger, se sont mis sur leurs gardes.
These men, foreseeing the danger, put themselves on their guard.

(3) **En,** *in, while, by,* — is the only preposition that may be used with a present participle. With other prepositions, where the participle is used in English, the infinitive is required in French.

En prévoyant le danger, ces hommes se sont sauvés.
By foreseeing the danger, these men saved themselves.
Commençons par lire en (or **le**) **français.**
Let us begin by reading in (or *the*) *French.*

Tout is sometimes used before **en** to emphasize the continuity of the action.

Tout en mangeant, il lisait la philosophie.
Even while eating, he read philosophy.

(4) After the following verbs the present participle is generally used in English, and the infinitive in French. Instead of the infinitive, a tense of the indicative with **qui** may be used with all except **paraître** and **sembler** : —

apercevoir, *to perceive.*	**sentir,** *to feel.*
écouter, *to listen.*	**voir,** *to see.*
entendre, *to hear.*	**paraître,** *to appear.*
regarder, *to look at.*	**sembler,** *to seem.*

je l'entends chanter,	*I hear him singing,*	**je l'entends qui chante.**
je le vois jouer,	*I see him playing,*	**je le vois qui joue.**
je l'ai vu jouer,	*I saw him playing,*	**je l'ai vu qui jouait.**

Lire, *to read.*

PRESENT PARTICIPLE. **lisant.** PAST PARTICIPLE. **lu.**

PRESENT INDICATIVE.

je lis, tu lis, il lit, nous lisons, vous lisez, ils lisent.

PAST DEFINITE, **je lus.**

Rire (irregular), *to laugh.*

Present Participle.	Past Participle.
riant.	**ri.**

Present Indicative.

je ris, tu ris, il rit, nous rions, vous riez, ils rient.

Imperfect Indicative.	Past Definite.
je riais,	**je ris,**
etc.	etc.
nous riions,	**nous rîmes,**
etc.	etc.

rire de, *to laugh at.*

1. J'ai vu courir votre frère. 2. J'ai vu votre frère qui courait. 3. J'entends rire ma sœur. 4. J'entends ma sœur qui rit. 5. Regardez-le marcher ; est-ce qu'il ne vous semble pas boiter ? 6. Ecoutez-le rire ; il me semble que ce rire est peu naturel. 7. Il travaille en chantant et en causant avec tout le monde. 8. Ces messieurs sont vraiment amusants. 9. Ces messieurs vous amusent, n'est-ce pas ? 10. Le champ de bataille était couvert de soldats mourants. 11. Ces photographies sont bien ressemblantes. 12. Voilà un chien qui aboie. 13. Je ne l'entends pas aboyer. 14. Tout en refusant, elle semble accepter. 15. De quoi riez-vous ? 16. Je ris des lettres que je lis. 17. Ne riez pas de moi, je vous prie. 18. Il n'y a que les âmes aimantes qui soient propres à l'étude de la nature. (*Bernardin de St. Pierre.*)

1. I hear your brother speaking. 2. I heard him speaking to his friend. 3. Did you see him running with those children ? 4. We have watched him eating. 5. We looked at it while [we were] eating. 6. Did I hear you singing this morning ? 7. This lady is truly amusing. 8. Whom is she amusing ? 9. By amusing us, she enjoys herself. 10. What a charming lady! 11. She is also a

very obliging person. 12. They came without bringing us what we asked for. 13. There they are; they are reading the papers. 14. I read while eating. 15. [One's] appetite comes while eating. 16. This woman appears to suffer [the infinitive or the adjective]. 17. The stories we read are often very amusing. 18. For two hours I have been walking here, and I have met only one person I know. That was an old friend of mine, and I was glad to see her. 19. I do not think her uncle is dead; I think I saw him walking here yesterday. 20. Always reflect before speaking. 21. Our neighbor's daughter died this morning. 22. What are you reading? 23. Whom are you laughing at? 24. We are not laughing at you, I assure you.

93

The Past Participle.

(1) A past participle used as an adjective agrees with the noun or pronoun to which it relates.

(2) A past participle used with **avoir** agrees with a preceding direct object; with **être**, it agrees with the subject, except in the case of pronominal verbs (which are conjugated with **être** instead of **avoir**) when it follows the rule for **avoir**. (Lessons 25, 30, and 67.)

Study the following examples and state why each past participle is variable or invariable.

Qui a écrit les lettres que vous avez reçues ce matin?
Who wrote the letters that you received this morning?
Sont-elles bien écrites? Non, madame, ce sont des lettres mal écrites
Are they well written? No, madam, they are poorly written letters.
Votre sœur s'est-elle blessée? Oui, elle s'est blessé au doigt.
Has your sister hurt herself? Yes, she has hurt her finger.

Voici les choses désirées. **Nous avons déjà fini.**
Here are the things wanted. *We have already finished.*
La dame que j'ai entendue chanter est une de vos amies.
The lady that I heard sing is one of your friends.
Comment avez-vous trouvé les chansons qu'elle a chantées ?
What did you think of the songs that she sung?
Les chansons françaises que j'ai entendu chanter sont belles.
The French songs that I heard sung were beautiful.
Ils se sont imaginé des choses fausses.
They imagined untrue things.
Savez-vous quelles sont les choses fausses qu'ils se sont imaginées ?
Do you know what the untrue things are that they imagined?
Il nous a donné une boîte ; où l'a-t-on mise ?
He has given us a box ; where has it been put?

J'ai entendu dire, *I have heard (that).*
J'ai vu faire, *I have seen done.*
Se faire mal, *to hurt one's self.*

Collective Nouns.

A collective noun representing the *whole* number of the persons or things mentioned requires its verb, adjective, and pronoun in the singular ; otherwise the verb, adjective, or pronoun is in the plural. In general, collective nouns preceded by **le** or **la** take the singular ; preceded by **un** or **une**, the plural.

Le comité s'est réuni, *the committee met.*
Une douzaine de membres étaient absents, *a dozen members were absent.*
La foule des spectateurs que j'ai vue était immense.
The crowd of spectators that I saw was immense.
Une foule d'enfants le suivaient partout.
A crowd of children followed him everywhere.

La plupart and the adverbs of quantity (**beaucoup**, etc.) followed by a plural noun require the plural.

La plupart des enfants sont aimables, *most children are lovable.*

Année, journée, matinée, or **soirée** is used to express the whole duration of the *year, day, morning,* or *evening,* with its attendant circumstances; otherwise, **an, jour, matin,** or **soir** is used.

Study carefully the following examples: —

On travaille toute l'année, toute la journée, toute la matinée, toute la soirée.
A man works the whole year, all day long, all the morning, all the evening.
On paie à un ouvrier sa journée.
A workman is paid for his day's work.
On nous souhaite une bonne et heureuse année.
They wish us a good and happy year.
Des années de sécheresse (d'abondance).
Years of drought (of abundance).
L'année (la journée) est belle (pluvieuse).
The year (the day) is fine (rainy).
L'année prochaine mon frère aura vingt et un ans.
Next year my brother will be twenty-one years old.
Un événement a eu lieu l'an 1870, tel jour, un matin, un soir.
An event took place in the year 1870, on such a day, one morning, one evening.
Le soleil se lève le matin et se couche le soir.
The sun rises in the morning and sets in the evening.
Il y a trois ans (jours) que nous ne l'avons vu.
It is three years (days) since we saw him.
Il gagne douze mille cinq cents francs par an.
He earns twelve thousand five hundred francs a year.
Un jour de fête; le jour de l'an; tous les soirs (jours).
A holiday; New Year's day; every evening (day).

1. Ils sont bien reçus. 2. Elles sont venues. 3. Ils sont convaincus que j'ai eu tort de vous parler de l'affaire. 4. Ma mère est enchantée de vous revoir. 5. A peine arrivés à Paris, l'empereur d'Allemagne et ses fils sont allés au spectacle; une grande foule de Parisiens les ont vus passer. 6. Nous avons lu vos deux romans français.

7. Les avez-vous finis ? 8. Nous avons lu toute la journée, et nous comptons les finir ce soir. 9. Où avez-vous mis mes pantoufles ? 10. Je les ai mises sur une chaise ; est-ce que vous ne les trouvez pas ? 11. La plupart des soldats se sont bien défendus. 12. Pendant une année entière elles se sont défendu tout amusement. 13. Ces deux hommes se sont querellés, mais après ils se sont donné la main. 14. J'ai entendu dire que madame votre mère est revenue ce matin. 15. Qui a fait mal à cette petite fille ? 16. Elle s'est fait mal elle-même. 17. Est-ce que vous vous rappelez cette pièce que nous avons vu jouer un soir à la Comédie Française ? 18. Oui, et je me rappelle aussi les acteurs que nous avons vus jouer. 19. Est-il vrai que la vertu timide soit souvent opprimée ?

1. I have heard that your sisters have arrived. 2. Yes, they arrived yesterday morning. 3. A large number (*nombre*, m.) of their friends came to see them last evening. 4. The evening was a beautiful one. 5. I received last Friday the letter you wrote me on Tuesday. 6. I have sent it to my sister. 7. Have you written her ? 8. Yes, but she has n't answered me yet. 9. She has received your letter, I am sure, and she will answer it as soon as possible. 10. I have kept most of the letters she ever wrote me. 11. My cousins, Mary and Jane, have often written to each other. 12. I have seen their letters ; it seems to me that they are not very interesting. 13. The books he dropped are mine. 14. Who dropped them ? 15. Who are those men I saw walking in your garden ? 16. We always had a good time at home when we were young. 17. What a fine morning ! 18. This gentleman's house has been closed for a month ; his family has gone to the country or to

the seashore. 19. A crowd of children were running and playing in the yard behind the school. 20. The crowd of men and women who were watching the children play was still larger. 21. What has happened? 22. A poor old lady has fallen in the street in front of our house. 23. Did you see her fall? 24. I am afraid she hurt herself.

94

Aller.

(1) The present or imperfect of **aller** followed by an infinitive shows that the action is to take place immediately.[1]

Je vais partir, *I am just (on the point of) starting.*
Nous allions sortir, *we were about to go out.*

(2) **Aller** also means *to fit, to suit, to become.*

Ce chapeau ne vous va pas, *that hat does not fit* (or *become*) *you.*
Cela ne va pas, *that won't do.*

Aller au-devant de, *to go to meet.*

S'en aller, *to go away,* is conjugated like **aller**:

je m'en vais, je m'en allais, je m'en allai, je m'en irai,
je m'en irais, que je m'en aille, que je m'en allasse.
Imperative: **va-t'en, allons-nous-en, allez-vous-en.**

Savoir and Pouvoir.

Savoir must be used instead of **pouvoir** in the sense of *to know how, to have learned to.*

Compare: **Il sait lire** and **il peut lire aujourd'hui.**
Savez-vous danser? and **pouvez-vous danser ce soir?**

[1] For other uses of **aller** see pages 153, 220.

Devoir.

Followed by an infinitive, **devoir** has many shades of meaning.

PRESENT. **Je dois le faire,** *I am (intend, have) to do it.*
IMPERFECT. **Je devais le faire,** *I was to do it.*
PAST INDEF. **J'ai dû** } **le faire,** *I had to do it.*
PAST DEF. **Je dus** }
CONDIT. PRES. **Je devrais le faire,** *I ought to do it.*
CONDIT. PAST. **J'aurais dû le faire,** *I ought to have done it.*

If supposition is implied:

Vous devez être très fatigué, *you must be very tired (I suppose).*
Vous avez dû être bien content, *you must have been well pleased.*

The imperfect subjunctive (**dussé-je, dût-il,** etc.) at the beginning of a clause means *even though:*

Dussé-je être blâmé, je vous soutiendrai, *even though I should be blamed, I shall support you.*
Dût-elle en mourir, elle le fera, *were she to die for it, she will do it.*

Faire.

(3) **Faire** followed by the infinitive means *to cause, to get, to have,* or *to order something done.*

Il m'a fait travailler, *he made me work.*
Nous ferons venir le médecin, *we shall send for the doctor.*
Oui, faites-le venir, *yes, have him come, send for him.*
Je fais bâtir une maison, *I am having a house built.*
J'ai fait bâtir une maison, *I have had a house built.*
On le fera nommer capitaine, *they will get him made a captain.*
Il s'est fait couper les cheveux, *he has had a hair-cut.*
J'ai fait faire un pardessus, *I have had an overcoat made.*

(4) When the infinitive used with **faire** has a direct object, the subject of the infinitive is in the dative case.[1]

[1] The verbs **laisser, entendre, voir,** are usually followed by the same construction as **faire**: **Laissez lire les élèves. Laissez-leur** (or **-les**) **lire le français.**

Je leur fais lire le français, *I have them read French.*
Je fais lire le français à mes élèves, *I have my pupils read French.*
Je le leur fais lire, *I have them read it.*
Faites-le-leur lire, *have them read it.*

But: **Je fais lire mes élèves,** *I have (make) my pupils read.*
Je les fais lire, *I have them read.*

(5) Recall impersonal use of **faire** to express the state of the weather (Lesson 51): **il fait chaud, froid, beau,** etc.

il fait jour, *it is daylight.* **il fait du brouillard,** *it is foggy.*
il fait sombre, *it is dark.* **il fait humide,** *it is damp.*
il fait de la pluie, *it is rainy.* **il fait sec,** *it is dry.*
il fait de la poussière, *it is dusty.* **il fait frais,** *it is cool.*

But: **Le temps est beau, l'air est froid,** etc.

(6) Observe also the following idiomatic uses of **faire:**

se faire à, *to accustom one's self to.* **faire peur à,** *to frighten.*
défaire, *to undo, to overthrow.* **faire pitié,** *to excite pity.*
se défaire de, *to get rid of.* **faire plaisir à,** *to afford pleasure to.*
faire place à, *to make room for.* **faire faillite,** *to fail.*
faire naufrage, *to be shipwrecked.*

faire un voyage, *to take a journey.* **faire un pas,** *to take a step.*
faire un kilomètre, un mille, *to walk a kilometer, a mile.*
faire une promenade, un tour, un tour de promenade, *to take a walk.*
faire un tour de jardin, *to take a turn in the garden.*
aller faire des emplettes, *to go shopping.*
faire le sourd, *to pretend to be deaf.* **faire le difficile,** *to be particular, hard to please.*
faire le mort, *to feign death, to keep still.* **faire l'enfant,** *to be childish.*

1. Dépêchez-vous, nous nous en allons. 2. Vous vous en allez? Mais vous venez d'arriver. 3. Je ne sais ni que dire ni que faire. 4. Monsieur, j'ai mal à la main droite; je n'ai pu écrire mon thème, mais je sais très bien mes leçons. 5. Si vous pouviez le leur faire finir

avant le 1er du mois prochain, ils pourraient partir le lendemain. 6. Vous devez être très occupé. 7. Vous devriez le savoir. 8. Elle n'aurait pas dû sortir sans attendre ma permission. 9. Quand devez-vous partir pour la campagne? 10. Je l'ai fait venir chez moi, et je lui ai fait écrire une longue lettre. 11. Savez-vous que vous nous faites peur avec vos histoires de revenants; allez-vous-en. 12. Quand cet enfant parle à son chien, il dit toujours, "Va-t'en." 13. Nous allions faire une petite promenade ce matin, mais il a commencé à pleuvoir, et nous avons dû rester chez nous toute la matinée. 14. Vous avez dû être très fâché. 15. Laissez-moi sortir, je dois faire des emplettes avant le dîner. 16. Qui vous a appris tout ce que vous savez? C'est lui. 17. Qui lui? 18. Mon frère aîné; je sais que vous le connaissez depuis longtemps. 19. Comment vont vos deux sœurs? 20. Cette femme riche, dont on vient de parler, ne fait que s'amuser tout le temps. 21. Comment vas-tu, mon cher petit ami? 22. Voici un joli livre de photographies; veux-tu que je te le fasse voir?

(*A*) 1. She was to pay (*rendre*) us a visit to-day, but we haven't seen her yet. 2. I am not surprised that you haven't seen her; she had to go away over a week ago. 3. Did they tell you that your friend Henry had arrived in America safe and sound (*sain et sauf*)? 4. He has not gone there, so far as I know. 5. You frighten these children with your faces (*grimaces*). 6. Those men were shipwrecked on the second of April, 1890. 7. I shall have him punished by (*par*) his father. 8. That man ought to have his hair cut. 9. Don't you think it is far too long? 10. He says he will have it cut to-morrow. 11. I should like to have a coat made.

12. Shall I send for a tailor? 13. I heard that his uncle has failed, but I hope it 's not true. 14. Come for a stroll in the garden, and you will see what beautiful roses we have. 15. Show (*faire voir*) them to us. 16. No one can tell how the thing happened. 17. She can read and write, and she is only seven. 18. When my brother was young, my father made him study every evening. 19. He made all of his children do their duty.

(*B*) 1. How are you? 2. I am very well, thank you; how are you (and you)? 3. Really? What is the matter with you? 4. What are you going to do now? 5. Is this hat becoming to me? 6. Do you think (find) that it fits him better? 7. When are you going away? 8. Why do you go away so soon? 9. We are going to the theatre this evening; can't you go (there) with us? 10. You are busy! What are you going to do? 11. Are you never at liberty? 12. Would you like to go with us? 13. Can you speak Spanish? 14. Have you ever learned to read it? 15. Can't you dance? 16. Can you not dance this evening? 17. Do you owe him a dollar? 18. When are you to pay it? 19. Ought you to pay it soon? 20. Ought you not to have paid it long ago? 21. Has he ever asked you for it? 22. Don't you think he needs it? 23. You will give it to him at once, won't you? 24. What kind of weather is it to-day? 25. Aren't you hard to please? 26. Don't you do anything but work? 27. Do you like to go shopping? 28. Do you get up before the sun rises?

95

Formation of Tenses.

The five tenses from which we may form the other parts of regular verbs and of most of the irregular verbs are called primitive tenses, or principal parts. They are as follows: Infinitive, Present Participle, Past Participle, Present Indicative, Past Definite.

By the use of + and − signs, the formation of tenses may be clearly shown by the following

Table.

INFINITIVE, { + **ai** = FUTURE.[1] / + **ais** = CONDITIONAL PRESENT.[1]

PRES. PARTICIPLE, { − **ant** + **ons** = 1st person plural PRESENT INDICATIVE. / − **ant** + **ais** = IMPERFECT INDICATIVE. / − **ant** + **e** = PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE.

PAST PARTICIPLE: after **avoir** or **être** = Compound Tenses.

PRES. INDICATIVE, { 1st person sing. = 2d person sing. IMPERATIVE. / (3d person plural − **nt** = PRES. SUBJUNCTIVE.)[2]

PAST DEF.: 2d person sing. + **se** = IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.

Example: **Suivre**, *to follow.*

Suivre, { **je suivrai**, FUTURE. / **je suivrais**, CONDITIONAL PRES.

Suivant, { **nous suivons**, 1st person plural PRESENT INDICATIVE. / **je suivais**, IMPERFECT INDICATIVE. / **que je suive**, PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE.

[1] See page 102.

[2] See page 191.

Suivi,
- **j'ai suivi**, PAST INDEFINITE.
- **j'avais suivi**, PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE.
- **j'eus suivi**, PAST ANTERIOR.
- **j'aurai suivi**, FUTURE PERFECT.
- **j'aurais suivi**, CONDITIONAL PERFECT.
- **que j'aie suivi**, PERFECT (PAST) SUBJUNCTIVE.
- **que j'eusse suivi**, PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.
- **avoir suivi**, PERFECT INFINITIVE.
- **ayant suivi**, PERFECT PARTICIPLE.

je suis
- **suis**, IMPERATIVE.
- (**que je suive**, PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE.)

je suivis: **que je suivisse**, IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.

Form the tenses of the following irregular verbs from their principal parts:

Dormir, *to sleep*, **dormant, dormi, je dors, je dormis.**

Also: **partir**, *to go out*, **sortir**, *to go away*, **servir**, *to serve*, **se repentir** (**de**), *to repent*, **sentir**, *to feel*, **mentir**, *to (tell a) lie*, **s'endormir**, *to go to sleep*, etc., and their compounds.

Observe that the final consonant of the stem is dropped in the singular of the Present Indicative of these verbs: **pars, sers, sens**, *etc.*

Offrir, *to offer*, **offrant, offert, j'offre, j'offris.**

Also: **souffrir**, *to suffer*, **ouvrir**, *to open*, **couvrir**, *to cover*, and their compounds.

Prendre, *to take*, **prenant, pris, je prends, je pris.**

PRESENT INDICATIVE.		PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE.	
je prends.	**nous prenons.**	**que je prenne.**	**que nous prenions.**
tu prends.	**vous prenez.**	**que tu prennes.**	**que vous preniez.**
il prend.	**ils prennent.**	**qu'il prenne.**	**qu'ils prennent.**

Also the compounds of **prendre**: **apprendre**, *to learn, to teach*, **comprendre**, *to understand*, **entreprendre**, *to undertake*, etc.

Plaindre, *to pity*, **plaignant, plaint, je plains, je plaignis.**

Also: **se plaindre**, *to complain*, and all verbs in **-aindre, -eindre, -oindre**, such as **craindre**, *to fear*, **peindre**, *to paint*, **éteindre**, *to extinguish*, **teindre**, *to tint*, **atteindre**, *to reach*, **oindre**, *to anoint*, **joindre**, *to join*, etc.

Naître, *to be born,* **naissant, né, je nais, je naquis.**

Like **connaître** and **paraître**, this verb has **î** in the stem everywhere before **t**.

Plaire, *to please,* **plaisant, plu, je plais, je plus.**

Third singular, present indicative, **il plaît.**

Also: **se taire,** *to be silent* (no **î** in third sing., present indicative).

Vivre, *to live,* **vivant, vécu, je vis, je vécus.**

Battre, *to strike,* **battant, battu, je bats, je battis.**

Also: **se battre,** *to fight,* **combattre,** *to combat,* etc.

Conduire, *to conduct,* **conduisant, conduit, je conduis, je conduisis.**

Also all verbs in **-uire** (**instruire, traduire, produire, introduire,** etc.), except **luire,** *to shine* (past participle, **lui**, and no past definite), and **nuire,** *to injure* (past participle, **nui**).

Passive Voice.

(1) As in English, any tense of the Passive Voice of a transitive verb is the same as the corresponding tense of the auxiliary verb followed by the past participle of the verb in question. See Appendix, page 330.

Elle est aimée de tout le monde, *she is loved by everybody.*
Nous avons été reçus avec honneur, *we were received with honor.*

(2) The passive is used far less frequently than in English, its place being taken by **on** with the active or by a reflexive construction.

On m'a dit que ce n'est pas vrai, *I have been told that it 's not true.*
On leur a donné des livres, *some books have been given to them.*
La porte s'ouvre, mais personne n'entre, *the door is opened, but no one comes in.*
Cela ne se dit pas, *no one says that.*

1. Nous partirons pour Edimbourg le 27, nous arriverons à Glasgow le 28, et nous en repartirons le 30 pour l'Irlande. 2. Ne vous repentez-vous pas d'avoir offensé un de vos meilleurs amis ? 3. Voici mon porte-monnaie ; servez-vous-en, je vous prie. 4. N'ouvrez pas cette fenêtre ; j'ai peur d'un courant d'air. 5. En hiver je souffre toujours du froid. 6. Connaissez-vous beaucoup de monde ici ? 7. Moi ? je n'y connais personne. 8. Madame N. est née à Dinan, en Bretagne, le 12 février, 1881, d'une famille honnête et ancienne. 9. Napoléon naquit en 1769 et mourut en 1821. 10. Il faut qu'on prenne les choses comme elles viennent et les hommes comme ils sont. 11. Apprenez ces vers par cœur. 12. La plupart des hommes estiment ce qu'ils ne comprennent pas. 13. Vous me promettez de faire cela, n'est-ce pas ? 14. Qui est-ce qui vous permet de parler ? 15. Allez devant ; je suis à vous, et je vous suis. 16. Qui vivra verra. 17. De qui vous plaignez-vous ? 18. Desquels de ses amis se plaint-elle ? 19. Voici l'atelier où un grand artiste peignait. 20. Cela ne plaît pas à tout le monde. 21. Il paraît que vous vous plaisiez à Paris, lorsque vous y demeuriez. 22. Comment traduit-on cette phrase ? 23. Faites taire votre chien. 24. Ne comprenez-vous pas ce que je veux dire ? 25. Avez-vous jamais entendu ceci ? — je ne suis pas ce que je suis ; si j'étais ce que je suis, je ne serais pas ce que je suis.

(*A*) 1. Take an umbrella, if you go out; it will rain in less than (before) an hour. 2. Follow us; do not follow them. 3. Take me to Mr. B's house; I am to see him on (*pour*) business. 4. Those boys quarrel very often. 5. I have forbidden them to fight. 6. Tell him to hold his tongue. 7. Is it polite to say, "Hold your

tongue"? 8. My brother has been given a gold watch. 9. My grandfather always falls asleep while reading the newspaper. 10. Let us not fall asleep while we are reading; we are too young to do that. 11. Your cousin is not a reasonable man; nothing pleases him. 12. I know that he always complains of everything. 13. Let us offer these flowers to (our) mother; they are the most beautiful ones we have ever offered her. 14. But they are not the most beautiful that have ever been given her. 15. If you wish us to open our books, please tell us at what page we are to open them. 16. You may open them at page 196. 17. *I* know this man, but *you* have never even seen him. 18. What [difference] does that make? 19. Don't be childish; put on your hat and go and take a walk with them. 20. Alfred Tennyson was born in 1810; Macaulay was born in 1800 and died in 1858. 21. They were great writers. 22. Michael Angelo (*Michel-Ange*) and Rubens painted magnificent pictures.

(*B*) 1. At what time do you start for school [in] the morning? 2. Do you understand what is said to you in French? 3. When French is spoken, do you translate it into English or do you think in French? 4. What ought one to do? 5. Do you wish to have the door opened? 6. Who opens it in the morning? 7. Don't you pity him? 8. Do you know what you are saying? 9. I am told that Bénoît and Co. (*Compagnie* = *Cie.*) have failed; do you know anything about it? 10. I was told the same thing a few days ago; do you suppose it is true? 11. How should one always behave (*se conduire*)? 12. What has been given you? 13. Of what do you complain? 14. Do I complain of you? 15. Have you a dog? 16. Does it follow you?

17. Would it like to follow you everywhere? 18. Can you guess what I have in my hand? 19. Do you want me to tell you what it is? 20. Has this book ever been translated?

96

Summary of Relative and Interrogative Pronouns.

Relative pronouns.

NOMINATIVE, **qui**, *who, which, that.*

GENITIVE, **de qui**, *of whom.*
dont, *of whom, of which, whose.*
duquel, de laquelle, **desquels, desquelles,** } *of whom, of which, whose.*

DATIVE, **à qui**, *to whom.*
auquel, à laquelle, **auxquels, auxquelles,** } *to whom, to which.*

ACCUSATIVE, **que**, *whom, which, that.*

Interrogative pronouns.

PERSONS.	THINGS.
NOMINATIVE.	
qui? **qui est-ce qui?** *who?*	**qu'est-ce qui?** *what?*
GENITIVE.	
de qui? *of whom?*	**de quoi?** *of what?*
duquel? de laquelle? **desquels? desquelles?** } *of which (one(s))?*	**duquel? de laquelle?** **des quels? desquelles?** } *of which (one(s))?*
DATIVE.	
à qui? *to whom?*	**à quoi?** *to what?*
auquel? à laquelle? **auxquels? auxquelles?** } *to which (one(s))?*	**auquel? à laquelle?** **auxquels? auxquelles?** } *to which (one(s))?*
ACCUSATIVE.	
qui? **qui est-ce que?** *whom?*	**que?** **qu'est-ce que?** *what?* **quoi?** *what?* used alone as an exclamation or as the object of a verb understood.

For the use of these pronouns, refer to Lessons 17, 46, 53, 54, 55, 81.

Indefinite Adjectives and Pronouns.

The following are adjectives only:

chaque, *each, every.*
quelque, *some;* pl., *few.*
quelconque (after the noun), *whatever.*
maint, *many a.*
certain, *certain.*[1]
différent(e)s, **divers**, **diverses**, } *various.*
même, *self, same, even.*
Also: **quel . . . que** (with subjunctive of **être**), **quelque . . . que** (with subjunctive), } *whatever.*

For **quelque** as an adverb, see Lesson 82.

Chaque homme; il y a quelque temps; des livres quelconques; maintes fois; une certaine histoire; différentes (diverses) affaires; la même justice (*the same justice*); **la justice même** (*justice herself*); **aujourd'hui même; quelles que soient ses idées; quelques amis qu'il ait; quelque petites qu'elles soient.**

The following are pronouns only:

chacun(e), *each, each one.*
quelqu'un(e), *some one, any one.*
quelques-uns (unes), *some, few.*
quelque chose, *something.*
rien, *nothing.*
personne, *nobody.*
on, *one, people*, etc. (Lesson 39).
autrui, *others* (with preposition only).

Chacun de ces hommes; on le dit; les bêtises que l'on dit; les fautes d'autrui.

Quelqu'un, quelque chose, personne, and **rien** take **de** before an adjective: **Donnez-moi quelque chose de joli**, *give me something pretty.* **N'avez-vous rien de plus joli**, *have you nothing prettier?*

The following are adjectives or pronouns:

aucun(e), **nul(le)**, **pas un(e)**, } (**ne** with verb) *no, nobody.*
plusiers, *several.*
tel(le), *such.*
autre, *other.*
tout, toute, tous, toutes, } *every, whole, all.*

Aucune (**nulle, pas une**) **femme ne le croit; sans aucune faute; aucun d'eux ne l'accepte; j'en ai plusieurs; de tels hommes; des lits tels quels** (*such as they are*); **monsieur un tel** (*Mr. So and So*); **tel père,**

[1] For position and meaning of **certain, différent, divers,** and **même,** see page 351.

tel fils; **tous les hommes sont mortels**; **c'est tout**; **nous sommes tous**[1] **ici**; **tous les deux (tous deux)**; **l'un et l'autre**; **autres temps, autres mœurs** (*customs*); **il y en a d'autres**; **vous autres soldats** (*you soldiers*).

Tout, *quite, wholly.*

Tout used as an adverb varies for the sake of euphony before a feminine adjective beginning with a consonant or an **h** aspirate.

Elle est toute surprise, *she is quite surprised.*
Elles sont toutes honteuses, *they are greatly ashamed.*
But: **Elle est tout aimable**, *she is very agreeable.*
Tout poli qu'il est, *however polite he is.*
Observe indicative.

Soi (rarely used), *one's self, himself.*

Soi, the disjunctive form of **se**, generally refers to **on, chacun, personne**, etc., and is used only with a preposition.

Chacun pour soi, *every man for himself.*
On est heureux lorsqu'on est content de soi.
One is happy when one is satisfied with one's self.

1. Avez-vous encore le moindre doute? Aucun. 2. Tout élève aime un maître aimable. 3. Chaque élève de cette classe l'admire. 4. Chacun a sa manière de voir. 5. On ne doit pas se moquer d'autrui. 6 D'autres prendraient cela d'une autre façon. 7. Il n'y a personne qui n'en soit fâché. 8. Il n'y a pas une personne qui n'en soit fâchée. 9. Nous sommes tous à vous. 10. Nous sommes tout à vous. 11. Ecoutez! qu'on me laisse tout seul! 12. Ces messieurs sont tout prêts. 13. Le crime traîne après soi des remords. 14. La valeur, tout héroïque qu'elle est, ne suffit pas pour faire

[1] **s** pronounced when **tous** is a pronoun.

des héros. 15. Toute ville a ses coutumes. 16. Toutes les villes de la France ont quelque chose d'intéressant. 17. Toute confiance est dangereuse, si elle n'est pas entière. 18. Pouvez-vous traverser la chambre sans rien regarder? 19. Lisez avec beaucoup de soin les quelques pages qui suivent. 20. Qui que ce soit qui vous l'ait dit, il s'est trompé. 21. On ne fait pas toujours ce qu'on doit faire.

(*A*) 1. He has been waiting here a long time for some one. 2. We Americans are never content with what we possess. 3. Give me any (a) book whatever. 4. Do you think she is quite happy? 5. A certain man was speaking to me about various things, and he asked me what I have just asked you. 6. No man is perfect. 7. What were you looking for in the kitchen? 8. I was looking for something to eat. 9. Something good, I suppose. 10. Such is the kindness of this gentleman, that we no longer need anything. 11. Whoever [see page 205] you may be and whatever you may do, your duty is to obey the law (*loi*, f.). 12. Whatever your intentions [f.] may be, you must not forget the rights of others. 13. Has he no fault? 14. Both are guilty. 15. Every man is mortal. 16. Did you ever see such a man? 17. Every friend that he used to have has forgotten him. 18. I know nobody more agreeable than his wife. 19. We have heard that said many a time, but we do not believe it. 20. His brothers are quite happy. 21. His sisters are quite sad.

(*B*) 1. Whom have you met to-day? 2. What are you going to do now? 3. What are you thinking of? 4. Did I ask you of whom or of what you are thinking? 5. Has any one found a key? 6. I thank you for

returning it to me; did you find it yourself? 7. The woman whose son died yesterday is very poor, is she not? 8. Is n't the one whose sons are living, poorer still? 9. Who is it that you are working for? 10. What do you write with? 11. Do you wish me to give you what I have in my pocket? 12. Who is the boy I saw you speaking to this morning? 13. Is he the one you were telling me about yesterday? 14. What is this book? 15. Whose is it? 16. What color is it? 17. Which of these books are yours? 18. Which is the best? 19. What is that? 20. What is a cat? 21. Whose friend is that man? 22. However rich people may be, are they always sure of being happy? 23. Who says that? 24. Have you nothing new to tell us?

97

Position of Adjectives.

Adjectives generally follow their nouns, especially:

(1) Adjectives denoting a physical quality: — shape, color, taste, etc.

Une table ronde; **une maison blanche**; **un homme boiteux** (*lame*); **une femme malade**; **de l'eau froide** (**chaude**, **fraîche**); **une orange douce**; **la tête et les pieds nus** (*head and feet bare*).

Note that like **demi** in **demi-heure**, *half-hour*, **nu** is invariable before the noun: **nu-tête**, *bareheaded*; **nu-pieds**, *barefooted*.

(2) Adjectives denoting nationality, religion, or office.

La langue française; **un prêtre catholique**; **un ministre protestant**; **un décret impérial**.

(3) Adjectives taken in a literal rather than in a figurative sense.

un abîme profond, *a deep abyss.*	**un profond silence,** *a deep silence.*
un cheval noir, *a black horse.*	**un noir soupçon,** *a dark suspicion.*
une maison chère, *an expensive house.*	**une chère amie,** *a dear friend.*
une histoire vraie, *a true story.*	**une vraie histoire,** *a regular yarn.*

For other adjectives with meanings varying according to position, see page 351.

(4) Present or past participles used as adjectives.

une personne charmante; un garçon obéissant; une porte fermée; le Paradis perdu; une bataille perdue.

(5) In an exclamation and in the expression **plus . . . plus,** *the more . . . the more,* etc., the adjective stands after the verb.

Que le temps est beau, *how beautiful the weather is!*

Plus on est riche, moins on est heureux, *the richer a man is, the less happy he is.*

Observe use of **de** after **que,** *how many, how much!*

Que de fois je l'ai vu, *how many times I have seen him!*

ADVERBS.

Adjectives used as Adverbs.

An adjective used as an adverb is invariable.

parler bas (haut), *to speak low (loud).*	**tenir bon,** *to stand firm.*
chanter juste (faux), *to sing in (out of) tune.*	**aller droit,** *to go straight.*
sentir bon (mauvais), *to smell good (bad).*	**arrêter court,** *to stop short.*
viser haut, *to aim high.*	**voir clair,** *to see clearly.*

Il l'a fait exprès, *he did it purposely.*

Formation from Adjectives.

To form an adverb from an adjective, add **-ment** to the masculine if the adjective ends in a vowel; if it ends in a consonant, add **-ment** to the feminine.

poli,	**poliment,** *politely.*	**doux,**	**doucement,** *gently.*
facile,	**facilement,** *easily.*	**cruel,**	**cruellement,** *cruelly.*

For further rules and exceptions, see Appendix, page 353.

Position.

When used with an infinitive, **mieux, bien, mal, jamais, toujours, pas, plus,** and **trop** generally precede the verb. (See Lesson 58.)

mieux écrire, bien parler, mal prononcer, ne jamais se tromper, ne pas rire, ne plus manger, trop courir.

Observe that regularly both parts of the negative stand before the infinitive. **Personne** and **que** follow.

Elle voudrait ne parler à personne, *she would like to speak to nobody.*
Je crois n'en avoir que deux, *I think I have only two.*

Comparison.

(6) Adverbs are compared like adjectives (Lesson 44), except that in the superlative **le** is invariable.

souvent; plus souvent; le plus souvent.

(7) The adverbs **bien, mal, peu,** corresponding to **bon, mauvais, petit,** are irregularly compared:

bien, *well.*	**mieux,** *better.*	**le mieux,** *the best.*
mal, *badly, ill.*	**pis,** *worse.*	**le pis,** *the worst.*
peu, *little.*	**moins,** *less.*	**le moins,** *the least.*

de mal en pis, *from bad to worse.*
tant mieux (pis) pour moi, *so much (all) the better (worse) for me.*

(8) *The* before a comparative is not expressed in French.

Plus on est riche, plus on a de soucis, *the richer a man is, the more cares he has.*
Plus il travaille, moins il réussit, *the more he works, the less he succeeds.*

(9) *Than* before a tense of the indicative is expressed by **que . . . ne.**

Nous sommes plus riches que vous ne pensez, *we are richer than you think.*

Elle est plus studieuse qu'elle ne l'était autrefois, *she is more studious than she was formerly.*

But, if the first clause of the sentence is negative or interrogative, or if there is an adverb between **que** and the verb, the **ne** is left out.

N'agissez pas autrement que vous parlez, *do not act otherwise than you speak.*

Croyez-vous qu'un homme puisse être plus heureux que vous l'êtes depuis trois mois? *Do you think that a man can be happier than you have been for the last three months?*

Elle est plus malheureuse que lorsqu'elle demeurait chez vous, *she is more unhappy than she was when she lived with you.*

S'asseoir, *to sit down.*

PRESENT PARTICIPLE, **s'asseyant.** PAST PARTICIPLE, **assis.**

PRESENT INDICATIVE.

je m'assieds, tu t'assieds, il s'assied, nous nous asseyons, vous vous asseyez, ils s'asseyent.

PAST DEFINITE, **je m'assis.** FUTURE, **je m'assiérai.**

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE.

que je m'asseye, que tu t'asseyes, qu'il s'asseye, que nous nous asseyions, que vous vous asseyiez, qu'ils s'asseyent.

IMPERATIVE, **assieds-toi, asseyons-nous, asseyez-vous.**

seoir, *to suit, to become.* **asseoir,** *to seat.* **être assis,** *to be sitting.*

1. Donnez-vous la peine de vous asseoir. 2. Qui s'est assis le premier? 3. Me voilà assis; maintenant je suis prêt à regarder tout ce que vous voulez me faire voir. 4. Où voulez-vous que je m'asseye maintenant? Par terre? 5. Quoiqu'il soit empereur, il a commis plus de

crimes que le dernier misérable enfermé dans ses prisons. 6. Je crains, mon ami, que vous n'exagériez un peu votre connaissance du français; j'ai découvert plus de dix fautes dans votre dernière lettre. 7. J'aime à croire que vous ne les avez pas faites exprès. 8. J'ai cruellement souffert du froid tout le temps qu'a duré l'expédition malheureuse. 9. Il me semble que votre oncle est beaucoup plus riche qu'il ne l'était il y a six ans. 10. Je sais qu'il n'est pas moins riche qu'il l'était l'année dernière. 11. Croyez-moi, plus vous vous abstiendrez de ces bruyants plaisirs, plus vous serez heureux. 12. Vous avez fait plus de progrès que je ne l'espérais. 13. Nous nous sommes assises pour nous reposer quelques minutes, et on nous a apporté tout ce qu'il y avait de bon dans la maison. 14. Asseyez-vous là immédiatement. 15. Qui a lu Le Roman d'un Jeune Homme Pauvre? 16. Il y a dans cette ville quatre prêtres catholiques et plusieurs pasteurs protestants.

1. This man acts better than he speaks. 2. He is richer than people think. 3. The distance is less[1] than you pretend. 4. Is there any one ill at your house? 5. Do you wish to sit down or do you wish us to sit down? 6. Where are you going to sit? 7. Fortunately, some of the ladies are already seated. 8. Let us all sit down here at this little round table and take some coffee. 9. Have you no better coffee? 10. Bring us some cold water too, please. 11. That gentleman has a bottle of red wine. 12. She is a far more charming woman than she used to be. 13. Really, you rarely see a woman more worthy of being loved. 14. She is also more learned than I had thought. 15. The more you attack[2] him, the more we shall defend him. 16. The

[1] Adjective. [2] Future of attaquer.

richer a man is, the less free he is. 17. We are all glad that wars[1] are becoming less numerous than they used to be. 18. He reads better than he writes, but that is not saying[2] much. 19. Can't he write better? 20. Try not to write badly. 21. What beautiful roses! how good they smell! 22. Have you seen our new servant? 23. My doctor has advised me not to read any more at night. 24. Get away now! you will not have anything more. 25. I beg you not to say that. 26. I believe he says it purposely.

98

Negation.

(1) The use and position of the most common negative expressions have already been noted: **ne . . . pas, rien, personne,** etc.

Elle ne me le donne pas.	**Elle n'a plus d'argent.**
Elle n'a pas chanté.	**Elle n'a guère d'esprit.**
Elle n'a rien dit.	**N'a-t-elle ni plumes ni crayons?**
Elle n'a vu personne.	**Que fait-elle? Rien.**
Elle n'a que des amis.	**Qui voit-elle? Personne.**

Plus d'argent, *no more money.*

For position of negative adverbs used with the infinitive, see page 253.

(2) For the use of **ne** without **pas** or **point,** see Lessons 80 and 82; also (9) of the preceding lesson.

Ne is also commonly used alone as a negative:

(*a*) With the verbs **pouvoir, oser, cesser, savoir,** and sometimes **bouger,** *to stir,* when they are not especially emphatic.

Je ne sais que faire, *I don't know what to do.*
Je ne bougerai de là, *I shall not stir.*
Je ne puis le faire, *I cannot do it.*

[1] **guerre** (f.). [2] **vouloir dire.**

But generally **pas** is used with the form **je peux**: **Je ne peux pas le faire.** **Ne** is *always* alone in **je ne saurais** (**je ne peux pas**) and **je ne sais quoi.**

(*b*) In a subordinate clause when the principal clause is negative in meaning.

Je n'ai rien qui ne vous appartienne, *I have nothing that belongs to you.*

(*c*) After **si** used negatively and meaning *unless*.

J'irai le trouver, si vous n'y allez vous-même, *I shall go and find him, if you do not go (unless you go) yourself.*

(*d*) After **que** beginning a negative sentence and meaning *why*, or after **qui** in exclamations.

Que n'est-il venu, *why did n't he come?*

Que ne lui avez-vous dit tout ce qui s'est passé? *Why did n't you tell him all that took place?*

Compare with use of **pourquoi**, which asks for the reason, while **que . . . ne** is exclamatory in meaning.

(*e*) After **depuis que** or **il y a . . . que**, followed by the past indefinite with a negative.

Il y a dix jours que je ne l'ai vu, *it is ten days since I saw him*, or *I have n't seen him for ten days.*

If the verb is not in the past indefinite, **pas** or **point** must be used.

Il y a dix jours que nous ne nous parlons pas, *we have not spoken to each other for ten days.*

Il y avait dix jours que nous ne nous parlions pas, *we had not spoken to each other for ten days.*

(*f*) After **peu s'en faut**, or after **il s'en faut** negative or interrogative.

Peu s'en faut qu'il ne le fasse, *he comes very near doing it.*

Il ne s'en faut pas (de) beaucoup qu'il ne réussisse, *he comes very near succeeding.*

Oui and **si**, *yes*; **non**, *no*.

Oui assents, but **si** disputes a negative.

Vous êtes prêt, n'est-ce pas? Oui, monsieur. *You are ready, are you not? Yes, sir.*

Il n'est pas ici. Si, madame, il est ici. *He is not here. Yes, madam, he is here.*

Vous n'avez plus d'argent. Mais si, j'en ai beaucoup. *You have no more money. Why yes, I have a great deal.*

Partez-vous toujours pour la Suisse? Non, monsieur. *Are you still planning to start for Switzerland? No, sir.*

Cultivate the habit of using **monsieur**, **madame**, **mademoiselle**, much more frequently than in English, especially with *yes* and *no*, which are rarely heard alone in France.

Observe the use of **que** before **oui**, **si**, or **non**, after verbs of *saying*, *thinking*, etc.

Dites-vous que oui ou que non? Moi, je dis que oui. *Do you say yes or no? I say yes.*

Ne . . . que and **seulement**, *only*.

Only may be expressed by **ne . . . que** when it refers to the complement of a verb.

Je n'en ai que deux,
J'en ai deux seulement, } *I have only two.*

Il ne fait que jouer,
Il joue seulement, } *he does nothing but play.*

But **Venez seulement,** *only come.*
Deux seulement, s'il vous plaît, *only two, please.*
Seulement mes amis y assisteront, *only my friends will be present.*

1. Plus d'argent, donc plus d'amusement. 2. N'importe; j'aime mieux ne pas m'amuser. 3. Moi aussi. 4. J'aime à croire que vous n'avez pas répété ce que je vous ai dit il y a quelques jours. 5. Je n'ai dit mot à personne, et je n'en parlerai pas de ma vie. 6. Elle n'en parlera pas non plus. 7. Ni moi non plus. 8. Ecoutez

seulement, vous apprendrez beaucoup. 9. Seulement votre frère est arrivé ce soir. 10. Vous n'êtes donc pas allée à ce bal, mademoiselle ? 11. Si fait, j'y suis allée. 12. Rien n'empêche d'être naturel tant que l'envie de le paraître. 13. Voulez-vous bien ne pas bâiller (*yawn*) ? 14. Est-ce que vous vous rappelez ce que dit Maxime ? — "Mon nom n'est pas plus à vendre qu'à louer." 15. C'est quand on lui a offert une femme riche en échange de son titre. 16. Il n'avait pas d'amis ; il n'avait que des connaissances. 17. Est-ce que vous n'avez des connaissances que dans cette ville ? 18. Qui de nous n'a ses défauts ! 19. Que ne nous a-t-il appelés à son secours ? 20. Pauvre ou non, elle est toujours heureuse. 21. L'honnête homme ne trompe jamais personne. 22. Nous le ferons non seulement pour lui, mais aussi pour ses amis. 23. Il n'y a rien que cet enfant ne sache. 24. C'est un enfant terrible probablement. 25. Je viens de recevoir de leurs nouvelles ; ils se plaignent de ne pas vous voir. 26. Maintenant ils ne sont que sept.

1. How many men came when you did (= *with you*) ? 2. There were only three. 3. Only three ? 4. You have n't met any of them yet, I suppose. 5. Yes, I have met one. 6. He has no more money. 7. He has no more money than you, you mean (*vouloir dire*). 8. Yes, of course (*bien entendu*). 9. I have told her never to go out in the evening without inviting me to accompany her. 10. He likes nobody, and nobody likes him. 11. He prefers not to be agreeable. 12. Neither his parents nor his brothers will defend him. 13. They dare not do it. 14. They know that they would be wrong to do so. 15. They give him no money, but he never ceases to ask them for some. 16. It is more than

six months since they gave him any. 17. Do not say anything about it, because it may not be true. 18. Why didn't you say that sooner? 19. He will certainly punish the children who do not obey him. 20. I say no; he never punishes anybody. 21. This boy reads French better than he writes it. 22. I think not, sir. 23. I say yes; what I said is absolutely true. 24. He ought to read well; that is all he does all day long. 25. Yes, he does nothing but read. 26. I told you that so as not to deceive you. 27. Let us say no more about it; let's forget it! 28. There are things one can never forget. 29. For ten days I haven't thought of it one single time. 30. It is only seven o'clock; you have time to do that. 31. We cannot eat; we are neither hungry nor thirsty. 32. Nor they either. 33. When we go for a walk together, you do nothing but run; I cannot walk so fast. 34. There is nothing he does not try to do to please us.

99

The Use of De.

(1) We have seen **de** used as *of* or *from*, as *some* or *any* in the partitive article, as *than* before a numeral, *by* denoting measure, *in* after a superlative, and with the infinitive after certain verbs.

Il est loin d'ici.	**Elle est plus grande que moi de deux pouces.**
Avez-vous de la monnaie?	**La plus haute de la ville.**
Plus de cinq cents.	**Permettez-moi de parler.**

(2) **De** is also used in the sense of *by* after certain verbs used in the passive, such as **être aimé, haï** (*hated*), **craint, estimé, honoré, vu, regardé, aperçu, suivi, accompagné, précédé,** etc.

Par may also be used with these verbs and throws the emphasis upon the performer of the action.

On dit qu'elle a été vue de tout le monde.	*They say she was seen by everybody.*
Je demande par qui elle a été vue.	*I ask by whom she was seen.*
Elle est aimée de tous.	*She is loved by everybody.*
Elle est aimée par ses enfants.	*She is loved by her children.*
Le général est suivi de ses troupes.	*The general is followed by his troops.*
Il est suivi par les troupes ennemies.	*He is followed by the troops of the enemy.*

(3) **De** means *with* after a large number of adjectives denoting *source*, *separation*, *feeling*, etc., such as: **absent, plein, libre, malade, content, heureux, fier, sûr, fâché, surpris, couvert,** etc.

Elle est ravie de votre succès, *she is delighted with (at) your success.*

(4) Observe also the following uses of **de :**

le chemin de Tours, *the road to Tours.*
la ville de Paris, *the city of Paris.*
le royaume de Suède, *the kingdom of Sweden.*
un homme de talent, *a man of talent.*
quelque chose de beau, *something beautiful.*
rien de plus beau, *nothing more beautiful.*
tout ce qu'il y a de plus beau, *the most beautiful.*

avoir l'air de, *to appear.*
dépendre de, *to depend upon.*
blâmer de, *to blame for.*
féliciter de, *to congratulate upon.*
se mêler de, *to attend to.*
(se) rire de, *to laugh at.*
se moquer de, *to make fun of.*
remercier de, *to thank for.*
se souvenir de, *to remember.*
se nourrir de, **vivre de,** } *to live on.*
jouir de, *to enjoy.*
se réjouir de, *to rejoice at.*
profiter de, *to profit by.*
s'approcher de, *to approach.*
savoir gré de, *to be grateful for.*
se douter de, *to suspect.*
se passer de, *to do without.*
s'emparer de, *to take possession of.*
s'agir de, *to be a question of.*
se repentir de, *to repent (of).*
se soucier de, *to care about.*
mourir de faim, etc., *to starve,* etc.
connaître de vue, *to know by sight.*
pleurer de colère, *to weep with anger.*

faire de, *to do with.*
faire signe de la main, *to make a sign with the hand.*
mourir de la main de, *to die by the hand of.*

c'en est fait de, *it's all up with.*
que de, *how many! how much!*
de trop, *too many, in the way.*
de plus, *besides.*
de ce côté, *on this side.*
de part et d'autre, *on the part of both.*
de toutes parts, *on all sides.*
de bonne heure, *early.*
de bon appétit, *with a good appetite.*
de mon temps, *when I was young.*
du vivant de, *during the lifetime of.*
de cette manière, *in this way.*
jamais de la vie, *never* (emphatic).
le lendemain de, *the day after.*

tenir de son père, *to take after his father.*
si j'étais de vous, *if I were in your place.*
changer, *to change* (*transform*).
changer de chapeau, *to change one's hat.*
changer d'avis, *to change one's mind.*
changer — en —, *to change — into —*
manquer, *to fail, lack, want.*
manquer de respect à, *to be lacking in respect for.*
mon ami me manque, *I miss my friend.*
j'ai manqué le train, *I lost the train.*

près de, *near* (time or place).
auprès de, *beside* (place or comparison).
d'après, *according to, after, from.*
faute de, *for want of.*
hors de, *out of.*
le long de, *along.*
vis-à-vis de, *opposite to.*

1. L'éloquence est un art très sérieux, destiné à instruire, à réprimer les passions, à corriger les mœurs, et à soutenir les lois. 2. La condition des comédiens était infâme chez les Romains, et honorable chez les Grecs. 3. Il a de son côté quelque chose à dire, il me semble. 4. De mon temps les choses ne se passaient pas ainsi. 5. Au moment où la course des chevaux va commencer, toute la foule se range des deux côtés de la rue. 6. Molière, à dix ans, était orphelin de mère. 7. Il s'en faut de beaucoup que vous soyez aussi âgé que votre frère. 8. Ce malade n'a rien mangé depuis quatre jours. 9. La tragédie du Cid est de Corneille. 10. Cet

homme-là est aimé de tous ceux qui le connaissent; celui-ci est aimé par ses voisins. 11. La grande salle se remplit de monde. 12. Il a payé son audace de sa liberté, et enfin de sa vie. 13. Pour former l'imparfait de l'indicatif, on change la terminaison *-ant* du participe présent en *-ais*. 14. Une troisième personne est toujours de trop. 15. Tantale mourut de soif. 16. On a peint ce beau tableau d'après nature. 17. Après la pluie le beau temps. 18. Adieu, charmant pays de France!

(*A*) 1. I remember you. 2. Do you remember him (her, it)? 3. If I were in your place, I would n't do it. 4. Those children have light hair and blue eyes; they all take after their mother. 5. The old beggar (*mendiant*) was always followed by his little dog. 6. The beggar was driven away by our dog. 7. Go and change [your] hat. What for? 8. Some one has hurt this child. 9. Who has hurt him? 10. Nobody; he is crying with anger. 11. What is it [all] about? 12. During my father's lifetime that never happened. 13. I rejoice at your good fortune; shall I congratulate you on it? 14. That depends; on what? 15. I do not need to tell you that. 16. Come nearer (approach) the table. 17. Let us cross the street; there are fewer people on the other side. 18. That makes no difference; I prefer to walk on this side. 19. The teacher that died yesterday was loved by everybody, especially by her pupils. 20. That old man is so miserly (*avare*) that he does without a Christmas tree (*arbre de Noël*). 21. I don't care. 22. It is not polite to say that.

(*B*) 1. Do you remember me? 2. Do you think I remember you? 3. Do I blame you for your mistakes? 4. Ought we to profit by the mistakes of others? 5. Do you repent for what you have done? 6. At what

time does the train for —— start? 7. Do you get up early? 8. Do you enjoy playing? 9. What do we live on? 10. Do you take after your father or your mother? 11. Are you proud of it? 12. Do you know that lady? 13. Only by sight. 14. Why do you make fun of your friends? 15. Have you nothing better to do? 16. May I congratulate you on what has happened? 17. Have n't you anything new to tell us? 18. Are you surprised at it? 19. Are you glad of it? 20. Can some of these sentences be expressed in more than one way? 21. Express *l'an dix-huit cent soixante* in another way.

100

The Use of À.

Besides the uses of à already given (*to, at, in,* with infinitives, etc.), we may also note the following:

(1) After many adjectives such as **accoutumé, attentif, sourd, docile, supérieur**, etc.

(2) With the definite article to denote *a physical quality, a habit, the dress*, etc.

un homme au regard timide, *a man with a timid look.*
une femme aux cheveux châtains, *a woman with dark-brown hair.*
du potage au lait, *milk soup.*

(3) Between two nouns to denote *use, purpose, fitness*, or *style.*

une machine à coudre,	*a sewing-machine.*
un couteau à papier,	*a paper-knife.*
un bateau à vapeur,	*a steamboat.*
un moulin à vent,	*a windmill.*
du papier à lettres,	*letter-paper.*
un fer à cheval,	*a horse-shoe.*

Compare **un pot à fleurs**, *a flower-pot*, with **un pot de fleurs**, *a pot of flowers;* **un verre à vin**, *a wine-glass*, with **un verre de vin**, *a glass of wine;* etc.

(4) Observe also:

croire à, *to believe in.*
penser à, *to think of.*
rêver à, **songer à**, } *to dream of.*
assister à, *to be present at.*
toucher à, *to touch, to meddle with.*
prendre goût à, *to take a liking for.*
prendre part à, *to share in.*
prendre plaisir à, *to take pleasure in.*
fouler aux pieds, *to trample under foot.*
aller à toute vapeur, *to go at full steam.*
vendre à la livre, *to sell by the pound.*
fait à la main, *made by hand.*
c'est à vous à (de) parler, *it's your turn to speak.*
en vouloir à, *to have a grudge against, to dislike.*
être à l'heure, *to be on time.*
à votre montre, *by your watch.*
c'est-à-dire, *that is to say.*
à ce soir, *good-bye until this evening.*
au revoir, **au plaisir**, } *good-bye until I have the pleasure of seeing you again.*
le 5 mars, au soir, *on the evening of March 5th.*
à dessein (exprès), *purposely.*
à tort, *wrongly.*
à haute voix, *aloud.*
à voix basse, *in a low tone.*
à merveille, *wonderfully.*
au plus, *at the most.*
au plus vite, *as quickly as possible.*
au contraire, *on the contrary.*
au fait, *indeed; in fact.*
à droite (gauche), *on* (or *to*) *the right* (*left*).
comme à l'ordinaire, *as usual.*
à genoux, *on one's knees, kneeling.*
au doigt, *on the finger.*
à mes dépens, *at my expense.*
à bon marché, *cheap.*
à l'œil nu, *with the naked eye.*
être à la mode, *to be in style.*
à table, *to* (*at*) *the table.*
au rez-de-chaussée, *on the ground floor.*
au premier (étage), *on the first story.*
à travers, *across, through.*
à côté de, *beside.*
à l'exception de, *except.*
au delà de, *beyond.*
au-dessus de, *above.*
au-dessous de, *below.*
au lieu de, *instead of.*
autour de, *around.*
à moi! **au secours!** } *help!*
au voleur! *thieves!* or *stop thief!*
au feu! *fire!*
à l'assassin! *murder!*
à la bonne heure! *all right! good!*
à nous deux, monsieur! *now, sir!*

à and de.

servir, *to serve.*
servir à, *to be (used) for.*
servir de, *to serve as* or *instead of.*
se servir de, *to make use of.*
marier, *to marry, give in marriage.*
se marier, *to get married.*
se marier à (avec) } *to marry, take*
épouser, } *in marriage.*

jouer, *to play.*
jouer à un jeu, *to play a game.*
jouer d'un instrument, *to play an instrument.*
jouer aux cartes, à la balle, au cache-cache; jouer du violon, de la flûte, jouer (or **toucher**) **du piano.**

Interjections of frequent use are:

allons! *come!*
voyons! *look here!*
tiens! *indeed!*
tenez! *hold!*
en avant! *forward!*
gare! *look out!*
courage! *cheer up!*
hélas! *alas!*
par exemple! *the idea!*

1. Prenez la peine de vous mettre à table, monsieur. 2. Marie, apportez-nous trois verres à vin et trois tasses à thé; nous resterons ce soir dans la salle à manger. 3. Est-ce que vous consentez à lui donner ce joli papier à lettres? 4. Non, certainement, je ne le lui donnerai pas. J'en ai besoin moi-même. 5. Je placerai sa photographie au-dessus de ce tableau, et la vôtre au-dessous. 6. Il fait froid aujourd'hui; il n'y a que deux degrés au-dessus de zéro. 7. Mon oncle a marié sa fille la semaine dernière, et j'ai assisté aux noces. 8. Avec qui s'est-elle mariée? 9. Avez-vous jamais lu La Dame aux Camélias? 10. Je l'ai lu et je l'ai vu jouer par Mme. Bernhardt. 11. Etes-vous accoutumé à voir les pièces françaises? 12. Préférez-vous les comédies ou les tragédies? 13. Vous avez vu les deux Coquelins, n'est-ce pas? 14. Je n'ai pas vu Coquelin aîné, mais j'ai vu Coquelin cadet plusieurs fois. 15. Cet accident a été fatal à toutes mes espérances. 16. Quel dommage! 17. A-t-il gagné ou perdu à faire cela? 18. Comment!

il touche du piano? 19. On peut toucher du piano et être honnête homme. 20. Courage, camarade, le diable est mort!

(*A*) 1. That beautiful child with large black eyes and black hair is my little nephew. 2. Here are some books I bought cheap; I paid only two dollars apiece for them. 3. It strikes me they were dear. 4. There are a great many windmills in Holland. 5. Don't touch! 6. We are amusing ourselves at your expense. 7. Butter is always sold by the pound. 8. How much does it cost a pound? 9. What kind (*espèce*, f.) of boat is that? 10. It is a steam-boat. 11. It arrives at ten o'clock and it is on time, to-day, as usual. 12. What is that gray-haired man doing? 13. He is selling flower-pots. 14. Beyond the Alps lies (*se trouver*) Italy. 15. One must always be ready to die for one's country (*patrie*, f.). 16. His friends are deaf to all his prayers (*prière*, f.) 17. They used to share in his good fortune, but now that he is unfortunate, that is to say, now that he is poor, they never come to see him. 18. They used to take pleasure in his company. 19. It seems to me they avoid meeting him. 20. Alas, how true that is! 21. On the contrary, sir, his old friends do not neglect him; they often go to his house, but he is never at home. 22. It is thought that he keeps his door locked purposely. 23. It is probable that he is too proud to see them.

(*B*) 1. Do you like to read aloud? 2. Why don't you work a little instead of playing all the time? 3. Did you ever find a horse-shoe when you were (while) out walking? 4. When you go home do you turn to the right or to the left? 5. Do you live on this side of the street? 6. Have you any letter-paper to lend me? 7. What instrument do you play? 8. Is it easy to learn

to play the piano? 9. What is a sewing-machine for? 10. Are you always attentive to what is being said to you? 11. Who is the gentleman with the broad shoulders? 12. Do you believe in ghosts? 13. Who has ever been present at a wedding? 14. What time is it by your watch? 15. What is a pen used for? 16. When you travel do you find that the trains are always on time? 17. Explain to us the difference between *adieu* and *au revoir*. 18. If we were playing cards and if I said to you *C'est à vous*, would you understand what I meant? 19. Do you live on the first or second story?

101

The Prepositions En and Dans.

En has a vague and general meaning and is rarely used with the definite article; **dans** has a precise and limited meaning and takes an article.

Observe: **en prison, dans cette vieille prison; en danger, dans un grand danger; en voiture, dans une belle voiture; en France** (pas **en Angleterre**), **dans la France** (pas **hors de**, *outside of*, **la France**); **docteur en philosophie** or **en médecine**, but **docteur** or **bachelier ès lettres, ès sciences** (ès contraction of **en les**); **en haut**, *upstairs*, **en bas**, *downstairs*, **en l'air**, *in the air*.

Also: **agir en chrétien, en prince**, *to act like a Christian, like a prince;* **il a parlé en maître**, *he talked like a master*, but **il m'a traité de prince**, *he treated me as if I were a prince.*

A, dans, and en.

A la maison, *at home*, **dans la maison**, *in the house* (**pas hors de la maison**); **à Paris**, *at* or *in Paris*, **dans Paris**, *inside of Paris;* **à la ville**, *in the city* (not in the country), **dans la ville**, *inside the city*, **en ville**, *in town* (not at home).

Depuis, pendant, pour, dans, en, in expressions of time.

Depuis marks the beginning of a period of time; **pendant**, its whole duration, and is often omitted; **pour**, the time allotted for an action; **dans**, the time at the end of which an action will take place; **en**, the time taken to perform the action.

Il était à Rome depuis huit jours, *he had been in Rome a week.*

Il y est resté pendant quinze jours, *he stayed there a fortnight.*

Il y est allé le lendemain pour trois mois, *he went there next day for three months.*

Il partira dans une semaine, *he will go in a week.*

Il finira son travail en trois jours, *it will take him three days to finish his work.*

Dès, à partir de, and depuis.

Dès, *from, since, no later than*, and **à partir de**, *from — on*, are used only of time; **depuis** is used of either time or space.

Dès le 1er janvier, depuis avant-hier, à partir de ce jour; dès demain, *no later than to-morrow*, **à partir de demain**, *from to-morrow on*; **depuis Paris jusqu'au Havre**, *from Paris to Havre*; **depuis le premier jusqu' au dernier**, *from the first to the last.*

Vers and envers.

Vers expresses direction or time; **envers**, feeling or behavior.

Il est allé vers la ville, *he went towards the city*; **vers trois heures**, *about three o'clock*; **cruel envers les pauvres**, *harsh to the poor.*

Observe also:

à vrai dire, *to tell the truth.*
pour ainsi dire, *so to speak.*
pour affaires, *on business.*
dans l'île, *on the island.*
dans l'escalier, *on the stairs.*
boire dans, *to drink from.*
regarder par, *to look through.*
par le temps qu'il fait, *in this weather.*
entre les mains de, *in the hands of.*
chez les Français, *among the French.*
en même temps, *at the same time.*
jusqu'ici, *hitherto.*

Form from the principal parts all the tenses of the following irregular verbs:

Fuir, *to flee*, **fuyant, fui, je fuis, je fuis.**
Vêtir, *to clothe*, **vêtant, vêtu, je vets, je vêtis.**
Valoir, *to be worth*, **valant, valu, je vaux, je valus.**

PRESENT INDICATIVE. FUTURE, **je vaudrai.**
je vaux. **nous valons.** PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE, **que je vaille.**
tu vaux. **vous valez.**
il vaut. ils valent.

Boire, *to drink*, **buvant, bu, je bois, je bus.**
PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE, **que je boive.**

Suffire, *to be enough*, **suffisant, suffi, je suffis, je suffis.**
Vaincre, *to conquer*, **vainquant, vaincu, je vaincs, je vainquis.**
In the verb **vaincre**, **c** is changed to **qu** before every vowel except **u**.
Also **convaincre**, *to convince*.

1. We shall start for the country to-morrow morning at 7.45. 2. We intend to come back to the city about nine in the evening. 3. If you will not be here before that time, I think I will dine in town. 4. Do you wish me to wait for you at the station? 5. I have done all I could to convince him. 6. Now it is possible to go to Chicago in eighteen hours. 7. Mr. N. will start for England in a fortnight; he has to go there on business. 8. I have explained all that to you once; that is sufficient. 9. Look out of the window, please, and tell me what you see. 10. I can see nothing at all in this weather, that is to say, nothing very interesting. 11. Nothing but rain, I suppose. 12. To tell the truth, it has done nothing but rain during the last two or three weeks. 13. You mean two or three days, do you not? 14. Does it seem to you as if I exaggerate? 15. Yes, many times. 16. We had our breakfast upstairs this morning. 17. What [difference] does that make to me? 18. It makes no difference (nothing). 19. We must be

polite towards everybody. 20. Try, and you will conquer all these difficulties. 21. Do you know Mrs. M.? 22. I have just had the pleasure of making her acquaintance. 23. You must have known her by sight for a long time. 24. How well she sings, does n't she? 25. How much patience one must have with pupils that do not work! 26. Almost everybody drinks wine while travelling in France. 27. Do you drink coffee from a glass, or from a cup? 28. That 's enough to make you laugh, is n't it? 29. [He] laughs (fut.) best (well) who laughs (fut.) last. 30. Better (is worth) late than never. 31. How is it (*comment cela se fait-il*) that you know nothing of what has happened? 32. When you write to him, give (make) him my regards (friendships).

REVIEW EXERCISES

I

1. 1. Fresh water; the dry land; old newspapers; her blue ribbons; what beautiful sweet flowers! 2. You will need courage. 3. I have a headache this evening; I can neither sing nor play. 4. We have no jewels, but our friends have some. 5. What friends? 6. Those who live in that fine new house. 7. Whose is it? 8. It is theirs; their father gave it to them. 9. Tell me whom you have seen to-day. 10. What! you have seen her? 11. I have never read those books, but I have read these, and I like them better than any others I know. 12. I found a great many there. 13. Let us not speak of it to her or to them. 14. My father and mother left England on the 1st of May, 1891. 15. Columbus (*Colomb*) was an Italian. 16. He served the King of Spain faithfully. 17. Naturally, we think that he carried off a great victory by discovering the new world. 18. Cardinal Mendoza was a faithful friend of Columbus, and often invited him to his house. 19. I should like you to go for a walk with me at twenty minutes to three. 20. He loves nobody, and nobody loves him.

2. 1. Nobody is ever forgotten. 2. We must not believe all that is said. 3. Do you doubt my having succeeded? 4. I do not doubt your succeeding some (one) day. 5. We do not wish to tell him all our business, although he is our uncle. 6. Why don't you wish him to know what has happened? 7. We fear he will refuse to let us do what we desire. 8. I hope you will not try

to deceive him. 9. We want more money. 10. You will be obliged to write all this before you go. 11. If you wish to go soon, you must work as fast as possible. 12. You must be very hungry after so long a walk. 13. Wait till we come back. 14. How many favors (services) he has done (rendered) me! 15. You make (render) him very happy by saying that. 16. I see what you are doing; stop it at once. 17. How pleasant that remembrance must be to you! 18. Run and tell him we have arrived. 19. When you go to get your hat, kindly bring me mine. 20. Can't you get along without it?

3. 1. If you would like to know those gentlemen, I should be glad to present you to them. 2. You ought to introduce me to her; it was a friend of mine that introduced her to you, was it not? 3. Do you wish to go with me or do you wish me to leave alone? 4. Why does that boy beat his dog so? 5. He beats it to make it obey him. 6. What do you think of that? 7. What have you to tell us? 8. Walk as far as the house or until you meet him. 9. This gentleman must be a professor of modern languages. 10. Yes, he is my brother's professor of French. 11. They have gone to France, to Paris. 12. Have you a postage stamp (*timbre-poste*, m.) for me? 13. We understand nearly every word he says. 14. Do you know those ladies? 15. We know their names. 16. What makes your friends laugh? 17. This tea is almost cold; bring me another cup of it. 18. However interesting our books may be, they do not make us forget our absent friends. 19. I should like to spend a few days in Scotland next summer. 20. We visited that magnificent church on the very day of our arrival (*arrivée*, f.).

4. 1. Some men are esteemed by everybody, even by their enemies. 2. Did you tell them that I should be here on Monday? 3. What do you do on Sunday? 4. We shall always be ready to go to church at a quarter past ten. 5. What makes you wait so long? 6. Let us start right away. 7. Napoleon III. was born April 20, 1808. 8. He became emperor in 1852. 9. How good that flower smells! 10. Speak louder, please. 11. Why don't you study more? 12. We used to have five horses; we have sold two and now we have only three. 13. When you began to study music, how many lessons did you have a week? 14. When shall we have the pleasure of seeing you again? 15. As soon as our friends have gone. 16. What are they playing now at the Théâtre-Français? 17. When we reach Paris, we shall look for a house near the Champs-Elysées. 18. How sick you look! 19. Go to bed early this evening. 20. I want you to get up before six.

5. 1. I have lost my new silk umbrella. Why, no, there it is! 2. Would you dare to use any of his books, if you needed them? 3. When you are ready to go to Europe next year, remember me. 4. I have a great many addresses to give you. 5. This man bores (*ennuyer*) everybody with his stories. 6. What a tiresome man! 7. Our neighbors are always in style. 8. Why do you never shut the door? 9. When we lived in New York, we met him very often. 10. As soon as we reach Liverpool, we must send letters to our friends in America. 11. Always reflect before acting. 12. Next time I shall not accept your excuses. 13. I would do it if I could. 14. Could n't you do it if you would? 15. You ought not to have asked that. 16. You have not answered his letter yet. 17. I shall answer it to-morrow. 18. Serve

us at once; we are in a hurry. 19. We do not live to eat; we eat to live. 20. Follow us; do not follow them.

6. 1. Those gentlemen wear gloves in summer as well as in winter. 2. You must keep on writing until you can show me a page written well enough to satisfy (*satisfaire*) me. 3. I make a great many mistakes, it is true, but I write better than you think. 4. That makes me smile (*sourire*). 5. Be silent! 6. Does he know how to play chess (*échecs*)? 7. That is a game he has never learned. 8. I have heard that it is the most difficult of all games. 9 They had just left when their friends arrived. 10. What do your friends do during the holidays (*vacances*)? 11. Do you need anything? 12. What? 13. I am looking for a few souvenirs that will please my friends. 14. Although we were very tired, we could not sleep last night. 15. It was too cold perhaps. 16. We were not cold. 17. Louis XIV. was seventy-seven years old when he died. 18. One day I gave some money to a blind [man], but he gave it back to me, saying, "I do not take Canadian pieces." 19. He was n't blind; he was deaf and dumb (*sourd-muet*). 20. It is easy to learn these rules, but it is still easier to forget them.

7. 1. Do you think that French is easy to learn? 2. His health is very good now; it is far better than it was formerly. 3. I am very glad of it. 4. Everybody is mistaken sometimes. 5. Our servant has gone to (the) market (*marché*, m.). 6. Where are the letters I told you to write? 7. I finished them long ago. 8. Whom do you see coming? 9. I can't see any one now. 10. Our examinations (*examen*, m.) are always very hard. 11. That is the most beautiful song I have ever

heard sung. 12. He has promised to spend two or three weeks at our house, provided his father consents to it. 13. If I were sure that he would consent, I should invite a few other friends to come at the same time. 14. Is there nobody that can tell me what I ought to do? 15. When we were in Europe last year, we received a great many letters from our friends, which (*ce qui*) made us very happy. 16. I do not know whether we shall receive so many, now that we have come home again. 17. You talk too loud; do you think I am deaf? 18. I do not think you are. 19. Don't you know that I am not? 20. I do.

8. 1. Tell us something new. I don't know anything new to tell you. 2. If we had a few francs (of) more, we should have money enough to buy that little gold watch. 3. It costs ten francs too much. 4. How long is that chain? 5. It is twenty inches long. 6. Can't you remember anything? 7. If you are neither hungry nor thirsty, do not wait for us any longer. 8. Are n't you afraid you will be hungry before one o'clock? 9. I am not. 10. We wish we had something good to eat. 11. It is possible we may find something at the station. 12. We almost missed the train. 13. It was your fault. 14. I don't care. 15. You ought to be ashamed of your conduct. 16. Do not scold me; this is (*c'est aujourd'hui*) my birthday. 17. This little girl has learned to write well. 18. How old is she? 19. She is only seven. 20. Who wrote to tell you of our friend's death?

9. 1. Walk in front of me, I beg of you. 2. It is your place to go first. 3. What (*quoi de*) more fortunate than what happens to you? 4. "What a lot of books!" he said to me. 5. What do you find in these

woods? 6. Nothing but tall trees. 7. I often used to go to the little old white church when I was in the country. 8. Let us speak to him about it when he comes. 9. France is a beautiful country; its inhabitants speak French. 10. Brittany (*la Bretagne*) is perhaps the most interesting part of the whole country. 11. Tell us, please, what that signifies. 12. Which of those two churches do you admire the more? 13. Whoever (it may be that) did that, he will never come back. 14. The books of which he spoke to you are in the dining-room. 15. Where is the little boy to whose father you gave a franc? 16. I don't know anything about it. 17. We know what you are thinking of. 18. Which of those knives are the heaviest? 19. You will see him as you go from here. 20. I know I shall, unless I start too late.

10. 1. What is your name? 2. My name is Arthur; what is yours? 3. However great kings may be, they are what we are. 4. Whose is this cane? 5. It's not mine, for I have mine. 6. It must be one of his. 7. It is possible that it belongs to that gentleman with whose son you were just speaking. 8. Don't keep it; give it back to him. 9. What is the matter with him? 10. Nothing, so far as I know. 11. He was not afraid it would rain; he was afraid that he would find there a certain person he did not wish to see. 12. They have nothing to live on. 13. That is probably because they have spent more money than they have earned. 14. What is that to you? 15. It's all the same to me. 16. It would be better for him to do it. 17. Have you ever seen anything like [it]? 18. No, I never have. 19. He did his best to please us. 20. It does not matter.

11. 1. Everybody has left. 2. Finish writing your letter at once. 3. Have you counted these sentences? 4. How many are there? 5. The sun is shining for every one. 6. In summer the days are longer than in winter. 7. The museum of the Louvre in Paris is the largest and most beautiful one in Europe. 8. Don't you hear the noise in the street? 9. Have n't you heard what it is? 10. I have never even heard of it. 11. He never hears (has news) from his niece, unless he writes to her. 12. If you had put that book on my desk, it would be there still. 13. This is more than I need. 14. My life is at stake. 15. Shall we walk or ride this morning? 16. As you please (fut. of *vouloir*). 17. The English travel a great deal on the Continent, although they do not like to cross the Channel. 18. If you had ever crossed it yourself, you would not blame them. 19. I have done so more times than you think. 20. You are not to repeat to any one what you have been told. 21. They must be sorry to know of your illness. 22. Come and pay (make) us a visit soon. 23. Before he went away, he told me he would be back in a week. 24. Do not speak to us now; we are reading something very interesting. 25. Do not read so loud; there is some one sick in the next room. 26. We have not seen each other for ten or twelve years. 27. Many things have happened since you saw her. 28. Name the most interesting French books you have ever read. 29. Only rich people put up at that hotel. 30. These sentences are much easier to write than you pretend.

II.

Sentences selected from college entrance examinations.

1. 1. Come and see me Monday, the twenty-second of June. 2. He will give you some books if you obey him. 3. She came to me saying, "Give me some red roses." 4. We often think of you and your sick friend. 5. Who is it? What is it? Tell me of what you are thinking. Whom do you see? What does he say? 6. What is electricity (*électricité*)? I don't know what it is. 7. In which house does he live, the wooden one or the marble one? 8. Here are his two new books; which do you prefer? 9. I saw him go out two hours ago. It is now five o'clock. 10. Don't let him see them. 11. Make him read it. He has written it himself. 12. What you say is true, I have heard it said. 13. Sit down if you please, he will come soon. 14. Give them some. Give it to them. Don't give any to him or to her. Present me to them. 15. He introduced himself to us. 16. What fine apples! Give me six. 17. Two thousand seven hundred and ninety-one men were killed in that battle. 18. He was hungry and stole a dollar from that old lady. 19. How well he sings! How beautiful it is! 20. Have the windows closed, it is cold to-day.

2. 1. I wish he would come. I must see him at once. 2. I am afraid they will come without hats. 3. He has hurt himself. They say he broke his arm. 4. The prettiest child in town has yellow hair and blue eyes. 5. Whose is that ancient book? Is it yours or your brother's? 6. Please give this pen and paper to your

friend, and tell him to keep them till to-morrow. 7. Has any one come? No one has come. 8. Have you any letters for me? I have two, and there is also a package for you. 9. It will be mine before to-morrow. 10. You must not do it. 11. I do not think he did it. 12. He has hurt his foot. 13. Let us eat, drink, and be merry. 14. The man whose house you will see. 15. His wife was at the same time his friend. 16. George Washington was born on the twenty-second of February, seventeen hundred and thirty-two. 17. I have more money than he has, because he has none at all. 18. Although he did it, he will not do it again. 19. When can I see you? 20. I shall be at home to-morrow evening at seven o'clock; bring your friends, and I will take you all to the theatre.

3. 1. Have you written the letter which I dictated to you this morning? 2. I have written it and I have sent it to the person to whom it was addressed. 3. Was there an answer to it? No, there was not. 4. Have they been waiting for us long? 5. I believe they have been waiting since ten minutes to three. 6. Where are they now? 7. They are all in the dining-room. 8. Well, let them come in, I am ready to see them. 9. Do you know what they want? 10. They want to speak to you about their work. 11. What is the matter with you? 12. What are you about? 13. If he would but do it! 14. Mind your own business. 15. The story goes that he did it. 16. I happened to be near him at the time. 17. You had better not do that again. 18. How long is it since you have heard from him? 19. It is all up with me. 20. Stand still.

4. 1. What is that to him? 2. It is in vain for you to do it. 3. I shall not be able to go with you unless

you return with me. 4. They would like to take the king prisoner. 5. You read much, but you say nothing. 6. I shall soon know French. 7. If he or she had given them the letter yesterday, I should already have received it. 8. It is true. 9. What is true? 10. It is true that the king is dead. 11. You must go away from here. 12. There are six or seven men in that room, but I do not see any boy there. 13. If she were to speak quickly (*rapidement*), I should not answer her. 14. Do not come with me, but go away. 15. Tell me what I ask you. 16. Ask your father for it. 17. Ask them who is with them. 18. I shall not be able to give it to him. 19. I give it to you. 20. What have you given him?

5. 1. I shall go to France. 2. You must know your lesson. 3. I shall know it (*i. e.* the lesson). 4. I want you to do it. 5. I ought to give him some. 6. I was here when he came. 7. Must you go so soon? 8. I should take him there if he would go. 9. It is better that you should give it to her. 10. What have I done to make you detest me? 11. Whenever I see her I am happy. 12. If I saw them I should be happy. 13. I do not think he will do it. 14. They did not want him to have it done. 15. Let us eat all we can. 16. I have already called him and I am calling him now. 17. I work as much as he does. 18. What is more rare (*exquis*) than a day in June! 19. He says that this book is a better one than that book, and yet I like that one better. 20. Should we have had to do it?

6. 1. I cannot tell you how glad I should be to see him. 2. It was not worth doing. 3. I should have wanted him to come. 4. He would have to go. 5. Al-

though I am young, I am brave. 6. Do what you can, and never mind what people say. 7. I want you to come with me to my father's house. 8. It would be better for him not to do it. 9. Tell him that he may come with us, if his father is willing. 10. Should you not have done it before? 11. I have not many more sentences (*phrase*) to write. 12. I am afraid you are tired. 13. Which season do you like best? 14. Give me some apples. I have no apples. 15. Have you my pens? No, I have not seen them. 16. Did your sister go with you? No, she remained with my mother. 17. The weather is very fine for the season, is it not? 18. Did you look at the ice on the lake in passing? Yes, the ice is good, and we can soon skate. 19. Do you like to skate? Yes, but I cannot go skating this evening. 20. I must stay at home.

7. 1. You can amuse yourself reading. 2. I have left all my books at school. 3. If I had them, I should prepare my lessons for to-morrow. 4. If I do not prepare them, the master will not be pleased. 5. If you wish to study, I will lend you my books. 6. If you were to lend them to me I should be very glad; I should study the whole evening. 7. I do not wish to lose my time. 8. Where is the pen I gave you yesterday? 9. I do not know what I did with it. 10. He died in eighteen hundred and seventy-nine, while his parents were living in Europe. 11. I see what you are doing. 12. What am I doing? 13. Go to her and speak to her. 14. Do not speak to her. 15. Do not speak to him or to her. 16. I beg you not to do it. 17. I must see what will result from it. 18. You and he are always good friends. 19. Time is money. 20. He is the only man who can do it.

8. 1. While I was eating, he came in. 2. As soon as I had finished drinking, I went out of the house. 3. When will this cruel war be over? 4. He does not distinguish what is mine from what is his and what is hers. 5. He is my old friend. 6. I have told you of the one I have always called and still call my brother. 7. He had to do it. 8. Have you any good friends? 9. Do you prefer this book or that one? 10. Let us go away. 11. I told him never to give me any. 12. If he does it I shall be happy, but not if she does it. 13. I have been looking for you for three days. 14. Ask her for it now or never speak of it to her. 15. Neither gold nor silver can make us happy. 16. You understand what I mean. 17. I am the only one older than he. 18. You have got to do it. 19. As I was calling him, he came out of the house. 20. As soon as I had called him, he came out of the house.

9. 1. I do not think that he will be able to do it. 2. You and I will walk together. 3. I made the acquaintance this morning of a man who asked me if I believed in the central fire. 4. Columbus conceived that by going towards the west he could reach the East Indies. 5. He believed the earth to be round, which was then a new idea. 6. He thought, however, that it was much smaller than it really is. 7. Whatever the sun may be, it is not inhabited. 8. I fear you may not be welcome here. 9. Things are going from bad to worse. 10. I think very highly of him. 11. What is he up to now? 12. However skilful he may be, he will not succeed. 13. There is no day which does not give proof of it. 14. What do I care? 15. I fell in with a man who made me fall into the water, and so we fell out. 16. There is no cause for laughter. 17. So

much the better for you. 18. Say what you think. 19. I came, I saw, I conquered. 20. He has never done anything worth while.

10. 1. You see what it is to be a stranger. 2. No traveler, so far as I know, has mentioned it. 3. Hardly had he spoken when the carriage stopped. 4. Up to that time, few people had left the city. 5. We are to read that book together, are we not? 6. Have you ever read it before? 7. I read it about a year ago, when I was at my uncle's; but I have forgotten the subject. 8. I do not know anybody who is willing to do it. 9. He who has overcome his passions has won (*remporter*) a great victory. 10. Every one for himself. 11. I do not know what you are thinking of. 12. Wait until he has come. 13. He writes better than he speaks. 14. What is the use of that? 15. Speak of anything whatsoever. 16. I am surprised that he did not bow to (*saluer*) that gentleman. 17. I asked them if she would come to-day, but they would not answer. 18. Seventy and twenty-three make ninety-three (*write out the numbers in full*). 19. I am working only to help you. 20. I thank you most heartily for all your kindness.

(*a*) I came to Cambridge a week ago and met your brother. He took me to his room in college and then asked me to accompany him to his home, where we should find the rest of the family. You were not there, but I had the pleasure of seeing your father, mother, and two sisters. After talking for some time, your brother and sisters and I went for a walk, during which they showed me many interesting things.

(*b*) The fatal day arrived at last. Inglesant had passed a sleepless night; he had not the slightest fear of death, but excitement (*émotion*) made sleep impossible.

He thought often of his brother, but he had learned that he was in Paris alone; and even had he been in England (*Angleterre*) he felt no especial desire to see him. Mary Collet he thought of night and day, but he knew it was impossible to obtain permission to see her, and he was tired of fruitless requests. He was weary of life and wished the excitement over, that he might be at rest. It struck him that the greatest harshness (*dureté*) was used towards him: his food (*nourriture*) was poor and no one was admitted to him. But he did not wonder at this.

SELECTIONS FOR READING.

1. Un Drôle de Prisonnier.

"A moi,[1] à moi! mon capitaine, criait un soldat, à moi! je tiens un prisonnier. — Eh bien, lui dit le capitaine, amène-le. — Je ne demande pas mieux;[2] mais il ne veut pas me laisser aller."

2. Comment on devient Maréchal de France.

Le maréchal Lefebvre[3] avait un camarade de régiment qui vint le voir un jour et qui admirait, non sans un sentiment d'envie, son bel hôtel, ses belles voitures, sa nombreuse livrée,[4] ses magnifiques appartements, tout le train enfin d'un grand dignitaire de l'empire: "Parbleu, lui dit-il, il faut avouer que tu es bien heureux, et que le ciel t'a bien traité! — Veux-tu, lui répondit le maréchal, avoir tout cela? — Oui, certainement. — La chose est très simple: tu vas descendre dans la cour de mon hôtel; je mettrai à chaque fenêtre deux soldats qui tireront sur toi. Si tu échappes aux balles, je te donnerai tout ce que tu m'envies. C'est comme cela que je l'ai obtenu."

3. L'Opération Inutile.

Un officier anglais ayant reçu une balle dans la jambe, fut transporté chez lui, où deux médecins furent appelés.

[1] *Help!*
[2] *I ask nothing better*, or, *I wish I could*
[3] Pronounced *Lefèvre.*
[4] *His great number of servants.*

Pendant huit jours ils ne firent que[1] sonder et fouiller la plaie. L'officier, qui souffrait beaucoup, leur demanda ce qu'ils cherchaient: "Nous cherchons la balle qui vous a blessé. — C'est trop fort! [2] s'écria le patient, pourquoi ne le disiez-vous pas plus tôt? je l'ai dans ma poche."

4. A Quoi Sert[3] La Vaccine?

Un homme très crédule disait qu'il n'avait pas de confiance dans la vaccine. "A quoi sert-elle, ajoute-t-il; je connais un enfant beau comme le jour, que sa famille avait fait vacciner... eh bien! il est mort deux jours après... — Comment! deux jours après? ... — Oui... il est tombé du haut d'un arbre, et s'est tué raide... Faites donc vacciner vos enfants après cela!"

5. Scène d'Omnibus.

La scène se passe[4] dans un omnibus, à Paris. Deux vieilles dames sont assises l'une à côté de l'autre. L'une veut que la portière soit fermée, l'autre la veut ouverte. On appelle le conducteur pour décider la question. "Monsieur, dit la première, si cette fenêtre reste ouverte, je suis sûre d'attraper un rhume qui m'emportera. — Monsieur, si on la ferme, je suis certaine de mourir d'un coup d'apoplexie." Le conducteur ne savait que faire,[5] lorsqu'un vieux monsieur, qui jusque là s'était tenu tranquille dans un coin de la voiture, le tira d'embarras. "Ouvrez donc la portière, mon cher ami, cela fera mourir l'une; puis vous la fermerez, cela nous débarrassera de l'autre, et nous aurons la paix."

[1] *They did nothing but.*
[2] *That is too much!*
[3] *Of what use is.*
[4] *Takes place.*
[5] *Did not know what to do.*

6. Le Docteur Abernethy.

Le docteur Abernethy était bien connu par son laconisme. Il détestait les longues consultations et les détails inutiles. Une dame, connaissant cette particularité, se présente chez lui pour le consulter sur une grave blessure qu'un chien lui avait faite au bras. Elle entre sans rien dire, découvre la partie blessée, et la place sous les yeux du docteur. M. Abernethy regarde un instant, puis il dit : " Egratignure ? — Morsure. — Chat ? — Chien. — Aujourd'hui ? — Hier. — Douloureux ? — Non."

Le docteur fut si enthousiasmé de cette conversation, qu'il aurait presque embrassé la dame.

Il n'aimait pas non plus qu'on vînt le déranger la nuit. Une fois, qu'il se couchait à une heure du matin de fort mauvaise humeur, parce qu'on était venu le faire lever[1] à minuit, il entendit la sonnette retentir. " Qu'y a-t-il ? s'écria-t-il avec colère. — Docteur... vite ! vite !... Mon fils vient d'avaler une souris. — Eh bien, dites-lui d'avaler un chat et laissez-moi tranquille ! " fit[2] le docteur, en se recouchant.

7. Swift et le Domestique

Un jour un ami de Swift lui envoya un magnifique turbot. Le groom chargé de la commission s'était déjà maintes fois acquitté de pareils messages sans avoir jamais rien reçu de Swift. Fatigué d'une besogne aussi peu lucrative, il déposa brusquement le poisson sur une table en s'écriant : " Voici un turbot que vous envoie mon maître. — Plaît-il ?[3] repartit aussitôt Swift. Est-ce ainsi

[1] *Some one had come to call him up.*
[2] *Said.*
[3] *What do you say?*

que tu remplis tes fonctions? Tiens, prends ce siège; nous allons changer de rôle, et tâche, une autre fois, de mettre à profit ce que je vais t'enseigner." Swift alors s'avance respectueusement vers le domestique, qui s'était assis dans un large fauteuil, et lui dit, en lui présentant le turbot: "Monsieur, je suis chargé par mon maître de vous prier de bien vouloir accepter ce petit cadeau. — Vraiment? reprit effrontément le valet, c'est très aimable à lui; et tiens, mon brave garçon, voici trois francs pour ta peine."

Swift s'empressa de congédier le groom.

8. Le Cheval Trop Court.

Lalande, musicien de la chapelle de Versailles, était connu comme un homme jovial et qui aimait beaucoup le plaisir. Jeune, il lui prit envie, pendant la semaine sainte, d'aller figurer à Longchamps.[1] Il va trouver Mousset, loueur de chevaux, retient un cheval richement caparaçonné, et donne neuf francs à compte sur dix-huit,[2] le prix convenu. Sorti de l'écurie, il rencontre un ami qui lui parle d'une partie de Longchamps, dans sa voiture avec deux amis. "Si seulement, dit Lalande, je pouvais retirer les neuf francs que je viens de donner! En tout cas, allons chez Mousset, et nous verrons... M. Mousset, montrez-moi encore une fois le cheval que je vous ai loué. — Monsieur, le voici. — Savez-vous, monsieur Mousset, que ce cheval-là est bien court? — Comment, Monsieur, bien court? — Mais certainement..." Puis s'adressant à son ami: "Voilà bien ma place, voilà la tienne, voilà celle de Daigremont... Mais où donc se

[1] *To go and cut a figure at Longchamps*, a race-course outside of Paris.
[2] *Nine francs on account, out of eighteen.*

placera Mondonville, et cependant il vient avec nous ? — Comment, Monsieur, vous montez à quatre ?[1] — Mais oui. — Tenez, voilà votre argent ; allez chercher un cheval ailleurs ; je ne loue pas le mien pour qu'on l'éreinte."

9. Junot et Bonaparte.

Un jour, pendant le siège de Toulon, un commandant d'artillerie, venu de Paris depuis peu de jours pour diriger les opérations du siège, demanda au lieutenant du poste un jeune sous-officier qui eût en même temps de l'audace et de l'intelligence. Le lieutenant appelle aussitôt *La Tempête*,[2] et Junot se présente. Le commandant fixe sur lui cet œil qui semblait déjà connaître les hommes. "Tu vas quitter ton habit,[3] dit le commandant, et tu iras là, porter ces ordres." Il lui indiquait de la main un point plus éloigné de la côte, et lui expliqua ce qu'il voulait de lui. Le jeune sergent devint rouge comme une grenade, ses yeux étincelèrent. "Je ne suis pas un espion, répondit-il au commandant ; cherchez un autre que moi pour exécuter ces ordres." Et il se retirait. "Tu refuses d'obéir ? lui dit l'officier supérieur d'un ton sévère ; sais-tu bien à quoi tu t'exposes ? — Je suis prêt à obéir, dit Junot, mais j'irai là où vous m'envoyez avec mon uniforme, ou je n'irai pas." Le commandant sourit, en le regardant attentivement. "Mais ils te tueront ! reprit-il. — Que vous importe ?[4] Vous ne me connaissez pas assez pour que cela vous fasse de la peine, et quant à moi, ça m'est égal... Allons, je pars comme je suis, n'est-ce pas ?" Alors il mit la main dans

[1] *You mean to ride four together?*
[2] *The Tempest*, a nickname given to Junot.
[3] *You are to change your clothes.*
[4] *What is that to you?*

sa giberne. "Bien ! avec mon fusil et ces dragées-là,[1] du moins la conversation ne languira pas, si ces messieurs veulent causer."

Et il partit en chantant. Après son départ: "Comment s'appelle ce jeune homme? demanda l'officier supérieur. — Junot. — Il fera son chemin." Alors le commandant inscrivit son nom sur ses tablettes. On a facilement deviné que l'officier d'artillerie était Napoléon.

Peu de jours après, se retrouvant à cette même batterie, Bonaparte demanda quelqu'un qui eût une belle écriture; Junot sortit des rangs et se présenta. Bonaparte le reconnut pour le sergent qui avait déjà fixé son attention. Il lui témoigna de l'intérêt, et lui dit de se placer pour écrire sa lettre sous sa dictée. Junot se mit sur l'épaulement même de la batterie.[2] A peine avait-il terminé sa lettre, qu'une bombe lancée par les Anglais éclate à dix pas, et le couvre de terre ainsi que la lettre. "Bien, dit en riant Junot, nous n'avions pas de sable pour sécher l'encre." Bonaparte arrêta son regard sur le jeune sergent; il était calme et n'avait pas même tressailli. Cette circonstance décida de sa fortune.

10. La Plus Grande Ganache de l'Empire.

Un jour Napoléon, fort mécontent à la lecture d'une dépêche de Vienne, dit à Marie-Louise, "Votre père est une *ganache*." Marie-Louise, qui ignorait beaucoup de termes français, s'adressa au premier chambellan: "L'empereur dit que mon père est une *ganache*, que veut dire cela?"[3] A cette demande inattendue, le courtisan balbutia que cela voulait dire un homme sage, de poids,

[1] *These sugar-plums;* that is, the cartridges.
[2] *The very crest of the fort.*
[3] *What does that mean?*

de bon conseil. A quelques jours de là,[1] et la mémoire encore toute fraîche de sa nouvelle acquisition, Marie-Louise présidait le conseil de famille. Voyant la discussion plus animée qu'elle ne voulait, elle interpella, pour y mettre fin, M. R..., qui, à ses côtés,[2] bayait aux corneilles.[3] "C'est à vous à nous mettre d'accord dans cette occasion importante, lui dit-elle; vous serez notre oracle, car je vous tiens pour la plus grande *ganache* de l'empire."

11. Joseph II et le Sergent.

L'empereur Joseph II n'aimait ni la représentation ni l'appareil. Un jour, revêtu d'une simple redingote boutonnée,[4] accompagné d'un seul domestique à cheval[5] et sans livrée, il était allé, dans une calèche à deux places qu'il conduisait lui-même, faire une promenade du matin dans les environs de Vienne. Comme il reprenait le chemin de la ville, il fut surpris par la pluie.

Il en était encore éloigné, lorsqu'un piéton, qui regagnait aussi la capitale, fait signe au conducteur d'arrêter, ce que Joseph II fait aussitôt. "Monsieur, lui dit le militaire (car c'était un sergent), y aurait-il de l'indiscrétion à vous demander une place à côté de vous? cela ne vous gênerait pas prodigieusement, puisque vous êtes seul dans votre calèche, et ménagerait mon uniforme que je mets aujourd'hui pour la première fois. — Ménageons, votre uniforme, mon brave, lui dit Joseph, et mettez-vous là. D'où venez-vous? — Ah! dit le sergent, je viens de

[1] *A few days afterwards.*
[2] *At her side.*
[3] *Was gaping at the crows*, that is, was staring into the air.
[4] *Dressed in a plain frock coat, buttoned up close.*
[5] *On horseback.*

chez un garde-chasse de mes amis,[1] où j'ai fait un fier déjeuner. — Qu'avez-vous donc mangé de si bon? — Devinez. — Que sais-je,[2] moi; une soupe à la bière? — Ah! bien, oui, une soupe; mieux que ça. — De la choucroute? — Mieux que ça. — Une longe de veau? [3] — Mieux que ça, vous dit-on. — Oh! ma foi, je ne puis plus deviner, dit Joseph. — Un faisan, mon digne homme, un faisan tiré sur les plaisirs [4] de Sa Majesté, dit le camarade en lui frappant sur le genou. — Tiré sur les plaisirs de Sa Majesté, il n'en devait être que meilleur.[5] — Je vous en réponds."

Comme on approchait de la ville, et que la pluie tombait toujours, Joseph demanda à son compagnon dans quel quartier il logeait, et où il voulait qu'on le descendît. "Monsieur, c'est trop de bonté, je craindrais d'abuser de... — Non, non, dit Joseph, votre rue?" — Le sergent, indiquant sa demeure, demanda à connaître celui dont il recevait tant d'hounêtetés. "A votre tour, dit Joseph, devinez. — Monsieur est militaire, sans doute? — Comme dit monsieur. — Lieutenant? — Ah! bien, oui, lieutenant; mieux que ça. — Capitaine? — Mieux que ça. — Colonel, peut-être? — Mieux que ça, vous dit-on. — Comment! s'écrie le sergent, en se rencognant aussitôt dans la calèche, seriez-vous feld-maréchal? — Mieux que ça. — Ah! mon Dieu, c'est l'empereur! — Lui-même, dit Joseph, se déboutonnant pour montrer ses décorations." Il n'y avait pas moyen de tomber à genoux dans la voiture; l'invalide [6] se confond en excuses et supplie l'empereur d'arrêter pour qu'il puisse descendre. "Non pas, lui dit Joseph; après avoir mangé mon faisan, vous seriez trop

1 *A game-keeper, a friend of mine.* 2 *How do I know?*
3 *A loin of veal.* 4 *The pleasure grounds, the preserves.*
5 *There ought to be nothing better.*
6 *The veteran.*

heureux de vous débarrasser de moi aussi promptement; j'entends bien que vous ne me quittiez qu'à votre porte." Et il l'y descendit.

FOUR FABLES BY LA FONTAINE

La Cigale et la Fourmi.

La cigale ayant chanté
Tout l'été,
Se trouva fort dépourvue[1]
Quand la bise fut venue[2]:
Pas un seul petit morceau
De mouche ou de vermisseau.
Elle alla crier famine
Chez la fourmi sa voisine,
La priant de lui prêter
Quelque grain pour subsister
Jusqu'à la saison nouvelle.
"Je vous paierai, lui dit-elle,
Avant l'oût,[3] foi d'animal,
Intérêt et principal."
La fourmi n'est pas prêteuse:
C'est là son moindre défaut.[4]
"Que faisiez-vous au temps chaud?
Dit-elle à cette emprunteuse.
— Nuit et jour à tout venant[5]
Je chantais, ne vous déplaise.[6]
— Vous chantiez? j'en suis fort aise.
Eh bien! dansez maintenant."

[1] *Found herself greatly in need.*
[2] *When the north wind* (i. e. *winter*) *had come.*
[3] *Oût* for *août.*
[4] *The least of her faults.*
[5] *To every one that came.*
[6] *May it not displease you.*

Le Corbeau et le Renard.

Maître[1] corbeau, sur un arbre perché,
Tenait en son bec un fromage.
Maître renard, par l'odeur alléché,[2]
Lui tint à peu près ce langage :[3]
"Hé! bonjour, monsieur du[4] corbeau!
Que vous êtes joli! que vous me semblez beau!
Sans mentir, si votre ramage[5]
Se rapporte à votre plumage,[6]
Vous êtes le phénix[7] des hôtes de ces bois."
A ces mots le corbeau ne se sent pas de joie;[8]
Et, pour montrer sa belle voix,
Il ouvre un large bec, laisse tomber sa proie.
Le renard s'en saisit, et dit : "Mon bon monsieur,[9]
Apprenez que tout flatteur
Vit aux dépens de celui qui l'écoute :
Cette leçon vaut bien un fromage, sans doute."
Le corbeau, honteux et confus,
Jura, mais un peu tard, qu'on ne l'y prendrait plus.[10]

1 A title given to barristers, solicitors, and attorneys.
2 *Allured, attracted.*
3 *Expressed himself somewhat after this manner.*
4 A title of honor.
5 *Song.*
6 *Corresponds to your plumage.*
7 The fabulous bird that when burnt would rise again from its ashes.
8 *Is beside himself with joy.*
9 *Fellow.*
10 *That no one would ever catch him that way again.*

La Grenouille qui veut se faire aussi Grosse que le Bœuf.

Une grenouille vit un bœuf
Qui lui sembla de belle taille.[1]
Elle, qui n'était pas grosse en tout comme un œuf,
Envieuse, s'étend, et s'enfle, et se travaille[2]
Pour égaler l'animal en grosseur;
Disant: "Regardez bien, ma sœur;
Est-ce assez? dites-moi? n'y suis-je point encore?
—Nenni.[3]—M'y voici donc?—Point du tout.—M'y voilà?
—Vous n'en approchez point." La chétive pécore[4]
S'enfla si bien qu'elle creva.
Le monde est plein de gens qui ne sont pas plus sages:
Tout bourgeois veut bâtir comme les grands seigneurs.
Tout petit prince a des ambassadeurs,
Tout marquis veut avoir des pages.

Le Rat de Ville et le Rat des Champs.

Autrefois le rat de ville
Invita le rat des champs,
D'une façon fort civile,
A des reliefs d'ortolans.[5]

Sur un tapis[6] de Turquie
Le couvert se trouva mis.[7]
Je laisse à penser la vie
Que firent ces deux amis.

1 *Fine size.*
2 *Tries as hard as she can.*
3 *Not by any means.*
4 *The poor little creature.*
5 *Scraps of ortolans,* — a bird considered a table delicacy in France.
6 *Turkish carpet.*
7 *The table was set.*

Le régal[1] fut fort honnête,
Rien ne manquait au festin;
Mais quelqu'un troubla la fête
Pendant qu'ils étaient en train.[2]

A la porte de la salle
Ils entendirent du bruit:
Le rat de ville détale;[3]
Son camarade le suit.

Le bruit cesse, on se retire;
Rats en campagne[4] aussitôt;
Et le citadin de dire:[5]
"Achevons tout notre rôt.[6]

— C'est assez, dit le rustique;
Demain vous viendrez chez moi.
Ce n'est pas que je me pique[7]
De tous vos festins de roi:

Mais rien ne vient m'interrompre;
Je mange tout à loisir.
Adieu donc. Fi du plaisir
Que la crainte peut corrompre!"

1 *The feast.*
2 *In the midst of it.*
3 *Scampers away.*
4 *Back at their business.*
5 Historical infinitive: *says.*
6 *Our roast,* called generally *le rôti.*
7 *That I can boast.*

La Marseillaise.

ROUGET DE L'ISLE (1760–1836).

Allons, enfants de la patrie,
Le jour de gloire est arrivé!
Contre nous de la tyrannie
L'étendard sanglant est levé.
Entendez-vous dans les campagnes
Mugir ces féroces soldats?
Ils viennent jusque dans nos bras,
Égorger nos fils, nos compagnes!

Aux armes, citoyens! formez vos bataillons!
Marchons, marchons!
Qu'un sang impur abreuve nos sillons!

APPENDIX OF FORMS AND RULES.

I. THE DEFINITE ARTICLE.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.
	Before a consonant or *h* aspirate.		Before a vowel or *h* mute.	Before all nouns.
	Masculine.	*Feminine.*	*Masc. or Fem.*	
the	**le**	**la**	**l'**	**les**
of the, or *from the*,	**du**	**de la**	**de l'**	**des**
to the, *at the*,	**au**	**à la**	**à l'**	**aux**

THE NOUN.

II. The gender of inanimate objects.

A short and satisfactory rule for the gender of French nouns is as follows:

Nouns having the following terminations are feminine: —

ale, ole, ule ; ure, ère, eur ;
rre, lle, ie, ié ; ée, ue, ion ;
be, ce, de ; fe, ne, pe ;
se, te, té ; ve, he, aison.

As **cathédrale, école, nature, faveur, terre, conversation, clémence, cité, beauté, moitié, marche, maison, liaison.**

All other nouns are masculine.

As **port, cheval, café, crime, village.**

There are, of course, exceptions to this rule, but it holds good in 95 cases out of 100.

Observe that the rule does not apply to nouns evidently denoting males, as **prince, homme**, etc. ; or to nouns evidently denoting females, as **princesse, dame**, etc.

III. Formation of the feminine in nouns representing animate beings.

Nouns representing animate beings usually have a particular form for each sex, and their feminine, like the feminine of adjectives, is more or less regularly formed:

un Français,	*a Frenchman,*	**une Française.**
un Prussien,	*a Prussian,*	**une Prussienne.**
un jardinier,	*a gardener,*	**une jardinière.**
un baron,	*a baron,*	**une baronne.**
un jumeau,	*a twin,*	**une jumelle.**
un époux,	*a husband,*	**une épouse.**
un compagnon,	*a companion,*	**une compagne.**

(1) Those ending with an *e mute* are the same for both genders:

un Russe,	*a Russian,*	**une Russe.**
un esclave,	*a slave,*	**une esclave.**
un artiste,	*an artist,*	**une artiste.**

PRINCIPAL EXCEPTIONS.

un abbé,	*an abbot,*	**une abbesse.**
un âne,	*an ass,*	**une ânesse.**
un comte,	*a count,*	**une comtesse.**
un hôte,	*a host,*	**une hôtesse.**
un maître,	*a master,*	**une maîtresse.**
un nègre,	*a negro,*	**une négresse.**
un prêtre,	*a priest,*	**une prêtresse.**
un Suisse,	*a Swiss,*	**une Suissesse.**
un tigre,	*a tiger,*	**une tigresse.**
un traître,	*a traitor,*	**une traîtresse.**

(2) Substantives ending in **-eur** and derived from a present participle change **-eur** into **-euse**:

le danseur (from **dansant**),	*the dancer,*	**la danseuse.**
le plaideur (from **plaidant**),	*the suitor,*	**la plaideuse.**
le buveur (from **buvant**),	*the drinker,*	**la buveuse.**

(3) Substantives ending in **-teur**, and which are not derived from a present participle, change **-teur** into **-trice**:

l'accusateur,	*the accuser,*	**l'accusatrice.**
l'acteur,	*the actor,*	**l'actrice.**
l'instituteur,	*the teacher,*	**l'institutrice.**

Add to these: **le débiteur,** *debtor;* **l'inspecteur,** *the inspector;* **l'exécuteur,** *the executor;* **l'inventeur,** *the inventor;* **le persécuteur,** *the persecutor.*

(4) Some in **-eur** change it into **-eresse** for the feminine, such as: **l'enchanteur,** *the enchanter,* **l'enchanteresse**; **le pêcheur,** *the sinner,* **la pécheresse**; **le vengeur,** *the avenger,* **la vengeresse**; **le défendeur,** *the defendant,* **la défenderesse**; **le chasseur,** *the hunter,* **la chasseresse.** — **Chanteur** has two feminines, **chanteuse** and **cantatrice**: the latter is used only of professional singers. **Empereur** makes **impératrice**; **gouverneur, gouvernante**; **serviteur, servante**; **compagnon, compagne**; **héros, héroïne**; **dieu, déesse**; **duc, duchesse.** **Témoin** is used for both genders, and also **auteur, poète, philosophe, peintre, juge, guide,** etc., and even **possesseur, successeur,** and **professeur.** **Ange,** *angel,* is always masculine.

(5) Some nouns originally feminine keep that gender, even when applied to man: **la dupe,** *the dupe;* **la sentinelle,** *the sentry;* **la recrue,** *the recruit;* **la victime,** *the victim;* **la personne,** *the person;* **la ganache,** *the blockhead;* **la connaissance,** *the acquaintance,* etc.

(6) Some names of animals form their feminine irregularly:

le bélier,	*the ram,*	**la brebis.**
le bouc,	*the he-goat,*	**la chèvre.**
le cheval,	*the horse,*	**la jument.**
le mouton,	*the sheep,*	**la brebis.**
le sanglier,	*the wild boar,*	**la laie.**
le singe,	*the monkey,*	**la guenon.**
le canard,	*the duck,*	**la cane.**
le chat,	*the cat,*	**la chatte.**
le mulet,	*the mule,*	**la mule.**
le perroquet,	*the parrot,*	**la perruche.**
le loup,	*the wolf,*	**la louve.**
le dindon,	*the turkey,*	**la dinde.**
le bœuf,	*the ox,*	**la vache.**
le coq,	*the cock,*	**la poule.**

(7) Most of the names of animals have only one form for both genders: such are:

ALL MASCULINE.

le castor, *the beaver.*	**le cigne**, *the swan.*
le chameau, *the camel.*	**le hibou**, *the owl.*
l'écureuil, *the squirrel.*	**le vautour**, *the vulture.*
l'éléphant, *the elephant.*	le merle, *the blackbird.*
le léopard, *the leopard.*	le saumon, *the salmon.*

ALL FEMININE.

la baleine, *the whale.*	l'alouette, *the lark.*
la girafe, *the giraffe.*	**l'hirondelle**, *the swallow.*
la panthère, *the panther.*	**la perdrix** *the partridge.*
l'hyène, *the hyena.*	**la pie**, *the magpie.*
la souris, *the mouse.*	**la tortue**, *the tortoise.*

To all these nouns, when we wish to determine the sex, we add **mâle** or **femelle**: **la panthère mâle, la panthère femelle**; **l'éléphant mâle, l'éléphant femelle.**

(8) Some nouns are of double gender; for example:

un(e) **artiste**, *an artist.*	**un**(e) **esclave**, *a slave.*
un(e) **enfant**, *a child.*	**un**(e) **camarade**, *a comrade.*
un(e) **malade**, *a patient.*	**un**(e) **propriétaire**, *an owner.*

(9) A number of nouns change their meaning according to the gender; the following are a few of them:

MASCULINE.		FEMININE.
book,	**livre,**	*pound.*
page (attendant),	**page,**	*page (of a book).*
veil,	**voile,**	*sail.*
turn, trick,	**tour,**	*tower.*
post, position,	**poste,**	*post-office.*
pendulum,	**pendule,**	*clock.*
critic,	**critique,**	*criticism.*
politician,	**politique,**	*politics.*
handle,	**manche,**[1]	*sleeve.*
mode, mood,	**mode,**	*fashion.*
cabin-boy,	**mousse,**	*moss.*
guide,	**guide,**	*rein.*
stove,	**poêle,**	*frying-pan.*

[1] **La Manche**, *the English Channel*

IV. Formation of the plural.

Nouns and adjectives form their plural by adding **s** to the singular: Lesson 31.

EXCEPTIONS.— (1) Nouns and adjectives ending in **s**, **x**, **z**, in the singular, are the same in the plural: Lesson 31.

(2) Nouns and adjectives ending in **-au** or **-eu** take **x** in the plural: Lesson 31.

But the noun **landau**, *a landau* (sort of carriage), and the adjective **bleu**, *blue*, take **s** in the plural.

(3) Nouns and adjectives in **-al** change **al** into **aux**; Lesson 31.

But **s** is added in the plural to the nouns **bal**, **carnaval**, **chacal**, **régal**, and to the adjectives **amical**, **fatal**, **final**, **glacial**, **initial**, **matinal**, **naval**, **pénal**, **théâtral**, and a few others seldom used.

(4) The following nouns ending in **-ail** change **ail** into **aux**:

le bail,	*the lease,*	**les baux.**
le corail,	*the coral,*	**les coraux.**
l'émail,	*the enamel,*	**les émaux.**
le soupirail,	*the air-hole,*	**les soupiraux.**
le travail,	*the work, the labor,*	**les travaux.**
le vitrail,	*the glass window,*	**les vitraux.**

Bétail, *cattle*, has no plural; **bestiaux** is the plural word for *cattle*.

(5) Seven nouns ending in **-ou** take **x**:

le bijou,	*the jewel,*	**les bijoux.**
le caillou,	*the pebble,*	**les cailloux.**
le chou,	*the cabbage,*	**les choux.**
le genou,	*the knee,*	**les genoux.**
le hibou,	*the owl,*	**les hiboux.**
le joujou,	*the toy,*	**les joujoux.**
le pou,	*the louse,*	**les poux.**

(6) **Aïeul, ciel,** and **œil,** generally make **aïeux,** *ancestors;* **cieux,** *heavens;* **yeux,** *eyes.* But **aïeul** makes **aïeuls** when it means the paternal and maternal grandfathers; **ciel** makes **ciels** when it means the testers of beds, the roofs of quarries, or "skies" in painting; and in the cases when **œil** does not mean properly *eye,* it makes **œils,** as, **des œils-de-bœuf,** *oval windows.*

(7) Foreign words, which have not yet been naturalized in France by custom, remain invariable, such as: **des alibi, des errata, des in-folio, des in-quarto, des post-scriptum, des fac-simile, des Te-Deum,** etc.

But the following take the mark of the plural: **des bravos, des duos, des trios, des numéros, des opéras, des zéros, des impromptus, des échos, des déficits,** etc.

(8) Plural of compound nouns.

General Rules. — To form the plural of a compound noun:

(*a*) If the noun is composed of two nouns or an adjective and a noun, connected by a hyphen, both parts are made plural.

le chou-fleur,	*the cauliflower,*	**les choux-fleurs.**
l'oiseau-mouche,	*the humming-bird,*	**les oiseaux-mouches.**
le petit-fils,	*the grandson,*	**les petits-fils.**
le beau-frère,	*the brother-in-law,*	**les beaux-frères.**
le grand-père,	*the grandfather,*	**les grands-pères.**
But **la grand'mère,**	*the grandmother,*	**les grand'mères.**
une demi-heure,	*a half hour,*	**des demi-heures.**

(*b*) If the noun is composed of two nouns connected by a preposition and hyphens, the first noun only is made plural.

le chef-d'œuvre,	*the masterpiece,*	**les chefs-d'œuvre.**
l'arc-en-ciel,	*the rainbow,*	**les arcs[1]-en-ciel.**

(*c*) If the noun is composed of a noun and a verb, adverb, or preposition, the noun only takes the sign of the plural.

le tire-bouchon,	*the corkscrew,*	**les tire-bouchons.**
l'arrière-grand-père,	*the great-grandfather,*	**les arrière-grands-pères.**

Some compound nouns have a plural form when their meaning is singular: **le cure-dents,** *the tooth-pick;* **le casse-noisettes,** *the nut-cracker;* **le porte-clefs,** *the turnkey;* **un essuie-mains** (or **main**), *a towel.*

[1] **s** not heard.

(*d*) If the noun is composed of two verbs or of any two invariable words, it remains unchanged in the plural.

le ouï-dire,	*hearsay,*	**les ouï-dire.**
le dit-on,	*saying, rumor,*	**les dit-on.**
le passe-partout,	*pass-key,*	**les passe-partout.**

THE ADJECTIVE.

V. Formation of the feminine of adjectives.

General Rule. — To form the feminine of adjectives, add *e mute* to the masculine (Lesson 4).

Exceptions. — (1) Adjectives ending with *e mute* in the masculine are the same in the feminine (Lesson 4).

(2) Adjectives ending in **-el**, **-en**, **-on**, **-et**, double the last consonant, and take an *e mute* after it (Lesson 56).

(3) Ten other adjectives also double their last consonant in the feminine (Lesson 56).

(4) Adjectives ending in **-f** change **f** into **ve** (Lesson 56).

(5) Adjectives ending in **-x** change **x** into **se** (Lesson 56).

(6) Adjectives ending in **-eur**, and derived from a present participle, change **eur** into **euse**: **flatteur** (from **flattant**), **flatteuse**; **grondeur** (from **grondant**), **grondeuse.**

(7) Adjectives ending in **-teur**, and not derived from a present participle, change **teur** into **trice**:

Profanateur, profanatrice; corrupteur, corruptrice.

Adjectives ending in **-érieur**, not belonging to either of the above exceptions, follow the general rule: **inférieur, inférieure; ultérieur, ultérieure.** Add to these **meilleur, majeur,** and **mineur.**

(8) Many adjectives form their feminines irregularly (see Lesson 56).

The plural of adjectives is formed in the same way as that of nouns (see page 67).

For the comparison of adjectives see Lesson 44.

VI. Possessive adjectives.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
	Masculine.	*Feminine.*	*Both genders.*
My,	mon.[1]	ma.	mes.
Thy,	ton.	ta.	tes.
His, her, its,	son.	sa.	ses.
Our,	notre.		nos.
Your,	votre.		vos.
Their,	leur.		leurs.

VII. Demonstrative adjectives.

	MASCULINE.		FEMININE.
SINGULAR.	Before a consonant.	Before a vowel or h mute.	Before any letter.
This or *that,*	ce.	cet.	cette.
PLURAL.			
These or *those,*	ces.		

VIII. Numeral adjectives.

For cardinal and ordinal numbers, see Lessons 21 and 23.

[1] **Mon, ton,** and **son,** are used instead of **ma, ta,** and **sa** before a feminine word beginning with a vowel or **h** mute.

FUTURE. *shall I have?*	FUTURE ANTERIOR. *shall I have had?*
aurai-je?	aurai-je eu?
auras-tu?	auras-tu eu?
aura-t-il? aura-t-elle?	aura-t-il eu? aura-t-elle eu?
aurons-nous?	aurons-nous eu?
aurez-vous?	aurez-vous eu?
auront-ils? auront-elles?	auront-ils (elles) eu?

CONDITIONAL PRESENT. *should I have?*	CONDITIONAL PAST. *should I have had?*
aurais-je?	aurais-je eu?
aurais-tu?	aurais-tu eu?
aurait-il? aurait-elle?	aurait-il eu? aurait-elle eu?
aurions-nous?	aurions-nous eu?
auriez-vous?	auriez-vous eu?
auraient-ils (elles)?	auraient-ils (elles) eu?

OBSERVATION FOR ALL VERBS USED NEGATIVELY. — Instead of **pas**, put **point** for a stronger negation, **jamais** for *never*, and **plus** for *no more* or *no longer*. (See Lesson 98.)

XIII. Avoir used negatively.

INDICATIVE PRESENT. *I have not.*	PAST INDEFINITE. *I have not had, I did not have.*
je n'ai pas.	je n'ai pas eu.
tu n'as pas.	tu n'as pas eu.
il or elle n'a pas.	il or elle n'a pas eu.
nous n'avons pas.	nous n'avons pas eu.
vous n'avez pas.	vous n'avez pas eu.
ils or elles n'ont pas.	ils or elles n'ont pas eu.

IMPERFECT. *I had not.*	PLUPERFECT. *I had not had.*
je n'avais pas.	je n'avais pas eu.
tu n'avais pas.	tu n'avais pas eu.
il or elle n'avait pas.	il or elle n'avait pas eu.
nous n'avions pas.	nous n'avions pas eu.
vous n'aviez pas.	vous n'aviez pas eu.
il or elles n'avaient pas.	ils or elles n'avaient pas eu.

PAST DEFINITE.

je n'eus pas, *I had not.*
tu n'eus pas.
il or elle n'eut pas.
nous n'eûmes pas.
vous n'eûtes pas.
ils or elles n'eurent pas.

PAST ANTERIOR.

je n'eus pas eu, *I had not had.*
tu n'eus pas eu.
il or elle n'eut pas eu.
nous n'eûmes pas eu.
vous n'eûtes pas eu.
ils or elles n'eurent pas eu.

FUTURE.

I shall not have.

je n'aurai pas.
tu n'auras pas.
il or elle n'aura pas.
nous n'aurons pas.
vous n'aurez pas.
ils or elles n'auront pas.

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

I shall not have had.

je n'aurai pas eu.
tu n'auras pas eu.
il or elle n'aura pas eu.
nous n'aurons pas eu.
vous n'aurez pas eu.
ils or elles n'auront pas eu.

CONDITIONAL PRESENT.

I should not have.

je n'aurais pas.
tu n'aurais pas.
il or elle n'aurait pas.
nous n'aurions pas.
vous n'auriez pas.
ils or elles n'auraient pas.

CONDITIONAL PAST.

I should not have had.

je n'aurais pas eu.
tu n'aurais pas eu.
il or elle n'aurait pas eu.
nous n'aurions pas eu.
vous n'auriez pas eu.
ils or elles n'auraient pas eu.

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

(*that*) *I may not have.*

que je n'aie pas.
que tu n'aies pas.
qu'il or qu'elle n'ait pas.
que nous n'ayons pas.
que vous n'ayez pas.
qu'ils (elles) n'aient pas.

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

(*that*) *I may not have had.*

que je n'aie pas eu.
que tu n'aies pas eu.
qu'il or qu'elle n'ait pas eu.
que nous n'ayons pas eu.
que vous n'ayez pas eu.
qu'ils (elles) n'aient pas eu.

SUBJUNCTIVE IMPERFECT.

(*that*) *I might not have.*

que je n'eusse pas.
que tu n'eusses pas.
qu'il or qu'elle n'eût pas.
que nous n'eussions pas.
que vous n'eussiez pas.
qu'ils (elles) n'eussent pas.

SUBJUNCTIVE PLUPERFECT.

(*that*) *I might not have had.*

que je n'eusse pas eu.
que tu n'eusses pas eu.
qu'il or qu'elle n'eût pas eu.
que nous n'eussions pas eu.
que vous n'eussiez pas eu.
qu'ils (elles) n'eussent pas eu.

XVII. Etre used negatively.

INDICATIVE PRESENT.

I am not.

je ne suis pas.
tu n'es pas.
il or elle n'est pas.
nous ne sommes pas.
vous n'êtes pas.
ils or elles ne sont pas.

PAST INDEFINITE.

I have not been, I was not.

je n'ai pas été.
tu n'as pas été.
il or elle n'a pas été.
nous n'avons pas été.
vous n'avez pas été.
ils or elles n'ont pas été.

IMPERFECT.

I was not.

je n'étais pas.
tu n'étais pas.
il or elle n'était pas.
nous n'étions pas.
vous n'étiez pas.
ils or elles n'étaient pas.

PLUPERFECT.

I had not been.

je n'avais pas été.
tu n'avais pas été.
il or elle n'avait pas été.
nous n'avions pas été.
vous n'aviez pas été.
ils or elles n'avaient pas été.

PAST DEFINITE.

I was not.

je ne fus pas.
tu ne fus pas.
il or elle ne fut pas.
nous ne fûmes pas.
vous ne fûtes pas.
ils or elles ne furent pas.

PAST ANTERIOR.

I had not been.

je n'eus pas été.
tu n'eus pas été.
il or elle n'eut pas été.
nous n'eûmes pas été.
vous n'eûtes pas été.
ils or elles n'eurent pas été.

FUTURE.

I shall not be.

je ne serai pas.
tu ne seras pas.
il or elle ne sera pas.
nous ne serons pas.
vous ne serez pas.
ils or elles ne seront pas.

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

I shall not have been.

je n'aurai pas été.
tu n'auras pas été.
il or elle n'aura pas été.
nous n'aurons pas été.
vous n'aurez pas été.
ils or elles n'auront pas été.

CONDITIONAL PRESENT.

I should not be.

je ne serais pas.
tu ne serais pas.
il or elle ne serait pas.
nous ne serions pas.
vous ne seriez pas.
ils or elles ne seraient pas.

CONDITIONAL PAST.

I should not have been.

je n'aurais pas été.
tu n'aurais pas été.
il or elle n'aurait pas été.
nous n'aurions pas été.
vous n'auriez pas été.
ils or elles n'auraient pas été.

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

(*that*) *I may not be.*

que je ne sois pas.
que tu ne sois pas.
qu'il (elle) ne soit pas.
que nous ne soyons pas.
que vous ne soyez pas.
qu'ils (elles) ne soient pas.

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

(*that*) *I might not have been.*

que je n'aie pas été.
que tu n'aies pas été.
qu'il (elle) n'ait pas été.
que nous n'ayons pas été.
que vous n'ayez pas été.
qu'ils (elles) n'aient pas été.

SUBJUNCTIVE IMPERFECT.

(*that*) *I might not be.*

que je ne fusse pas.
que tu ne fusses pas.
qu'il or qu'elle ne fût pas.
que nous ne fussions pas.
que vous ne fussiez pas.
qu'ils (elles) ne fussent pas.

SUBJUNCTIVE PLUPERFECT.

(*that*) *I might not have been.*

que je n'eusse pas été.
que tu n'eusses pas été.
qu'il or qu'elle n'eût pas été.
que nous n'eussions pas été.
que vous n'eussiez pas été.
qu'ils (elles) n'eussent pas été.

IMPERATIVE.

SINGULAR.

ne sois pas, *do not be.*
(qu'il ne soit pas, *let him not be.*)

PLURAL.

ne soyons pas, *let us not be.*
ne soyez pas, *be not, do not be.*
(qu'ils ne soient pas, *let them not be.*)

XVIII. Etre used negatively and interrogatively.

INDICATIVE PRESENT.

am I not?

ne suis-je pas?
n'es-tu pas?
n'est-il pas? n'est-elle pas?
ne sommes-nous pas?
n'êtes-vous pas?
ne sont-ils (elles) pas?

PAST INDEFINITE.

have I not been? was I not?

n'ai-je pas été?
n'as-tu pas été?
n'a-t-il pas été? n'a-t-elle pas été?
n'avons-nous pas été?
n'avez-vous pas été?
n'ont-ils (elles) pas été?

IMPERFECT.

was I not?

n'étais-je pas?

etc.

PLUPERFECT.

had I not been?

n'avais-je pas été?

etc.

PAST DEFINITE.

was I not?

ne fus-je pas?

etc.

PAST ANTERIOR.

had I not been?

n'eus-je pas été?

etc.

FUTURE.

shall I not be?

ne serai-je pas?

etc.

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

shall I not have been?

n'aurai-je pas été?

etc.

CONDITIONAL PRESENT.

should I not be?

ne serais-je pas?

etc.

CONDITIONAL PAST.

should I not have been?

n'aurais-je pas été?

etc.

XIX. Terminations of the Four Regular Conjugations.

Conjugation.	*Infinitive.*	*Present participle.*	*Past participle.*	*Present Indicative.*	*Imperfect.*	*Preterite.*
1.	er	ant	é	e es e ons ez ent	ais ais ait ions iez aient	ai as a âmes âtes èrent
2.	ir	(iss)ant	i	is is it issons issez issent	ais ais ait ions iez aient	is is it îmes îtes irent
3.	oir	ant	u	s s t ons ez ent	ais ais ait ions iez aient	us us ut ûmes ûtes urent
4.	re	ant	u	s s t ons ez ent	ais ais ait ions iez aient	is is it îmes îtes irent

Observations on these terminations.

(1) All verbs in the French language terminate in the same way in four of their tenses: —

The present participle in **-ant.**

The imperfect and the conditional in **-ais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.**

The future in **-ai, -as, -a, -ons, -ez, -ont.**

(2) The endings of the future and of the conditional are always preceded by **r.**

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

étant frappé, *being struck.*

PAST PARTICIPLE.

ayant été frappé, *having been struck.*

PRESENT INDICATIVE.

I am struck, etc.

je suis frappé (ée).
tu es frappé (ée).
il (elle) **est frappé** (ée).
nous sommes frappés (ées).
vous êtes frappés (ées).
ils (elles) **sont frappés** (ées).

PAST INDEFINITE.

I have been struck, I was struck, etc.

j'ai été frappé (ée).
tu as été frappé (ée).
il (elle) **a été frappé** (ée).
nous avons été frappés (ées).
vous avez été frappés (ées).
ils (elles) **ont été frappés** (ées).

IMPERFECT.

I was struck.

j'étais frappé (ée).

PLUPERFECT.

I had been struck.

j'avais été frappé (ée).

XXIII. Conjugation of a reflexive verb.

PRESENT INFINITIVE.

se laver, *to wash one's self.*

PAST INFINITIVE.

s'être lavé, *to have washed one's self.*

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

se lavant, *washing one's self.*

PAST PARTICIPLE.

s'étant lavé, *having washed one's self.*

PRESENT INDICATIVE.

I wash myself.

je me lave.
tu te laves.
il se lave.
nous nous lavons.
vous vous lavez.
ils se lavent.

PAST INDEFINITE.

I have washed myself.

je me suis lavé (ée).
tu t'es lavé (ée).
il (elle) **s'est lavé** (ée).
nous nous sommes lavés (ées).
vous vous êtes lavés (ées).
ils (elles) **se sont lavés** (ées).

IMPERFECT.

I was washing myself.

je me lavais.

PLUPERFECT.

I had washed myself.

je m'étais lavé (ée).

IMPERATIVE.

lavons-nous, *let us wash ourselves.*

lave-toi, *wash thyself.* **lavez-vous**, *wash yourselves (yourself).*

(**qu'il se lave**, *let him wash himself.*) (**qu'ils se lavent**, *let them wash themselves.*)

Observe that the pronoun object is placed after the imperative. See Lesson 63, (2). If the imperative is negative, the pronoun is placed before, according to the general rule, as:

ne nous lavons pas, *let us not wash ourselves.*
ne vous lavez pas, *do not wash yourselves (yourself).*

XXIV. Conjugation of a reciprocal verb.

PRESENT INDICATIVE.

	Speaking of two persons only.	Speaking of more than two.
nous nous flattons	**l'un l'autre,**	**les uns les autres.**
vous vous flattez	**l'un l'autre,**	**les uns les autres.**
ils se flattent	**l'un l'autre,**	**les uns les autres.**

All through the conjugation, put **l'une l'autre** if speaking of *two feminine* subjects, and **les unes les autres** if speaking of more than two.

PAST INDEFINITE.

nous nous sommes flattés	**l'un l'autre,**	**les uns les autres.**
vous vous êtes flattés	**l'un l'autre,**	**les uns les autres.**
ils se sont flattés	**l'un l'autre,**	**les uns les autres.**

IMPERFECT.

nous nous flattions	**l'un l'autre,**	**les uns les autres.**
vous vous flattiez	**l'un l'autre,**	**les uns les autres.**
ils se flattaient	**l'un l'autre,**	**les uns les autres.**

and so on to the

IMPERATIVE AFFIRMATIVE.

flattons-nous	**l'un l'autre,**	**les uns les autres.**
flattez-vous	**l'un l'autre,**	**les uns les autres.**
qu'ils se flattent	**l'un l'autre,**	**les uns les autres.**

IMPERATIVE NEGATIVE.

ne nous flattons pas	**l'un l'autre,**	**les uns les autres.**
ne vous flattez pas	**l'un l'autre,**	**les uns les autres.**
qu'ils ne se flattent pas	**l'un l'autre,**	**les uns les autres.**

If the reciprocal verb **requi**res the preposition **à** before its object, it is conjugated in this way: —

PRESENT INDICATIVE.

We speak to each other.

nous nous parlons	**l'un à l'autre,**	**les uns aux autres.**
vous vous parlez	**l'un à l'autre,**	**les uns aux autres.**
ils se parlent	**l'un à l'autre,**	**les uns aux autres.**

If the reciprocal verb requires any other preposition before its object, the preposition is likewise placed between **l'un** and **l'autre,** or **les uns** and **les autres,** as: —

PAST INDEFINITE.

We fought against each other.

nous nous sommes battus	**l'un contre l'autre,**	**les uns contre les autres.**
vous vous êtes battus	**l'un contre l'autre,**	**les uns contre les autres.**
ils se sont battus	**l'un contre l'autre,**	**les uns contre les autres**

INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLES.	PRESENT INDICATIVE.	
Absoudre, *to absolve*	absolvant absous (m.) absoute (f.)	j'absous tu absous il absout	nous absolvons vous absolvez ils absolvent
Acquérir, *to acquire*	acquérant acquis, -e	j'acquiers tu acquiers il acquiert	nous acquérons vous acquérez ils acquièrent
Aller, *to go*	allant allé, -e	je vais tu vas il va	nous allons vous allez ils vont
Assaillir, *to assail*	assaillant assailli, -e	j'assaille tu assailles il assaille	nous assaillons vous assaillez ils assaillent
Asseoir, *to seat*	asseyant assis, -e	j'assieds tu assieds il assied	nous asseyons vous asseyez ils asseyent
Avoir, *to have*	ayant eu, -e	j'ai tu as il a	nous avons vous avez ils ont
Battre, *to beat*	battant battu, -e	je bats tu bats il bat	nous battons vous battez ils battent
Boire, *to drink*	buvant bu, -e	je bois tu bois il boit	nous buvons vous buvez ils boivent
Bouillir, *to boil*	bouillant bouilli, -e	je bous tu bous il bout	nous bouillons vous bouillez ils bouillent
Clore, *to close*	*no pres. part.* clos, -e	je clos tu clos il clôt	*no plural*
Conclure, *to conclude*	concluant conclu, -e	je conclus tu conclus il conclut	nous concluons vous concluez ils concluent

PAST DEF.	IMPF. & FUT.	PRES. SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPERATIVE.
wanting	j'absolvais j'absoudrai	que j'absolve	absous absolvons absolvez
j'acquis	j'acquérais j'acquerrai	que j'acquière que nous acquérions qu'ils acquièrent	acquiers acquérons acquérez
j'allai	j'allais j'irai	que j'aille que nous allions qu'ils aillent	va allons allez
j'assaillis	j'assaillais j'assaillirai	que j'assaille	assaille assaillons assaillez
j'assis	j'asseyais j'assiérai (j'asseyerai) (j'assoirai)	que j'asseye que nous asseyions qu'ils asseyent	assieds asseyons asseyez
j'eus	j'avais j'aurai	que j'aie que nous ayons qu'ils aient	aie ayons ayez
je battis	je battais je battrai	que je batte	bats battons battez
je bus	je buvais je boirai	que je boive que nous buvions qu'ils boivent	bois buvons buvez
je bouillis	je bouillais je bouillirai	que je bouille	bous bouillons bouillez
wanting	*wanting* je clorai	que je close	clos
je conclus	je concluais je conclurai	que je conclue	conclus concluons concluez

INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLES.	PRESENT INDICATIVE.	
Conduire,	**conduisant**	**je conduis**	nous conduisons
to conduct	**conduit**, -e	tu conduis	vous conduisez
		il conduit	ils conduisent
Confire,	**confisant**	**je confis**	nous confisons
to preserve	**confit**, -e	tu confis	vous confisez
		il confit	ils confisent
Connaître,	**connaissant**	**je connais**	nous connaissons
to know	**connu**, -e	tu connais	vous connaissez
		il connaît	ils connaissent
Conquérir,	*to conquer,*	*is conjugated like* acquérir	
Construire,	*to construct,*	*is conjugated like* conduire	
Coudre,	**cousant**	**je couds**	nous cousons
to sew	**cousu**, -e	tu couds	vous cousez
		il coud	ils cousent
Courir,	**courant**	**je cours**	nous courons
to run	**couru**	tu cours	vous courez
		il court	ils courent
Couvrir,	**couvrant**	**je couvre**	nous couvrons
to cover	**couvert**, -e	tu couvres	vous couvrez
		il couvre	ils couvrent
Craindre,	**craignant**	**je crains**	nous craignons
to fear	**craint**, -e	tu crains	vous craignez
		il craint	ils craignent
Croire,	**croyant**	**je crois**	nous croyons
to believe	**cru**, -e	tu crois	vous croyez
		il croit	ils croient
Croître,	**croissant**	**je croîs**	nous croissons
to grow	**crû**, crue	tu croîs	vous croissez
		il croît	ils croissent
Cueillir,	**cueillant**	**je cueille**	nous cueillons
to gather	**cueilli**, -e	tu cueilles	vous cueillez
		il cueille	ils cueillent

PAST DEF.	IMPF. & FUT.	PRES. SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPERATIVE.
je conduisis	je conduisais je conduirai	que je conduise	conduis conduisons conduisez
je confis	je confisais je confirai	que je confise	confis confisons confisez
je connus	je connaissais je connaîtrai	que je connaisse	connais connaissons connaissez
je cousis	je cousais je coudrai	que je couse	couds cousons cousez
je courus	je courais je courrai	que je coure	cours courons courez
je couvris	je couvrais je couvrirai	que je couvre	couvre couvrons couvrez
je craignis	je craignais je craindrai	que je craigne	crains craignons craignez
je crus	je croyais je croirai	que je croie que nous croyions	crois croyons croyez
je crûs	je croissais je croîtrai	que je croisse	croîs croissons croissez
je cueillis	je cueillais je cueillerai	que je cueille	cueille cueillons cueillez

INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLES.	PRESENT INDICATIVE.	
Cuire,	**cuisant**	*is conjugated like* **conduire**	
to cook	**cuit,** -e		
Déchoir,	*wanting*	**je déchois**	nous déchoyons
to fall, decline	**déchu,** -e	tu déchois	vous déchoyez
		il déchoit	ils déchoient
Devoir,	**devant**	**je dois**	nous devons
to owe, must	**dû,** due	tu dois	vous devez
		il doit	ils doivent
Dire,	**disant**	**je dis**	nous disons
to say	**dit,** -e	tu dis	vous dites
		il dit	ils disent
Dormir,	**dormant**	**je dors**	nous dormons
to sleep	**dormi**	tu dors	vous dormez
		il dort	ils dorment
Echoir,	**échéant**		
to fall due	**échu,** -e	il échoit	
Ecrire,	**écrivant**	**j'écris**	nous écrivons
to write	**écrit,** -e	tu écris	vous écrivez
		il écrit	ils écrivent
Envoyer,	**envoyant**	**j'envoie**	nous envoyons
to send	**envoyé,** -e	tu envoies	vous envoyez
		il envoie	ils envoient
Etre,	**étant**	**je suis**	nous sommes
to be	**été**	tu es	vous êtes
		il est	ils sont
Faillir, *to fail,*	*wanting*		
to just miss	**failli**	il faut	ils faillent
Faire,	**faisant**	**je fais**	nous faisons
to do	**fait,** -e	tu fais	vous faites
		il fait	ils font
Falloir,	*wanting*		
to be necessary	**fallu**	**il faut**	
Fleurir,	**florissant**	*all regular except pres. part. and imperf. ind.*	
to flourish	**fleuri**		

PAST DEF.	IMPF. & FUT.	PRES. SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPERATIVE.
Or it may with faire	*be used in as an*	*the infinitive auxiliary*	
je déchus	je déchoyais je décherrai	que je déchoie	déchois déchoyons déchoyez
je dus	je devais je devrai	que je doive que nous devions	dois devons devez
je dis	je disais je dirai	que je dise	dis disons dites
je dormis	je dormais je dormirai	que je dorme	dors dormons dormez
il échut	*All other*	*forms are wanting*	
j'écrivis	j'écrivais j'écrirai	que j'écrive	écris écrivons écrivez
j'envoyai	j'envoyais j'enverrai	que j'envoie	envoie envoyons envoyez
je fus	j'étais je serai	que je sois que nous soyons qu'ils soient	sois soyons soyez
je faillis	je faillais je faudrai		
je fis	je faisais je ferai	que je fasse	fais faisons faites
il fallut	il fallait il faudra	qu'il faille	
fleurir,	je florissais *to blossom, is*	*regular throughout*	

INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLES.	PRESENT INDICATIVE.
Frire, *to fry*	*wanting* **frit,** -e	**je fris** tu fris il frit
Fuir, *to flee*	**fuyant** **fui**	**i** *becomes* **y** *before a vowel except before* -e, -es, -ent.
Gésir, *to lie*	**gisant**	nous gisons vous gisez **il gît** ils gisent
Haïr, *to hate*	**haïssant** **haï**	**je hais** nous haïssons tu hais vous haïssez il hait ils haïssent
Inclure, *to include*	**incluant** **inclus,** -e	*otherwise* *like* conclure
Introduire,	*to introduce*	*is conjugated like* conduire
Joindre,	*to join*	*is conjugated like* craindre,
Lire, *to read*	**lisant** **lu,** -e	**je lis** nous lisons tu lis vous lisez il lit ils lisent
Luire, *to shine*	**luisant** **lui**	*is conjugated like* conduire *except past participle*
Maudire, *to curse*	**maudissant** **maudit,** -e	**je maudis** nous maudissons tu maudis vous maudissez il maudit ils maudissent
Mentir,	*to lie*	*is conjugated like* dormir
Mettre, *to put*	**mettant** **mis,** -e	**je mets** nous mettons tu mets vous mettez il met ils mettent
Moudre, *to grind*	**moulant** **moulu,** -e	**je mouds** nous moulons tu mouds vous moulez il moud ils moulent
Mourir, *to die*	**mourant** **mort,** -e	**je meurs** nous mourons tu meurs vous mourez il meurt ils meurent

PAST DEF.	IMPF. & FUT.	PRES. SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPERATIVE.
All other	*forms are con*	*jugated with faire*	
	je frirai		
	il gisait		

Rarely used except in epitaphs: **ci-gît**, *here lies;* **ci-gisent**, *here lie.*

je haïs			
All regular	*except singular*	*of pres. ind.*	
substituting	**oi** *for* **ai**		
je lus	je lisais	**que je lise**	**lis**
	je lirai		**lisons**
			lisez
wanting			
je maudis	je maudissais	que je maudisse	maudis
	je maudirai		maudissons
			maudissez
je mis	je mettais	**que je mette**	mets
	je mettrai		mettons
			mettez
je moulus	je moulais	que je moule	mouds
	je moudrai		moulons
			moulez
je mourus	je mourais	que je meure	meurs
	je mourrai	que nous mourions	mourons
		qu'ils meurent	mourez

INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLES.	PRESENT INDICATIVE.
Mouvoir, *to move*	**mouvant** **mû**, mue	**je meus** nous **mouvons** tu meus vous mouvez il meut ils meuvent
Naître, *to be born*	**naissant** **né**, -e	*conjugated like* connaître, *except past definite*
Nuire, *to injure*	**nuisant** **nui**	*like* conduire, *except past participle*
Offrir,	*to offer*	*conjugated like* couvrir
Ouïr, *to hear*	**ouï**, -e	*used only in the infinitive and compound tenses*
Ouvrir,	*to open*	*conjugated like* couvrir
Paître, *to graze*	**paissant** *no past part.*	*conjugated like* connaître
Paraître,	*to appear*	*conjugated like* connaître
Partir, *to set out*	**partant** **parti**, -e	*conjugated like* dormir
Peindre, *to paint*	**peignant** **peint**, -e	*conjugated like* craindre, *substituting* ei *for* ai
Plaindre, *to pity*	**plaignant** **plaint**, -e	*conjugated like* craindre
Plaire, *to please*	**plaisant** **plu**	**je plais** nous **plaisons** tu plais vous plaisez il plaît ils plaisent
Pleuvoir, *to rain*	**pleuvant** **plu**	**il pleut**
Pourvoir, *to provide*	**pourvoyant** **pourvu**, -e	**je pourvois** nous pourvoyons tu pourvois vous pourvoyez il pourvoit ils pourvoient
Pouvoir, *to be able*	**pouvant** **pu**	**je peux (puis)** nous **pouvons** tu peux vous pouvez il peut ils peuvent

PAST DEF.	IMPF. & FUT.	PRES. SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPERATIVE.
je mus	je mouvais je mouvrai	que je meuve que nous mouvions qu'ils meuvent	meus mouvons mouvez
je naquis			
wanting			
je plus	je plaisais je plairai	que je plaise	plais plaisons plaisez
il plut	il pleuvait il pleuvra	**qu'il pleuve**	
je pourvus	je pourvoyais je pourvoirai	que je pourvoie	pourvois pourvoyons pourvoyez
je pus	je pouvais je pourrai	que je puisse	*wanting*

INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLES.	PRESENT INDICATIVE.
Prendre, *to take*	prenant pris, -e	**je prends** nous prenons tu prends vous prenez il prend ils prennent
Se repentir, *to repent*	se repentant repenti, -e	*conjugated like* dormir
Résoudre, *to resolve*	résolvant résolu, -e résous	**je résous** *conjugated like* absoudre
Rire, *to laugh*	riant ri	**je ris** nous rions tu ris vous riez il rit ils rient
Saillir, *to project,* *to gush forth,*	*conjugated* *regular*	*like* assaillir *like* finir
Savoir, *to know*	sachant su, -e	**je sais** nous savons tu sais vous savez il sait ils savent
Sentir, *to feel*	sentant senti, -e	**je sens** *conjugated like* dormir
Seoir, *to suit*		**il sied** **ils siéent**
Servir, *to serve*	servant servi, -e	**je sers** *conjugated like* dormir
Sortir, *to go out*	sortant sorti, -e	**je sors** *conjugated like* dormir
Souffrir, *to suffer*	souffrant souffert, -e	**je souffre** *conjugated like* couvrir
Suffire, *to suffice*	suffisant suffi	**je suffis** *conjugated like* confire
Suivre, *to follow*	suivant suivi, -e	**je suis** nous suivons tu suis vous suivez il suit ils suivent

PAST DEF.	IMPF. & FUT.	PRES. SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPERATIVE.
je pris	je prenais je prendrai	que je prenne que nous prenions qu'ils prennent	prends prenons prenez
je résolus	je résolvais je résoudrai	que je résolve	résous résolvons résolvez
je ris	je riais je rirai	que je rie que nous riions qu'ils rient	ris rions riez
je sus	je savais je saurai	que je sache	sache sachons sachez
je sentis			
No past def.	**il seyait** **il siéra**	qu'il siée	
je servis			
je sortis			
je souffris			
je suffis			
je suivis	je suivais je suivrai	que je suive	suis suivons suivez

INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLES.	PRESENT INDICATIVE.	
Se taire,	**se taisant**	**je me tais**	
to be silent	**tu, -e**	tu te tais	*rest like* plaire
		il se tait	
Tenir,	**tenant**	**je tiens**	nous tenons
to hold	**tenu, -e**	tu tiens	vous tenez
		il tient	ils tiennent
Traire,	**trayant**	**je trais**	nous trayons
to milk	**trait, -e**	tu trais	vous trayez
		il trait	ils traient
Tressaillir,	**tressaillant**	**je tressaille**	
to start, tremble	**tressailli, -e**	*conjugated like* assaillir	
Vaincre,	**vainquant**	**je vaincs**	nous vainquons
to overcome	**vaincu, -e**	tu vaincs	vous vainquez
		il vainc	ils vainquent
Valoir,	**valant**	**je vaux**	nous valons
to be worth	**valu, -e**	tu vaux	vous valez
		il vaut	ils valent
Venir,	**venant**	**je viens**	
to come	**venu, -e**	*conjugated like* tenir	
Vêtir,	**vêtant**	**je vêts**	nous vêtons
to clothe	**vêtu, -e**	tu vêts	vous vêtez
		il vêt	ils vêtent
Vivre,	**vivant**	**je vis**	nous vivons
to live	**vécu**	tu vis	vous vivez
		il vit	ils vivent
Voir,	**voyant**	**je vois**	nous voyons
to see	**vu, -e**	tu vois	vous voyez
		il voit	ils voient
Vouloir,	**voulant**	**je veux**	nous voulons
to be willing	**voulu, -e**	tu veux	vous voulez
		il veut	ils veulent

PAST DEF.	IMPF. & FUT.	PRES. SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPERATIVE.
je me tus			
je tins nous tînmes ils tinrent	je tenais je tiendrai	que je tienne que nous tenions que vous teniez	tiens tenons tenez
No past def.	je trayais je trairai	que je traie que nous trayions que vous trayiez	trais trayons trayez
je tressaillis			
je vainquis	je vainquais je vaincrai	que je vainque	vaincs vainquons
c *becomes* qu	*before every*	*vowel but* u	vainquez
je valus	je valais je vaudrai	que je vaille que nous valions que vous valiez	vaux valons valez
je vins			
je vêtis	je vêtais je vêtirai	que je vête	vêts vêtons vête
je vécus	je vivais je vivrai	que je vive	vis vivons vivez
je vis	je voyais je verrai	que je voie que nous voyions qu'ils voient	vois voyons voyez
je voulus	je voulais je voudrai	que je veuille que nous voulions qu'ils veuillent	veuille veuillons veuillez

XXV. List of verbs governing the infinitive without a preposition.

accourir, *to hasten.*
affirmer, *to affirm.*
aimer mieux, *to prefer.*
aller, *to go, to be about to.*
apercevoir, *to perceive.*
assurer, *to assert.*
avoir beau, *to be in vain.*
avouer, *to confess.*
compter, *to expect.*
concevoir, *to conceive, to represent to one's self.*
confesser, *to confess.*
courir, *to run.*
croire, *to believe.*
daigner, *to deign.*
déclarer, *to declare.*
déposer, *to depose* (as a witness).
désirer, *to desire.*
devoir, *to be to, to have to, must.*
écouter, *to listen.*
entendre, *to hear.*
envoyer, *to send.*
espérer, *to hope.*
faillir, *to come near* (*doing*).
faire, *to cause, to get, to have.*
falloir, *to be necessary.*
s'imaginer, *to fancy.*
laisser, *to allow, to let.*
mener, *to take.*
nier, *to deny.*
observer, *to observe.*
oser, *to dare.*
ouïr, *to hear.*
paraître, *to appear.*
penser, *to be near to.*
pouvoir, *to be able.*
préférer, *to prefer.*
prétendre, *to pretend.*
rapporter, *to relate.*
reconnaître, *to acknowledge.*
regarder, *to look at.*
retourner, *to go back.*
revenir, *to come back.*
savoir, *to know how* (*to be able*).
sembler, *to seem.*
sentir, *to feel.*
souhaiter, *to wish.*
soutenir, *to maintain.*
témoigner, *to testify.*
valoir mieux, *to be better.*
venir, *to come.*
voir, *to see.*
vouloir, *to be willing.*

XXVI. List of verbs requiring *de* before an infinitive.

s'abstenir, *to abstain.*
accorder, *to permit.*
achever, *to finish.*
affecter, *to affect.*
ambitionner, *to be ambitious to.*
s'apercevoir, *to perceive.*
appréhender, *to apprehend, to fear.*
avertir, *to warn.*
s'aviser, *to bethink one's self, to think* (*of*).
blâmer, *to blame for.*
brûler, *to be impatient.*
cesser, *to cease.*
charger, *to charge.*
se charger, *to undertake.*
choisir, *to choose.*
commander, *to command.*
conjurer, *to entreat.*
conseiller, *to advise.*
consoler, *to console for.*
se contenter, *to be satisfied.*
craindre, *to fear.*
crier, *to cry out.*
dédaigner, *to disdain.*
défendre, *to forbid.*
se dépêcher, *to hasten.*
détester, *to detest.*
dire, *to tell, to bid.*
discontinuer, *to continue.*
écrire, *to write.*

s'efforcer, *to exert one's self, to try.*
éluder, *to elude.*
empêcher, *to prevent.*
s'ennuyer, *to be bored with.*
s'enorgueillir, *to be proud.*
entreprendre, *to undertake.*
essayer, *to try.*
s'étonner, *to wonder at.*
éviter, *to shun, to avoid.*
s'excuser, *to excuse one's self from.*
faire bien, *to do well.*
feindre, *to pretend.*
féliciter, *to congratulate.*
finir, *to finish.*
se flatter, *to flatter one's self, to hope.*
frémir, *to shudder.*
gager, *to wager.*
se garder, *to take care not to.*
gémir, *to groan.*
gêner, *to trouble.*
gronder, *to scold for.*
se hâter, *to make haste.*
s'imaginer, *to take into one's head.*
s'indigner, *to be indignant.*
inspirer, *to inspire.*
interdire, *to forbid.*
jouir, *to enjoy.*
jurer, *to swear.*
louer, *to praise for.*
mander, *to bid.*
manquer, *to fail to.*
méditer, *to contemplate.*
se mêler, *to interfere, to meddle.*
menacer, *to threaten.*
mériter, *to deserve.*
mourir, *to die; to long.*
négliger, *to neglect.*
obliger, *to oblige, to do a service.*
obtenir, *to obtain.*
s'occuper, *to be intent on.*
offrir, *to offer.*
omettre, *to omit.*
oublier, *to forget.*
ordonner, *to prescribe.*
pardonner, *to forgive.*
parier, *to bet.*
parler, *to speak.*
se passer, *to do without.*
permettre, *to permit.*
persuader, *to persuade.*
se piquer, *to pride one's self on.*
plaindre, *to pity.*
se plaindre, *to complain.*
se presser, *to hasten.*
prier, *to request, to beg.*
projeter, *to intend.*
promettre, *to promise.*
proposer, *to propose.*
se proposer, *to purpose.*
protester, *to protest.*
recommander, *to recommend.*
redouter, *to fear.*
refuser, *to refuse.*
regretter, *to regret.*
se réjouir, *to rejoice.*
remercier, *to thank.*
se repentir, *to repent.*
reprocher, *to reproach.*
se réserver, *to reserve to one's self a right.*
résoudre, *to resolve.*
rire, *to laugh.*
risquer, *to risk.*
rougir, *to blush.*
sommer, *to summon.*
se soucier, *to mind, to care.*
soupçonner, *to suspect.*
se souvenir, *to remember.*
suggérer, *to suggest.*
tâcher, *to try.*
tenter, *to attempt.*
trembler, *to fear.*
se vanter, *to boast.*
venir, *to have just.*

XXVII. List of verbs requiring à before an infinitive.

s'abaisser, *to stoop to.*
aboutir, *to end in.*
s'accorder, *to agree in.*
s'accoutumer, *to accustom one's self.*
s'acharner, *to be eager, to be determined.*
admettre, *to admit.*
s'aguerrir, *to inure.*
aider, *to help.*
aimer, *to like.*
s'amuser, *to amuse one's self.*
appeler, *to call.*
s'appliquer, *to apply.*
apprendre, *to learn, to teach.*
s'apprêter, *to prepare one's self.*
aspirer, *to aspire.*
assigner, *to summon.*
assujettir, *to compel.*
s'assujettir, *to submit.*
s'attacher, *to be determined.*
s'attendre, *to expect.*
autoriser, *to authorize.*
s'avilir, *to stoop.*
avoir, *to have.*
balancer, *to hesitate.*
se borner, *to confine one's self.*
chercher, *to seek, to try.*
commencer, *to begin.*
se complaire, *to delight in.*
concourir, *to concur.*
condamner, *to condemn.*
condescendre, *to condescend.*
consentir, *to consent.*
consister, *to consist in.*
conspirer, *to conspire.*
se consumer, *to ruin one's health.*
contribuer, *to contribute,*
convier, *to invite.*
coûter, *to cost.*
décider, *to persuade.*
se décider, *to decide.*
descendre, *to stoop.*
destiner, *to destine, to design.*
déterminer, *to induce.*
se déterminer, *to determine, to resolve.*
dévouer, *to devote.*
disposer, *to prepare, to fit.*
se disposer, *to prepare.*
dresser, *to train.*
employer, *to employ, to occupy.*
encourager, *to encourage.*
engager, *to induce.*
s'engager, *to bind one's self.*
s'enhardir, *to make bold, to venture.*
enseigner, *to teach.*
s'entendre, *to know how.*
s'étudier, *to apply one's self.*
exceller, *to excel.*
exciter, *to urge.*
s'exercer, *to exercise one's self.*
exhorter, *to exhort.*
s'exposer, *to expose one's self.*
se fatiguer, *to fatigue one's self.*
gagner, *to gain by.*
habituer, *to accustom.*
se hasarder, *to venture.*
hésiter, *to hesitate.*
instruire, *to instruct.*
inviter, *to invite, to ask.*
se mettre, *to set about, to begin.*
s'obstiner, *to persist in*
occuper, *to occupy, to employ.*
s'occuper, *to be engaged.*
s'offrir, *to offer, to stand forth.*
s'opiniâtrer, *to be obstinate.*
parvenir, *to succeed in.*
passer, *to spend in.*
pencher, *to lean.*
penser, *to think of.*
persévérer, *to persevere.*
persister, *to persist.*
se plaire, *to delight.*
plier, *to bend.*
porter, *to induce.*

prendre plaisir, *to take pleasure in.*
préparer, *to prepare.*
se préparer, *to prepare one's self.*
prétendre, *to aspire.*
provoquer, *to provoke.*
réduire, *to reduce.*
se refuser, *to refuse one's self, not to admit.*
renoncer, *to renounce.*
se résigner, *to resign, to submit one's self.*
se résoudre, *to resolve.*
réussir, *to succeed.*
servir, *to serve.*
songer, *to think of.*
suffire, *to be sufficient.*
tarder, *to delay, to be long.*
travailler, *to work, to study, to endeavor.*
se tuer, *to kill one's self, to take much trouble.*
venir, *to chance, to happen.*
viser, *to aim, to aspire.*
vouer, *to devote.*
se vouer, *to devote, to apply one's self.*

XXVIII. Adjectives which change their signification according as they are placed before or after the noun.

Bon. Un homme bon, *a good man;* un bon homme, *a simple man;* un bon mot, *a pun;* une bonne parole, *a good word.*

Brave. Un homme brave, *a brave man;* un brave homme, *a worthy man.*

Certain. Une chose certaine, *a positive thing;* une certaine chose, *a particular thing.*

Cher. Mon cher ami, *my dear friend;* une maison chère, *a costly house.*

Commun. Une voix commune, *a common voice;* d'une commune voix, *unanimously.*

Dernier. Le mois dernier, *last month;* le dernier mois, *the last month* (of the year, of my stay in London, etc.).

Différent; divers. Les différentes (diverses) choses, *various things;* les choses différentes (diverses), *different things.*

Faux. Une fausse clef, *a skeleton key;* une clef fausse, *a wrong key;* une fausse porte, *a secret door;* une porte fausse, *a false door.*

Furieux. Un furieux menteur, *a terrible liar;* un homme furieux, *an enraged man.*

Galant. Un galant homme, *a well-bred man;* un homme galant, *a man polite to ladies.*

Gentil. Un gentilhomme, *a nobleman;* un homme gentil, *a delightful, polite man.*

Grand. Un grand homme, *a great man;* un homme grand, *a tall man.* But if, after *grand homme*, some other external qualities are added, it means *tall: C'est un grand homme blond, bien fait.* In like manner if, after *un homme grand*, some moral qualification is added, *grand* does not refer to the size: *Un homme grand dans ses desseins.* Le grand air, *noble manners;* l'air grand, *a noble look.*

Haut. Le haut ton, *an arrogant manner;* le ton haut, *a loud voice.*

Honnête. Un honnête homme, *an honest man;* un homme honnête, *a polite man.*

Mauvais. Le mauvais air, *vulgar appearance;* l'air mauvais, *ill-natured look.*

Méchant. Une méchante épigramme, *a poor epigram;* une épigramme méchante, *a wicked epigram.*

Même. La même femme, *the same woman;* les rues mêmes, *even the streets*, or *the very streets.*

Mortel. Un mortel ennemi, *a deadly enemy;* l'homme mortel, *mortal man.*

Neuf. Un habit neuf, *a new-made coat;* un habit nouveau, *a coat of new fashion;* un nouvel habit, *another coat.*

Nouveau. Le nouveau vin, *wine different from that which was drunk before, newly broached wine;* du vin nouveau, *wine newly made.*

Pauvre. When placed before the noun, it has the various significations which the word *poor* has in English: *assister un pauvre vieillard, une pauvre veuve, un pauvre homme*, means to assist one in poverty; *le pauvre enfant, les pauvres innocents, le pauvre animal*, are terms of endearment; *un pauvre orateur, de pauvre vin*, are terms of contempt. When placed after the noun it always signifies poverty: un homme pauvre, *a needy man.*

Petit. Un petit homme, *a little man;* un homme petit, *a mean man.* Observe that *petit* has its natural meaning when placed before the noun, its figurative, when placed after. It is the reverse with *grand.*

Plaisant. Un plaisant conte, *an unlikely, absurd tale;* un conte plaisant, *an amusing story.* Un plaisant homme, *a ridiculous man;* un homme plaisant, *a humorous man.*

Propre. Mon propre habit, *my own coat;* un habit propre, *a clean coat.*

Seul. Un seul homme, *a single man;* un homme seul, *a man alone.*

Triste. Un triste homme, *a poor kind of a man;* un homme triste, *a sorrowful man.*

Vilain. Un vilain homme, *a disagreeable man;* un homme fort vilain, *an ugly man.*

XXIX. THE ADVERB.

Formation of adverbs from adjectives.

Most adjectives may be made into adverbs by adding **-ment**:

(1) To the masculine, if it ends with a vowel: **poli, poliment; sage, sagement.**

EXCEPTIONS. — **Impuni** makes **impunément**; **prodigue, prodigalement**; **traître, traîtreusement**. **Aveugle, conforme, énorme, incommode, opiniâtre**, and **uniforme** change *e mute* into **é**: **aveuglément**, etc.

(2) To the feminine, if the masculine ends with a consonant:

Pur, purement; franc, franchement; sec, sèchement; complet, complètement; heureux, heureusement; actif, activement.

EXCEPTIONS. — **Gentil** makes **gentiment**. **Commun, confus, diffus, exprès, importun, obscur, précis, profond**, end in **-ément** instead of **-ement**: **communément, confusément**, etc.

The adjectives **beau, nouveau, fou, mou**, being derived from **bel, nouvel, fol, mol**, are considered as ending with a consonant, and make **bellement, nouvellement, follement, mollement.**

(3) If the masculine ends in **-ant** or **-ent, nt** is changed into **-mment**, and the last two syllables are pronounced **amant: méchant, méchamment; prudent, prudemment.**

EXCEPTIONS. — The three adjectives **lent, présent, véhément**, make **lentement, présentement, véhémentement.**

EXTRACTS FROM AN ORDER REGARDING THE CHANGES IN

FRENCH SYNTAX AND ORTHOGRAPHY

Adopted by the Minister of Public Instruction, February, 1901.

Le Ministre de l'Instruction publique et des Beaux-Arts,
Vu l'article 5 de la loi du 27 février, 1880;
Vu l'arrêté du 31 juillet, 1900;
Le Conseil supérieur de l'Instruction publique entendu,

Arrête:

ARTICLE 1er. — Dans les examens ou concours dépendant du Ministère de l'Instruction publique, qui comportent des épreuves spéciales d'orthographe, il ne sera pas compté de fautes aux candidats pour avoir usé des tolérances indiquées dans la liste annexée au présent arrêté.

La même disposition est applicable au jugement des diverses compositions rédigées en langue française, dans les examens ou concours dépendant du Ministère de l'Instruction publique qui ne comportent pas une épreuve spéciale d'orthographe.

Pluriel des noms propres. — La plus grande obscurité régnant dans les règles et les exceptions enseignées dans les grammaires, on tolérera dans tous les cas que les noms propres, précédés de l'article pluriel, prennent la marque du pluriel. Ex.: *les Corneilles* comme *les Gracques*, — *des Virgiles* (exemplaires) comme *des Virgiles* (éditions).

Il en sera de même pour les noms propres de personnes désignant les œuvres de ces personnes. Ex.: *des Meissoniers*.

Pluriel des noms empruntés à d'autres langues. — Lorsque ces mots sont tout à fait entrés dans la langue française, on tolérera que le pluriel soit formé suivant la règle générale. Ex.: *des exéats* comme *des déficits*.

Noms composés. — Les mêmes noms composés se rencontrent aujourd'hui tantôt avec le trait d'union, tantôt sans trait d'union. Il est inutile de fatiguer les enfants à apprendre des contradictions que rien ne justifie. L'absence de trait d'union dans l'expression *pomme de terre* n'empêche pas cette expression de former un véritable mot composé aussi bien que *chef-d'œuvre*, par exemple. Ces mots pourront toujours s'écrire sans trait d'union.

Article partitif. — On tolérera *du, de la, des*, au lieu de *de*, partitif, devant un substantif précédé d'un adjectif. Ex.: *de* ou *du bon pain, de bonne viande* ou *de la bonne viande, de* ou *des bons fruits.*

Adjectif construit avec plusieurs substantifs. — Lorsqu'un adjectif qualificatif suit plusieurs substantifs de genres différents, on tolérera toujours que l'adjectif soit construit au masculin pluriel, quel que soit le genre du substantif le plus voisin. Ex.: *appartements et chambres meublés.* On tolérera aussi l'accord avec le substantif le plus rapproché. Ex.: *un courage et une foi nouvelle.*

Nu, demi, feu. — On tolérera l'accord de ces adjectifs avec le substantif qu'ils précèdent. Ex.: *nu* ou *nus pieds, une demi* ou *demie heure* (sans trait d'union entre les mots), *feu* ou *feue la reine.*

Adjectifs numéraux. — *Vingt, cent.* La prononciation justifie dans certains cas la règle actuelle, qui donne un pluriel à ces deux mots quand ils sont multipliés par un autre nombre. On tolérera le pluriel de *vingt* et de *cent*, même lorsque ces mots sont suivis d'un autre adjectif numéral. Ex.: *quatrevingt* ou *quatrevingts dix hommes ; quatre cent* ou *quatre cents trente hommes.*

Le trait d'union ne sera pas exigé entre le mot désignant les unités et le mot désignant les dizaines. Ex.: *dix sept.*

Dans la désignation du millésime, on tolérera *mille* au lieu de *mil*, comme dans l'expression d'un nombre. Ex.: *l'an mil huit cent quatre vingt dix* ou *l'an mille huit cents quatre vingts dix.*

Tout. — On tolérera l'accord du mot *tout* aussi bien devant les adjectifs féminins commençant par une voyelle ou par une *h* muette que devant les adjectifs féminins commençant par une consonne ou par une *h* aspirée. Ex.: *des personnes tout heureuses* ou *toutes heureuses ; l'assemblée tout entière* ou *toute entière.*

Trait d'union. — On tolérera l'absence de trait d'union entre le verbe et le pronom sujet placé après le verbe. Ex.: *est il?*

Accord du verbe quand le sujet est un mot collectif. — Toutes les fois que le collectif est accompagné d'un complément au pluriel, on tolérera l'accord du verbe avec le complément. Ex.: *un peu de connaissances suffit* ou *suffisent.*

C'est, ce sont. — Comme il règne une grande diversité d'usage relativement à l'emploi régulier de *c'est* et de *ce sont*, et que les meilleurs auteurs ont employé *c'est* pour annoncer un substantif au pluriel ou un pronom de la troisième personne au pluriel, on tolérera dans tous les cas l'emploi de *c'est* au lieu de *ce sont.* Ex.: *c'est* ou *ce sont des montagnes et des précipices.*

Participe passé. — Il n'y a rien à changer à la règle d'après laquelle le participe passé construit comme épithète doit s'accorder avec le mot qualifié, et construit comme attribut avec le verbe *être* ou un verbe intransitif doit s'accorder avec le sujet. Ex.: *des fruits gâtés ; ils sont tombés ; elles sont tombées.*

Pour le participe passé construit avec l'auxiliaire *avoir*, lorsque le participe passé est suivi soit d'un infinitif, soit

d'un participe présent ou passé, on tolérera qu'il reste invariable, quels que soient le genre et le nombre des compléments qui précèdent. Ex.: *les fruits que je me suis laissé* ou *laissés prendre ; — les sauvages que l'on a trouvé* ou *trouvés errant dans les bois.* Dans le cas où le participe passé est précédé d'une expression collective, on pourra à volonté le faire accorder avec le collectif ou avec son complément. Ex.: *la foule d'hommes que j'ai vue* ou *vus.*

***Ne* dans les propositions subordonnées.** — L'emploi de cette négation dans un très grand nombre de propositions subordonnées donne lieu à des règles compliquées, difficiles, abusives, souvent en contradiction avec l'usage des écrivains les plus classiques.

Sans faire de règles différentes suivant que les propositions dont elles dépendent sont affirmatives ou négatives ou interrogatives, on tolérera la suppression de la négation *ne* dans les propositions subordonnées dépendant de verbes ou de locutions signifiant:

Empêcher, défendre, éviter que, etc. Ex.: *défendre qu'on vienne* ou *qu'on ne vienne ;*

Craindre, désespérer, avoir peur, de peur que, etc. Ex.: *de peur qu'il aille* ou *qu'il n'aille ;*

Douter, contester, nier que, etc. Ex.: *je ne doute pas que la chose soit vraie* ou *ne soit vraie.*

On tolérera de même la suppression de cette négation après les comparatifs et les mots indiquant une comparaison : *autre, autrement que,* etc. Ex.: *l'année a été meilleure qu'on l'espérait* ou *qu'on ne l'espérait ; les résultats sont autres qu'on le croyait* ou *qu'on ne le croyait.*

De même, après les locutions *à moins que, avant que.* Ex.: *à moins qu'on accorde le pardon* ou *qu'on n'accorde le pardon.*

VOCABULARY

a, has. **il y a**, there is, there are; ago.
à, to, at, in.
abandonner, to abandon.
abeille, *f.* bee.
abhorré de, abhorred by.
abondant, -e, abundant.
d'abord, at first.
aboyer, to bark.
abreuver, to water, to soak.
absent, -e, absent.
absolument, entirely, absolutely.
s'abstenir (de), to abstain (from).
abstinence, *f.* abstinence.
abuser, to abuse, to deceive.
accepté, -e, accepted.
accepter, to accept.
accès, *m.* fit, attack.
accident, *m.* accident.
accompagner, to accompany.
accord, *m.* agreement.
accoutumer, to accustom.
accueil, *m.* reception, welcome.
accueillir, to receive, to welcome.
accuser, to accuse.
acheté, -e, bought.
acheter (à), to buy from.
achever, to finish.
acier, *m.* steel.
acquérir, to acquire.
s'acquitter, to perform.
acte, *m.* act.
actif, active, active.
action, *f.* engagement, action.

a, an, un, une.
to be able, pouvoir.
about, environ, près de.
around, autour de.
absent, absent, -e.
absolutely, absolument.
to abstain, s'abstenir (de).
absurd, absurde.
abundant, abondant, -e.
to accept, accepter.
to accompany, accompagner.
according to, selon.
on account of, à cause de.
to accuse, accuser.
to accustom, habituer.
to act, agir.
active, actif, active.
acute, aigu, -ë.

adjectif, *m.* adjective.
admettre, to admit.
admirer, to admire.
adresse, *f.* address.
adresser, to send to. **s'adresser (à)**, to address.
adverbe, *m.* adverb.
adversité, *f.* adversity.
affaire, *f.* affair, matter.
affliger, to afflict, to distress.
affreux, -se, frightful.
afin de, in order to (*with infin.*).
afin que, so that (*with subjunc.*).
Afrique, *f.* Africa.
âge, *m.* age. **moyen âge**, Middle Ages.
âgé, -e, old, aged.
agi, behaved.
agir, to act, to behave.
agneau, *m.* lamb.
agréable, pleasant, agreeable.
aide, *f.* help.
aïeul, *m.* grandfather; **aïeuls**, *m.* grandfathers; **aïeux**, *m.* ancestors.
aigu, aiguë, sharp, acute.
aiguille, *f.* needle.
ailleurs, elsewhere. **d'ailleurs**, besides.
aimable, amiable, kind.
aimer, to like, to love. **aimer mieux**, to prefer.
aîné, -e, elder, oldest.
ainsi, thus, so.
aise, bien aise, glad.
allé, -e, gone.
allécher, to allure.
Allemagne, *f.* Germany.
allemand, -e, German.
aller, to go.
allons! come!
allumer, to light, to kindle.
allumette, *f.* match.
almanach, *m.* almanac.

---

address, adresse, *f.*
to address, adresser, s'adresser à.
to admire, admirer. **to — one's self** *or* **each other**, s'admirer.
to admit, admettre.
adverb, adverbe, *m.*
to advise, conseiller.
affair, affaire, *f.*
to affirm, affirmer.
to be afraid, avoir peur, craindre.
Africa, l'Afrique, *f.*
after, après.
afternoon, après-midi, *f.*
afterwards, ensuite.
again, encore, de nouveau.
against, contre.
age, âge, *m.*
aged, âgé, -e.
agitated, ému, -e.
ago, il y a.
agreeable, aimable, agréable.
ale, bière, *f.*
all, tout, -e, tous, toutes. **not at all**, pas du tout, point.
to allow, permettre.
almost, presque.
alone, seul, -e.
already, déjà.
also, aussi.

alors, then, at that time.
les Alpes, *f.* the Alps.
ambition, *f.* ambition.
âme, *f.* soul, spirit.
amener, to bring (*a person*).
américain, **-e**, American.
Amérique, *f.* America.
ami, *m.*, **amie**, *f.* friend.
amitié, *f.* friendship.
amusant, **-e**, amusing.
amuser, to amuse. **s'amuser**, to enjoy one's self.
amusement, *m.* fun.
an, *m.* year.
ananas, *m.* pineapple.
ancien, **ancienne**, old, ancient.
anglais, **-e**, English.
Angleterre, *f.* England.
animal, *m.* animal.
animé, **-e**, animated.
année, *f.* year. **l'année dernière**, *f.* last year.
annoncer, to announce.
août, *m.* August.
apercevoir, to perceive.
apoplexie, *f.* apoplexy.
appareil, *m.* form, display.
appartement, *m.* rooms.
appartenir, to belong.
appeler, to call, to summon. **s'appeler**, to call one's self, to be called.
appétit, *m.* appetite.
appliqué, **-e**, diligent.
s'appliquer, to apply one's self.
apporté, **-e**, brought.
apporter, to bring.
apportez-moi, bring me.
apprendre, to learn, to inform.
appris, **-e**, learnt.
approbation, *f.* approbation.
s'approcher de, to go up to, to come near.
approuver, to approve.
appui, *m.* support.
appuyer, to support, to rest on.

---

although, quoique, bien que.
always, toujours.
ambition, ambition, *f.*
America, l'Amérique, *f.*
American, américain, **-e.**
amiable, aimable.
among, parmi.
to amuse, amuser.
amusing, amusant, **-e.**
an, un, une.
ancestor, aïeul, *plur.* aïeux.
ancient, ancien, **-ne.**
and, et.
anecdote, anecdote, *f.*
anger, colère, *f.*
angry, fâché, rageur, **-euse.** **to get angry**, se fâcher.
animal, animal, *m.*; bête, *f.*
to announce, annoncer.
answer, réponse, *f.*
to answer, répondre (**à**).
any, du, de la, de l', des; en.
any one, quelqu'un.
anything, quelque chose.
anywhere, quelque part.
apiece, la pièce.
to appear, sembler, paraître.
appetite, appétit, *m.*
apple, pomme, *f.*

après, after, afterwards (*time only*). **après-demain**, the day after to-morrow. **après-midi**, *f.* afternoon.
arbre, *m.* tree.
architecte, *m.* architect.
ardemment, eagerly.
ardoise, *f.* slate.
argent, *m.* money, silver.
argument, *m.* argument.
Aristote, *m.* Aristotle.
arracher, to tear out, to pull up.
arrêter, to stop.
arrivé, -e, arrived.
arrivée, *f.* arrival.
arriver, to arrive, to happen.
arroser, to water.
article, *m.* article. — **défini**, definite article; — **indéfini**, indefinite article.
artillerie, *f.* artillery.
Asie, *f.* Asia.
assemblée, *f.* assembly, meeting.
asseoir, to seat. **s'asseoir**, to sit down.
assez, enough; rather, somewhat.
assiette, *f.* plate.
assigner, to assign.
assis -e, seated, sitting.
assister à, to be present at.
assurer, to affirm, to maintain.
atelier, *m.* workshop, studio.
attaquer, to attack.
attendre, to wait (for); expect. **se faire —**, to be long in coming.
attentif, attentive, attentive.
attention, *f.* attention, notice.

---

to approve, approuver, trouver bon.
April, avril, *m.*
architect, architecte, *m.*
architecture, architecture, *f.*
arm, bras, *m.*
arm-chair, fauteuil, *m.*
army, armée, *f.*
arrival, arrivée, *f.*
to arrive, arriver.
arrived, arrivé, -e.
article, article, *m.*
artist, artiste, *m. or f.*
as, comme. **as . . . as**, aussi . . . que. **as for**, quant à. **as many, as much**, autant. **as soon as**, dès que, aussitôt que. **as usual**, comme à l'ordinaire.
ashamed, honteux, -se. **to be —**, avoir honte.
Asia, l'Asie, *f.*
to ask, to ask for, demander. **to — back**, redemander. **to — pardon**, demander pardon à.
to assassinate, assassiner.
to assure, assurer.
astonishing, étonnant, -e.
at, à. **at last**, enfin. **at once**, tout de suite. **at present**, à présent.
to be attached to, se tenir à.
to attack, attaquer.
to attend to, se mêler de; soigner.
attention, attention, *f.*; (*good care*), bons soins, *m.*

attentivement, attentively.
attirer, to attract; to drag.
attraper, to catch.
au, to the, at the. **au moins**, at the least.
aucun, -e, any.
audace, *f.* audacity.
au-devant, before.
aujourd'hui, to-day.
auparavant (*adv.*), before.
auquel, à laquelle, auxquels, auxquelles, to which, to whom.
aussi, also, as; *at beginning of a clause*, therefore, and so.
aussitôt, immediately, at once.
aussitôt que, as soon as.
autant, as much, as many.
auteur, *m.* author.
automne, *m.* autumn.
autre, other.
autrefois, formerly.
autrement, otherwise.
Autriche, *f.* Austria.
autrichien, *m.* **-enne**, *f.* an Austrian.
aux, to the, at the.
il y avait, there was, there were.
avaler, to swallow.
plus avancé, better off.
avancement, *m.* promotion.
avancer, to advance.
avant (*prep. of time*), before. **avant-hier**, the day before yesterday.
avec, with.
avenue, *f.* avenue.
avertir, to warn, to notify.
aveugle, blind.
avocat, *m.* lawyer.
avoir, to have.
avouer, to confess, to admit.
avril, *m.* April.
ayant, having.

bagage, *m.* luggage.
bague, *f.* ring.
baisser, to stoop, to lower.
bal, *m.* ball, dance, party.
balai, *m.* broom.
balayer, to sweep.
balbutier, to stammer.
balle, *f.* ball, bullet.
balustrade, *f.* railing.
banane, *f.* banana.

---

attentive, attentif, -ve.
audacity, audace, *f.*
August, août, *m.*
aunt, tante, *f.*
Austria, l'Autriche, *f.*
Austrian, autrichien, -ne.
author, écrivain, auteur, *m.*
autumn, automne, *m.*
avenue, avenue, *f.*
to avoid, éviter.
bad, mauvais, -e; vilain, -e. **bad boy**, mauvais sujet, *m.*
badly, mal.
bag, sac, *m.* **travelling —**, sac de nuit.
baggage, bagage, *m.*
baker, boulanger, *m.*
ball, balle, *f.* (*plaything*); **bal**, *m.* (*dancing party*).
banana, banane, *f.*

banc, *m.* bench.
bas, basse, low. **au bas**, at the foot.
bataille, *f.* battle.
bataillon, *m.* battalion.
bateau, *m.* boat. **bateau à vapeur**, steamer.
bâtir, to build.
bâton, *m.* stick.
batterie, *f.* battery.
battre, to beat, to flap. **se battre**, to fight.
battu, -e, beaten.
beau, bel, belle, beautiful, fine, handsome.
beaucoup, much, many, a great deal, plenty.
beau-frère, *m.* brother-in-law.
bec, *m.* beak.
Belgique, *f.* Belgium.
belle-sœur, *f.* sister-in-law.
benin, -igne, benign, kindly.
besogne, *f.* task, job.
besoin (avoir), to be in need, to need.
bête, *f.* beast, animal.

---

barber, coiffeur, *m.*
bargain, marché, *m.*
to bargain for, marchander.
to bark, aboyer.
barn, grange, *f.*
basket, panier, *m.*; corbeille, *f.*
battle, bataille, f.
to be, être. (*health*), se porter, aller. — **well**, se porter bien. — **ill**, se porter mal. — **afraid**, avoir peur. — **ashamed**, avoir honte. — **cold**, avoir froid. — **hungry**, avoir faim. — **off**, s'en aller. — **right**, avoir raison. — **sleepy**, avoir sommeil. — **thirsty**, avoir soif. — **in want**, avoir besoin. — **warm**, avoir chaud. — **wrong**, avoir tort.
bear, ours, *m.*
to bear, porter.
beast, bête, *f.*
to beat, battre.
beautiful, beau, belle.
because, parce que. **because of**, à cause de.
to become, devenir.
become (*part.*), devenu, -e.
bed, lit. *m.* **to go to —**, se coucher.
bee, abeille, *f.*
been, été.
beer, bière, *f.*
before (*prep. of time*), avant; (*prep. of place*), devant, en présence de; (*adv. of time*), auparavant; (*conj.*), avant que; (*followed by an infin.*), avant de, avant que de.
to begin, commencer, se mettre à.
beginning, commencement, *m.*
to behave, agir.
behind (*prep. of place*), derrière.
to believe, croire.
Belgium, la Belgique.
to belong, appartenir, être à.
bench, banc, *m.*
benign, bénin, -igne.

bête (*adj.*), stupid.
beurre, *m.* butter.
bévue, *f.* blunder.
bibliothèque, *f.* library.
bien, well, very, a great many, most; much, quite; indeed. **eh bien!** well! **bien aise**, glad.
bientôt, soon.
bière, *f.* beer.
bijou, *m.* jewel.
billet, *m.* note.
bise, *f.* north wind.
blâmer, to blame.
blanc, blanche, white.
blé, *m.* wheat.
blessé, -e, wounded.
blesser, to wound.
blessure, *f.* wound.
bleu, -e, blue.
bœuf, *m.* ox.
boire, to drink.
bois, *m.* wood, grove.
boîte, *f.* box.
boiter, to limp, to walk lame.
bombe, *f.* bomb.
bon, bonne, good, kind.
bonheur, *m.* happiness, pleasure.
bonhomme, *m.* fellow, "little man."
bonne, *f.* maid, servant, nursemaid.
bonté, *f.* goodness.
bord, *m.* edge, bank, shore. **au bord de la mer**, at the coast.
bottine, *f.* boot.

---

besides, d'ailleurs.
best (*adj.*), le meilleur; (*adv.*), le mieux.
better (*adj.*), meilleur; (*adv.*), mieux.
better off, plus avancé.
to be better (*health*), se porter mieux, aller mieux. **to be worth more**, valoir mieux.
to betray, trahir. **to — one's self**, se trahir.
between, entre.
to bid, commander, dire.
big, gros, -se.
bill, billet, *m.*
billion, billion, *m.*; milliard, *m.*
bird, oiseau, *m.*
birthday, fête, *f.*, fête de naissance.
to bite, mordre.
bitter, amer, -ère.
black, noir, -e.
blackboard, tableau noir, *m.*
to blame, blâmer. — **one's self** *or* **each other**, se blâmer.
to bless, bénir.
blind (*adj.*), aveugle.
blue, bleu, -e.
to blush, rougir.
boarding-school, pension, *f.*
boat, bateau, *m.*
body, corps, *m.*
boldness, audace, *f.*
bonnet, chapeau, *m.*
book, livre, *m.*
bookseller, libraire, *m.*
boot, bottine, *f.*
born, né, -e.

bouche, *f.* mouth.
boucle d'oreille, *f.* earring.
boulanger, *m.* baker.
bouquet, *m.* bouquet.
bourgeois, *m.* shopkeeper.
bourse, *f.* purse. **la Bourse**, stock exchange.
bout, *m.* end, extremity.
bouteille, *f.* bottle.
bouton, *m.* button.
bracelet, *m.* bracelet.
bras, *m.* arm.
brave, brave; honest.
braver, to brave, to defy.
brebis, *f.* sheep, ewe.
bref, brève, short, brief.
Brésil, *m.* Brazil.
Bretagne, *f.* Brittany.
bride, *f.* bridle.
broche, *f.* brooch.
brosse, *f.* brush.
brosser, to brush.
brouillard, *m.* fog.
bruit, *m.* noise, report, rumor.
brûler, to burn.
brun, -e, brown.
brusquement, rudely, bruskly.
bruyant, -e, noisy, boisterous.
bu, -e, drunk.

ça (*a familiar contraction for* **cela**), that. **ça et là**, here and there.
cabaret, *m.* tavern.
caché, -e, hidden.
cacher, to hide, to conceal.
cadeau, *m.* present.
cadet, -te, younger, junior.
café, *m.* coffee.

---

to borrow, emprunter (à).
bottle, bouteille, *f.*
bought, **acheté, -e**.
bouquet, bouquet, *m.*
box, boîte, *f.*
boy, garçon, *m.*
bracelet, bracelet, *m.*
Brazil, le Brésil.
bread, pain, *m.*
breadth, largeur, *f.*
to break, casser.
to breakfast, déjeuner.
breast, poitrine, *f.*; sein, *m.*
bridge, pont, *m.*
brief, bref, brève.
to bring, amener, apporter. **bring me**, apportez-moi. **to bring back**, ramener.
broad, large.
brooch, broche, *f.*
broom, balai, *m.*
brother, frère, *m.*
brother-in-law, beau-frère, *m.*
brown, brun, -e.
to brush, brosser.
to build, bâtir.
building, édifice, *m.*; bâtiment, *m.*
business, affaires, *f. plur.*
busy, occupé, -e.
but, mais. **but for**, sans.
butter, beurre, *m.*
button, bouton, *m.*
to buy, acheter.
by, par. **by far**, de beaucoup. **by that road**, par cette route.

cage, *f.* cage.
cahier, *m.* copy-book, note-book.
caisse, *f.* box.
caisse d'épargne, savings-bank.
calèche, *f.* carriage.
calme, calm.
camarade, *m.* comrade.
campagne, *f.* country; campaign. **à la campagne**, in the country.
canadien, -enne, Canadian.
canif, *m.* penknife.
canne, *f.* cane.
caparaçonné, caparisoned.
capitaine, *m.* captain.
capitale, *f.* capital.
captiver, to captivate; to take up.
car (*conj.*), for.
carafe, *f.* carafe, decanter.
cargaison, *f.* cargo.
carré, -e, square.
cas, *m.* case, circumstance. **en tout cas**, at any rate.
casque, *m.* helmet.
casser, to break.
cathédrale, *f.* cathedral.
cause, *f.* cause. **à — de**, on account of, because of.
causer, to talk, to chat.
causeur, talkative.
ce, cet, cette, this, that. **ce qui, ce que**, what (*rel.*). **ce sont**, they are, those are.
ceci, this (thing).
céder, to yield, to give way *or* place. **— le pas**, to give precedence.
cela, that (thing).
célèbre (*adj.*), celebrated, famous.
célébrer, to celebrate.
celle, *f.* that, this. **celle-ci**, this, this one. **celle-là**, that, that one.

---

cabbage, chou, *m.*
cage, cage, *f.*
cake, gâteau, *m.*
to call, appeler. **to — one's self**, s'appeler. **to — on**, passer chez.
calm, tranquille.
can (*to be able*), pouvoir; (*to know how*), savoir.
Canada, le Canada.
Canadian, canadien, -enne.
cane, canne, *f.*
cannon shot, coup de canon, *m.*
to captivate, captiver.
carafe, carafe, *f.*
care, soin, *m.* **good care**, bons soins.
to care about, se soucier de.
carpenter, charpentier, *m.*
carpet, tapis, *m.*
carriage, voiture, *f.*
to carry, porter. **to carry off**, emporter, remporter.
case, cas, *m.*
cat, chat, *m.*; chatte, *f.*
to catch cold, s'enrhumer.
to cease to, cesser de.
to celebrate, célébrer.
celebrated, *adj.* célèbre.
cent, sou, *m.*

celles, *f.* those, these. **celles-ci**, these. **celles-là**, those.
celui, *m.* that, this. **celui qui**, he who. **celui-ci**, the latter, this, this one. **celui-là**, that, that one.
cent, hundred.
centime, *m.* centime, *about one-fifth of a cent.*
cependant, however, meanwhile.
certain, **-e**, certain.
certainement, certainly.
ces (*adj.*), these, those.
cesser, to cease.
c'est, he is, she is, it is.
cet, **cette**. *See* **ce**.
ceux, *m.* those, these. **ceux-ci**, these, the latter. **ceux-là**, those, the former.
chacun, **-e**, each, every one.
chagrin, *m.* grief, trouble.
chagrin, **-e**, sad, vexed, sorry.
chaîne, *f.* chain.
chaise, *f.* chair.
chaleur, *f.* warmth, heat.
chambellan, *m.* chamberlain.
chambre, *f.* room.
champ, *m.* field. — **de course**, race-course.
changement, *m.* change.
changer, to change.
chanson, *f.* song.
chanter, to sing.
chapeau, *m.* hat.
chapelle, *f.* chapel.
chaque, each, every.
charger, to load, to charge.
Charles, *m.* Charles.
charmant, **-e**, charming.
charmé, **-e**, delighted.
charpentier, *m.* carpenter.
chasse, *f.* hunt.
chasser, to drive, to hunt.
chasseur, *m.* huntsman.
chat, *m.* **chatte**, *f.* cat.
chaud, **-e**, hot, warm. **avoir chaud**, to be warm.
chauffer, to warm.
chemin, *m.* way, road.
cher, **chère**, dear.
cherché, **-e**, looked for, sought.
chercher, to look for, to seek, to try to find.
Chersonèse, *f.* Chersonese.
chétif, **-ive**, paltry.
cheval, *m.* horse.
cheveux, *m. pl.* the hair.
chez, at, in, *or* to, the house of.
chien, *m.* dog.

---

certain, certain, **-e**.
certainly, certainement.
chain, chaîne, *f.*
chair, chaise, *f.*
chalk, craie, *f.*
to change, changer.
to charge, accuser de.
Charles, Charles, *m.*
charming, charmant, **-e**.
chat, causer.
cheap, à bon marché.
cheek, joue, *f.*
cheer, **three cheers!** vive!
cheerful, gai, **-e**.
cheerfully, gaiement.
cheese, fromage, *m.*

chiffre, *m.* number.
Chili, *m.* Chili.
Chine, *f.* China.
choisi, -e, chosen.
choisir, to choose.
choix, *m.* choice.
chose, *f.* thing. **autre —**, *f.* something else.
choucroute, *f.* sour-crout.
ci, here.
ciel, *m.* heaven, sky.
cigale, *f.* grasshopper.
cinq, five.
cinquante, fifty.
cinquième, fifth.
circonstance, *f.* circumstance.
cirque, *m.* circus.
ciseaux, *m. pl.* scissors.
citadin, *m.* townsman.
citoyen, *m.* citizen.
civil, -e, polite.
clair, *m.* light. **clair de lune**, moonlight.
clair, -e (*adj.*), clear, obvious.
clameur, *f.* noise.
classe, *f.* class. **salle de —**, classroom.
clé, *f.* key.
clef, *f.* key.
clergé, *m.* clergy.
clou, *m.* nail.
cœur, *m.* heart, courage. **de tout mon —**, with all my heart.
coiffeur, *m.* barber.
coin, *m.* corner.
colère, *f.* anger, passion.
colonel, *m.* colonel.

---

chest, poitrine, *f.*
child, enfant, *m. or f.*
chin, menton, *m.*
China, la Chine.
choice, choix, *m.*
to choose, choisir.
chosen, choisi, -e.
Christmas, Noël, *m.*
church, église, *f.*
circus, cirque, *m.*
city, ville, *f.*
city hall, hôtel de ville, *m.*
to claim, réclamer.
class, classe, *f.*
classroom, salle de classe, *f.*
clean, *adj.* net, nette.
to clean, nettoyer.
clever, habile; malin, maligne.
to close, fermer.
closed, fermé, -e.
cloth, drap, *m.*
clothes for the wash, linge, *m.*
coast, bord (*m.*) de la mer.
coat, habit, *m.*
coffee, café, *m.*
cold, froid. **to be —**, avoir froid. **to have a —**, être enrhumé. **to take —**, s'enrhumer.
to collect, ramasser.
collection, collection, *f.*
color, couleur, *f.*
to comb, peigner.
to come, venir; (*part.*), venu, -e. **— back**, revenir; (*part.*), revenu, -e. **— in**, entrer. **— down**, descendre; (*part.*), descendu, -e.

combattre, to fight.
combien, how much, how many. **combien de temps**, how long.
comédien, *m.* actor.
comique, comical.
commandant, *m.* commander.
commandé, **-e**, ordered.
commander, to order, to bid.
comme, as, like, how. — **à l'ordinaire**, as usual.
commencer, to begin, to commence.
comment, how, what.
commettre, to commit.
commission, *f.* errand.
compagne, *f.* comrade.
compagnon, *m.* companion.
complet, **-plète**, complete.
complètement, completely.
composé, **-e**, composed.
comprendre, to understand.
compte, *m.* account.
compter, to count, to intend.
concevoir, to conceive, to plan.
concourir, to take part.
condition, *f.* position.
conducteur, *m.* driver, guide, conductor.
conduire, to take to; to drive. **se —**, to behave.
conduite, *f.* conduct.
confiance, *f.* confidence.
confier, to trust, to intrust.
se confondre, to be lost in, to become confused.
confus, **-e**, confused.
congédier, to dismiss.
connaissance, *f.* acquaintance, knowledge.
connaître, to know, to judge.
conquérir, to conquer.
conseil, *m.* advice; council.
conseiller, to advise, to recommend.
consentir, to consent.
constamment, constantly.

---

come! voyons! allons!
to command, commander.
to commence, commencer, se mettre à.
to commit, commettre.
committee, comité, *m.*
common, ordinaire.
company, compagnie, *f.*
to compel, contraindre.
to complain, se plaindre.
complete, complet, complète.
to complete, achever, terminer.
completely, complètement.
comrade, camarade, *m. or f.*; ami, *m.*
to conceal, cacher.
to conceive, concevoir.
to concern, regarder.
to condemn, condamner.
condition, condition, *f.*
conduct, conduite, *f.*
to confess, avouer.
conscience, conscience, *f.*
to consent, consentir (à), vouloir bien.
to consider, trouver.
Constantinople, Constantinople, *m.*
constantly, constamment.
construction, construction, *f.*

consulter, to consult.
content, **-e**, satisfied, pleased.
conter, to relate.
continuellement, continually.
continuer, to continue.
contraindre, to compel.
contraire, contrary, reverse. **au —**, on the contrary.
contre, against, contrary to.
convaincre, to convince.
convaincu, **-e**, convinced.
convenable, becoming, proper.
convenablement, properly.
convenir, to agree. **il convient**, it is proper.
convenu, **-e**, appointed, agreed upon.
conversation, *f.* conversation.
corail, *m.* coral.
corbeau, *m.* crow.
corbeille, *f.* basket.
cordialité, *f.* cordiality.
Cordoue, *f.* Cordova.
corps, *m.* body.
correspondance, *f.* correspondence.
corriger, to correct, improve.
corrompre, to taint.
côte, *f.* coast.
côté, *m.* side. **à —**, near, on one side. **de l'autre —**, on the other side.
cou, *m.* neck.
se coucher, to go to bed, to lie down.
coude, *m.* elbow.
couleur, *f.* color.
coup, *m.* shot, blow, stroke. **— de canon**, cannon-shot. **— de pied**, kick. **tout à —**, suddenly.
coupable, guilty.
coupé, **-e**, cut.
couper, to cut, to cut off
cour, *f.* court, court-yard, yard.
courage, *m.* courage.
courant, *m.* current. **courant d'air**, draught.
courir, to run.
couronner, to crown.
cours, *m.* course.

---

contented, content, **-e**.
continent, continent, *m.*
continually, continuellement.
to contradict, contredire.
contrary, contraire, *m.* **on the —**, au contraire.
conversation, conversation, *f.*
cook, cuisinière, *f.*
cool, frais, fraîche.
copper, cuivre, *m.*
copy-book, cahier, *m.*
cordiality, cordialité, *f.*
corner, coin, *m.*
to correct, corriger.
to cost, coûter.
to cough, tousser.
to count, compter.
country, pays, *m.*; *(in distinction from the town)*, campagne, *f.* **in the country**, à la campagne.
courage, courage, *m.*, cœur, *m.*
course, cours, *m.*
court, cour, *f.*

course, *f.* errand; race.
court, -e, short.
courtisan, *m.* courtier.
cousin, *m.*, -e, *f.* cousin.
couteau, *m.* knife.
coûter, to cost.
coutume, *f.* habit. **avoir —**, to be accustomed.
couturière, *f.* dressmaker.
couvert, -e (**de**), covered (with).
couvrir, to cover.
craie, *f.* chalk.
craindre, to fear.
crainte, *f.* fear.
crayon, *m.* pencil.
crédule, credulous.
créer, to create.
crème, *f.* cream.
crever, to burst.
cri, *m.* cry.
crier, to cry, to cry out, to shout. **s'écrier**, to exclaim.
crime, *m.* crime.
croire, to believe.
cruel, -le, cruel.
cruellement, cruelly.
cueillir, to gather, to harvest.
cuiller, *f.* spoon.
cuir, *m.* leather.
cuirasse, *f.* cuirass.
cuisine, *f.* kitchen.
cuisinière, *f.* cook.
cuivre, *m.* copper.
curieux, -se, curious.

dame, *f.* lady.
Danemark, *m.* Denmark.
dans, in.
danse, *f.* dance.
date, *f.* date.
davantage, more.
de, of, from, in, with, by; some, any; than.
dé, *m.* thimble.
débarrasser, to rid.
se débattre, to struggle.
débiter, to recite.
debout, standing up.
déboutonner, to unbutton.

---

courtier, courtisan, *m.*
cousin, cousin, *m.*, cousine, *f.*
cow, vache, *f.*
cream, crème, *f.*
to crown, couronner.
cruel, cruel, -le.
to cry, crier; (*to weep*), pleurer.
cunning, malin, maligne.
cup, tasse, *f.*
to cure, guérir.
to curse, maudire.
to cut, couper; **cut down**, abattre.
to dance, danser.
to dare, oser.
date, date, *f.*
daughter, fille, *f.*
day, jour, *m.*, journée, *f.*, **every —**, tous les jours. **all —**, toute la journée. **— before yesterday**, avant-hier, *m.*
to dazzle, éblouir.
dead, mort, -e.
deaf, sourd, -e.
a great deal, beaucoup, bien.
dear, cher, chère.

décembre, *m.* December.
décevoir, to deceive.
décider, to decide; persuade.
décoration, *f.* decoration.
décourager, to discourage.
découvert, -e, discovered.
découvrir, to uncover. **se —**, to take off one's hat.
dédire, to contradict.
défaut, *m.* fault, defect.
défendre, to forbid. **se —**, to defend one's self *or* each other; to deny one's self.
défendu, -e, forbidden.
définitivement, positively.
dégoût, *m.* dislike.
déjà, already.
déjeuner, *m.* breakfast.
déjeuner, *v.* to breakfast.
de l', **de la**, of the; some, any.
délicieux, -se, delicious, delightful.
demain, *m.* to-morrow.
demande, *f.* inquiry.
demander, to ask (for). **se —**, to ask one's self, to wonder.
démarche, *f.* step.
déménager, to move.
demeure, *f.* dwelling.
demeuré, -e, lived.
demeurer, to remain, to live, to dwell.
demi, -e, **à demi**, half. **demi-douzaine**, *f.* half-dozen. **demi-livre**, *f.* half-pound.
demoiselle, *f.* young lady, unmarried lady.
démontrer, to prove.
dent, *f.* tooth.
dentelle, *f.* lace.
dentiste, *m.* dentist.
départ, *m.* departure.
dépêche, *f.* despatch.
dépêcher, to hasten.
dépendre de, to depend upon.
dépens, *m. pl.* expense.
déplaire, to displease.
déposer, to lay down.
dépourvu, -e, unprepared.
depuis, since, for, from. **depuis quand**, how long.
déranger, to disturb.
dernier, **dernière**, last; utmost, worst.
derrière, behind (*of place*).
des, of the, from the; some, any.

---

death, mort, *f.*
decanter, carafe, *f.*
to deceive, tromper, décevoir.
December, décembre, *m.*
to decide, se décider.
decidedly, décidément.
to declare, déclarer.
deep, profond, -e.
defect, défaut, *m.*
to defend, défendre.
definite, defini, -e.
to delay, tarder.
delicious, délicieux, -se.
Denmark, le Danemark.
dentist, dentiste, *m.*
to depart, partir.
departed, parti, -e.
to depend upon, dépendre de.
depth, profondeur, *f.*
to descend, descendre.

désagréable, disagreeable.
descendre, to come down, to let out, get out.
déserter, to desert.
déserteur, *m.* deserter.
désirer, to wish.
désobéir, to disobey.
désolé, **-e**, grieved.
désormais, in future, henceforth.
dès que, as soon as.
dessin, *m.* design, drawing.
dessus, upon, above.
détail, *m.* detail.
détaler, to pack up.
déterminer, to determine.
détester, to detest.
détruire, to destroy.
deuil, *m.* mourning.
deux, two.
deuxième, second.
devant, before (*of place*).
devenir, to become.
devenu, **-e**, become.
deviner, to guess.
devoir, *m.* duty.
devoir, *v.* to owe, must.
diable, *m.* devil.
diamant, *m.* diamond.
dictée, *f.* dictation.
dictionnaire, *m.* dictionary.
Dieu, God, the Lord; the heavens.
différent, **-e**, different.
difficile, difficult.
difficulté, *f.* difficulty.
digne, worthy.
dignitaire, *m.* dignitary.
dimanche, *m.* Sunday.
dimensions, *f.* dimensions.
dîner, *m.* dinner.
dîner, *v.* to dine.
dire, to say.
diriger, to direct.
discret, **discrète**, discreet.
discussion, *f.* discussion.
disgrâce, *f.* displeasure.
disparaître, to disappear.
disparu, **-e**, disappeared.
disposé, **-e**, inclined.

---

to deserve, mériter (de).
to desire, désirer.
desk, pupitre, *m.*
detail, détail, *m.*
to detest, détester.
diamond, diamant, *m.*
dictionary, dictionnaire, *m.*
did. *See* do.
to die, mourir.
differently, autrement.
difficult, difficile.
difficulty, difficulté, *f.*
diligent, appliqué, -e.
dimensions, dimensions, *f.*
to dine, dîner.
dining-room, salle à manger, *f.*
dinner, dîner, *m.*
dirty, sale.
disapprove, trouver mauvais.
to discover, découvrir.
discussion, discussion, *f.*
to disobey, désobéir (à).
displeasure, déplaisir, *m.*, disgrâce, *f.*
disposition, caractère, *m.*
distance, distance, *f.*

dit, -e, said.
divin, -e, divine.
dix, ten.
dix-huit, eighteen.
dixième, tenth.
dix-neuf, nineteen.
dix-sept, seventeen.
docteur, *m.* doctor.
doigt, *m.* finger.
domestique, *m. or f.* servant.
dommage, *m.* harm, injury. **c'est dommage**, that is too bad.
don, *m.* gift.
donc, then, so, therefore.
donné, -e, given.
donner, to give, to ascribe. **donner dans**, to come into; to strike.
donnez, give.
dont, of which, of whom, whose.
dormi, slept.
dormir, to sleep.
doué, -e, gifted.
douleur, *f.* grief, pain.
douloureux, -se, painful.
doute, *m.* doubt. **sans —**, doubtless, of course.
douter, to doubt.
doux, **douce**, sweet, gentle.
douzaine, *f.* dozen.
douze, twelve.
douzième, twelfth.
drap, *m.* cloth.
droit, *m.* right.
droit, -e (*adj.*), straight.
droite, *f.* right hand. **à droite**, on *or* to the right.
droiture, *f.* uprightness.
drôle, *m.* rogue, scamp.
drôle (*adj.*), odd, queer.
du, of the, from the; some, any.

---

to disturb, déranger.
to do, faire, (*of one's health*) se porter. **— one's hair**, se coiffer. **to do without**, se passer de. (*As an auxiliary.*) He knows better than I do, Il le sait mieux que moi. (*In urging, rendered by* donc *or* prier.) Do speak to me! Parlez-moi donc! (*In replying.*) [Did he say so?] He did. Mais oui. [He came yesterday.] Did he? Vraiment?
doctor, médecin, *m.*
dog, chien, *m.*
doll, poupée, *f.*
domestic, domestique, *m. or f.*
done, fait, -e.
door, porte, *f.*
to doubt, douter.
dozen, douzaine, *f.*
draught, courant d'air, *m.*
drawer, tiroir, *m.*
drawing-room, salon, *m.*
dress, robe, *f.*
dressed, mis, mise; habillé, -e.
dressmaker, couturière, *f.*
to drink, boire.
to drive, aller en voiture.
drunk, bu, -e.
dry, sec, sèche.

dû, **due**, due, must, been obliged.
duel, *m.* duel.
duquel, **de laquelle**, **desquels**, **desquelles**, of which.
dur, **-e**, hard.
durer, to last.

eau, *f.* water.
échapper, to escape.
écharpe, *f.* scarf.
échouer, to fail.
éclat, *m.* brightness, lustre.
éclater, to burst.
école, *f.* school.
écossais, **-e**, Scotch, Scotchman.
Écosse, *f.* Scotland.
écouter, to listen.
écran, *m.* screen.
s'écrier to, exclaim.
écrire, to write.
écrit, **-e**, written.
écriture, *f.* handwriting.
écrivain, *m.* writer.
écurie, *f.* stable.
édifice, *m.* building.
Edimbourg, *m.* Edinburgh.
édition, *f.* edition.
effet, effect, fact, deed. **en —**, truly, indeed.
effrayer, to frighten. **s'effrayer**, to be frightened.
effrontément, impudently.
égal, **-e**, equal. **cela m'est égal**, it is all the same to me.
égarer, to mislay. **s'égarer**, to lose one's way.
église, *f.* church.
égorger, to cut the throat of.
égratignure, *f.* scratch.
eh bien! well!
élaboré, **-e**, contrived.

---

in a duel, en duel.
dumb, muet, muette.
during, pendant.
dust, poussière, *f.*
Dutch, hollandais, **-e**.
duty, devoir, *m.*
to dwell, demeurer.
dying, mourant, **-e**.

each, chaque, *adj.*, chacun, *pron.*
each other, l'un l'autre.
to earn, gagner.
ear-rings, boucles d'oreilles, *f.*
earth, terre, *f.*
easily, facilement.
easy, facile; (*calm*), tranquille.
to eat, manger.
eaten, mangé, **-e**.
edge, bord, *m.*
Edinburgh, Edimbourg, *m.*
effect, effet, *m.* **in —** (*in reality*), en effet.
effort, effort, *m.*
egg, œuf, *m.*
eight, huit.
eighteen, dix-huit.
eighth, huitième.
eighty, quatre-vingts.
either, l'un ou l'autre; (*after negation*), non plus.
elbow, coude, *m.*

éléphant, *m.* elephant.
élève, *m. or f.* pupil.
elle, *f.* she, her, it. **elle-même**, *f.* herself. **elles**, *f.* they, them. **elles-mêmes**, themselves.
éloigné, **-e**, distant.
embarras, *m.* perplexity.
embrasser, to embrace.
emmener, to lead away.
s'émouvoir, to be moved.
s'emparer de, to take possession of.
empêcher, to hinder, to prevent.
empereur, *m.* emperor.
empire, *m.* empire.
emplette, *f.* purchase.
employer, to employ.
emporter, to carry off.
s'empresser, to hasten.
emprunter (à), to borrow (from).
emprunteur, *m.*, **emprunteuse**, *f.* borrower.
ému, **-e**, moved, agitated.
en (*pron.*), some, any; of it, of him, of her, of them, for it; hence, thence.
en (*prep.*), in, while, at.
enchanté, **-e**, delighted.
encore, still, as yet, again; too. — **un**, another.
encourir, to incur.
encre, *f.* ink.
encrier, *m.* inkwell.
enfant, *m. or f.* child.
enfermer, to shut up.
enfin, at last.
enfler, to swell.
enlever, to carry off. **s'enlever**, to rise.
ennemi, *m.* enemy.
s'enquérir, to inquire.
s'enrhumer, to catch cold. **être enrhumé**, **-e**, to have a cold.
enseigner, to teach.
ensemble, together.
ensuite, afterwards, next.
s'ensuivre, to follow, to result.
entendre, to hear; to mean. — **dire**, to hear, to learn. **bien entendu**, of course.
enthousiasmé, carried away.
entourer, to surround.
entre, between.
entré, **-e**, entered, come in.
entreprise, *f.* undertaking.

---

elephant, éléphant, *m.*
eleven, onze.
eleventh, onzième.
elsewhere, ailleurs.
emperor, empereur, *m.*
to employ, employer.
empress, impératrice, *f.*
encourage in, encourager à.
end (*conclusion*), fin, *f.*; (*extremity*), bout, *m.*
to end, finir, achever.
enemy, ennemi, *m.*
engaged, occupé, **-e**.
England, l'Angleterre, *f.*
English, anglais, **-e**.
engraving, gravure, *f.*

entrer (dans), to go in, to enter.
entretenir, to converse, to entertain.
envers, towards.
envie, *f.* desire, fancy; envy.
envier, to envy, to begrudge.
envieux, -se, envious.
environs, *m.* neighborhood.
envoyer, to send.
épais, épaisse, thick.
épaisseur, *f.* thickness.
épaule, *f.* shoulder.
épée, *f.* sword.
épingle, *f.* pin.
époque, *f.* period.
éprouver, to feel, to experience.
épuisé, -e, exhausted.
éreinter, to break the back.
Ernest, *m.* Ernest.
erreur, *f.* mistake.
es, art (*pres. ind., 2d per. sing. of* **être**).
escalier, *m.* staircase.
espace, *m.* space.
Espagne, *f.* Spain.
espagnol, -e, Spanish.
espèce, *f.* kind, sort.
espérer, to hope, to expect.
espion, *m.* spy.
esprit, *m.* spirit, wit.
essayer, to try.
essentiel, -le, essential, material.
est, is; belongs. **n'est-ce pas?** is it not? is it? **il en fut surpris, n'est-ce pas?** he was surprised at it, wasn't he? **le train n'est pas arrivé, n'est-ce pas?** the train isn't in, is it? **je n'ai rien dit, n'est-ce pas?** I didn't say anything, did I?
est, *m.* east.
estimer, to esteem, to value highly.
et, and.
établir, to establish, to secure.
étage, *m.* story (*of a house*), floor.
étant, being.
état, *m.* condition.
les États-Unis, *m.* the United States.
été, *m.* summer.
été (*part.*), been.
éteindre, to put out.
étendard, *m.* standard.
étendre, to stretch.
étinceler, to flash.
étonner, to astonish.
étourdi, -e, heedless.
étrange, strange.
être, *m.* being.

---

to enjoy one's self, s'amuser.
enough, assez.
to enter, entrer (dans).
enterprise, entreprise, *f.*
to entreat, prier, supplier.
equal, égal, -e.
equality, égalité, *f.*
Ernest, Ernest, *m.*
error, faute, *f.*, erreur, *f.*
essential, essentiel, -elle.
to establish, établir.
even, même.
evening, soir, *m.*
event, événement, *m.*

être (*v.*), to be. **être à**, to belong to; to be busy about. **en être. Où en êtes vous?** how far have you got? **j'en suis pour mes peines**, I had my trouble for nothing. **il n'en est rien**, it's nothing of the sort. **c'est que. venez-vous? c'est que nous ne pouvons pas**, are you coming? The fact is we can't. *See* **est.**
étroit, -e, narrow.
étude, *f.* study.
étudier, to study.
eu, had.
Europe, *f.* Europe.
eux, they, them. **eux-mêmes**, themselves.
événement, *m.* event.
éventail, *m.* fan.
éventualité, *f.* contingency.
évident, -e, evident.
exactitude, *f.* punctuality.
exagérer, to exaggerate.
examiner, to examine.
excepté, except.
excuse, *f.* excuse.
excuser, to excuse.
exécuter, to execute.
exemple, *m.* example. **par —**, for instance; you don't say so!
exercice, *m.* exercise, drill.
exiger, to demand, to require, to insist upon.
expédition, *f.* expedition.
expérience, *f.* experience.
expliquer, to explain.
s'exposer, to expose one's self.
exprès, purposely.
expression, *f.* expression.
exprimer, to express.
extravagance, *f.* extravagance.
extrême, extreme.

---

ever, jamais.
every, tout, -e, tous, toutes; chaque.
everybody, tout le monde.
every one, chacun; tout le monde.
everything, tout, *m.*
everywhere, partout.
evident, évident, -e.
exactly, précisément.
to exaggerate, exagérer.
example, exemple, *m.*
excellent, excellent, -e.
to exclaim, s'écrier.
excuse, excuse, *f.*
to excuse, excuser.
exercise, exercice, *m.*, thème, *m.*
to expect (*before a noun*), attendre; (*before an infin.*), s'attendre à.
expense, dépens, *m. plur.*
experience, expérience, *f.*
to experience, éprouver.
to explain, expliquer.
to express, exprimer.
to extol, vanter, louer.
extremity, extrémité, *f*, bout, *m.*
eye, œil, *m.*; *pl.* yeux.

face, *f.* face, surface. **en face de**, opposite.
fâcher, to vex. **se —**, to get angry.
facile, easy.
facilement, easily.
façon, *f.* fashion, way.
faim, *f.* hunger. **avoir —**, to be hungry.
faire, to do, to make. **— beau (temps)**, to be fine (weather). **— le malade**, to pretend to be ill. **— dire**, to send word. **avoir beau —**, to be no use trying. **— faire**, to get *or* have done; **— bâtir**, to build. **— savoir**, to let know. **— des affaires**, to do business. **— de son mieux**, to do one's best. **ne — rien**, to make no difference.
faisan, *m.* pheasant.
fait, *m.* fact, act.
fait, *v.* does, makes.
fait (*part.*), done, made, shaped.
falloir, to be necessary, must, want.
fameux, -se, famous.
famille, *f.* family.
farine, *f.* flour.
fatigant, -e, tiresome.
fatigué, -e, tired, fatigued.
il faut, it is necessary, must.
faute, *f.* fault, offence, mistake.
fauteuil, *m.* arm-chair.
faux, fausse, false, artificial, adulterated.
favori, favorite, favorite.
feld-maréchal, *m.* field-marshal.
femme, *f.* woman, wife.
fenêtre, *f.* window.
fer, *m.* iron. **fers**, fetters. **fer blanc**, *m.* tin.
fermé, -e, shut.
fermer, to shut, to close.
fermeté, *f.* firmness.
féroce, fierce, ferocious.
festin, *m.* feast.
fête, *f.* birthday.
feu, *m.* fire.
feuille, *f.* leaf (*of book or tree*).
février, *m.* February.
fi! fie!
fidèle, faithful.
fier, fière, proud.
figure, *f.* face.
se figurer, to fancy.
fil, *m.* thread.

---

face, visage, *m.*, figure, *f.*; (*a wry face*), grimace, *f.*
to fail in respect, manquer de respect.
faithful, fidèle.
to fall, tomber; **— in with**, rencontrer; **— out**, se brouiller.
fallen, tombé, **-e.**
false, faux, fausse.
family, famille, *f.*
famous, fameux, **-se.**
fan, éventail, *m.*
to fancy, s'imaginer.
far, loin. **by far**, de beaucoup.
fast, vîte.
fat, gras, grasse.
father, père, *m.*

fille, *f.* daughter, girl.
fils, *m.* son.
fin, *f.* end. **à la —**, after all.
fini, -e, ended, finished.
finir, to finish.
fixer, to fix.
flambeau, *m.* torch.
flatter, to flatter. **se —**, to hope; to flatter one's self.
flatteur, *m.* flatterer.
flegmatiquement, calmly.
fleur, *f.* flower.
fleuve, *m.* river.
flocon, *m.* flake.
fois, *f.* time; **bien des —**, many a time.
fonction, *f.* function.
fondre, to melt. **— en larmes**, to burst into tears.
font, *v.* make.
force, *f.* strength, power.
forêt, *f.* forest.
fort, -e (*adj.*), strong, hard; (*adv.*), much, very.
fortune, *f.* fortune.
fou, fol, folle, mad, foolish.
foudre, *f.* lightning.
fouiller, to ransack.

---

fault (*defect*), **défaut**, *m.*; (*error*), **faute**, *f.*
favor, faveur, *f.*
favorite, favori, favorite.
fear, peur, *f.* **for fear of**, de crainte de, de peur de.
to fear, craindre, avoir peur.
February, février, *m.*
fellow, garçon, *m.*
ferocious, féroce.
few, peu. **a few**, quelques (*adj.*), quelques-uns (*pron.*).
fewer, moins.
field, champ, *m.*
fifteen, quinze.
fifth, cinquième.
fifty, cinquante.
to fight, se battre.
to fill, remplir.
to find, trouver; (*a thing lost*), retrouver.
fine, beau, belle.
finger, doigt, *m.*
to finish, finir, achever.
fire, feu, *m.*
first, premier, première.
fish, poisson, *m.*
to fit, aller.
fit of anger, accès (*m.*) de colère.
five, cinq.
to flatter, flatter.
flatterer, flatteur, *m.*, -euse, *f.*
flattering, flatteur, -euse.
flock, troupeau, *m.*
floor, plancher, *m.*
flour, farine, *f.*
flower, fleur, *f.*
fly, mouche, *f.*
fog, brouillard, *m.*
to follow, suivre.
foolish, fou, folle; sot, sotte.
foot, pied, *m.*
for, pour; (*during*), pendant; (*marking the beginning*), depuis; (*conj.*), car.
to forbid, défendre.
forenoon, matin, *m.*

foule, *f.* crowd.
fourchette, *f.* fork.
fourmi, *f.* ant.
fournir, to furnish.
fourrure, *f.* fur.
frais, fraîche, fresh, cool.
fraise, *f.* strawberry.
fraisier, *m.* strawberry plant.
framboise, *f.* raspberry.
franc, *m.* franc, 20 sous.
franc, franche, straightforward, frank.
français, -e, French.
France, *f.* France.
frapper, to strike.
fréquenter, to frequent.
frère, *m.* brother.
fripon, *m.* rogue.
froid, -e, cold. **avoir —**, to be cold.
froideur, *f.* coldness.
fromage, *m.* cheese.
fruit, *m.* fruit.
fruitier, -ère (*adj.*), fruit.
fumée, *f.* smoke.
fumer, to smoke.
fureur, *f.* fury. **en —**, wild.
furieux, -se, furious.
fusil, *m.* gun.

gagner, to reach, to gain.
gai, -e, cheerful, merry.
gaiement, cheerfully
ganache, *f.* blockhead.
gant, *m.* glove.

---

to forget, oublier.
to forgive, pardonner.
fork, fourchette, *f.*
formerly, autrefois.
fortnight, quinze jours, *m.*, quinzaine, *f.*
fortunate, heureux, -se.
fortune, fortune, f.
forty, quarante.
found, trouvé, -e.
four, quatre.
fourteen, quatorze.
fourth, quatrième. **a fourth**, un quart.
franc, franc, *m.*
frank, franc, franche.
free, libre.
freely, librement.
to freeze, geler.
French, français, -e.
Frenchman, Français, *m.*
fresh, frais, fraîche.
Friday, vendredi, *m.*
friend, ami, *m.*, amie, *f.*
friendship, amitié, *f.*
to frighten, effrayer.
frightful, affreux, -euse.
from, de. **— me**, de ma part. **— him**, de sa part.
fruit, fruit, *m.*
fruit (*adj.*), fruitier, **-ère.**
to fulfil, remplir.
full, plein, -e.
fur, fourrure, *f.*
to furnish, fournir.

game, jeu, *m.*
garden, jardin, *m.*
gardener, jardinier, *m.*, **-ère**, *f.*

garçon, *m.* boy, bachelor.
garde, *m.* keeper, guard.
garde, *f.* notice. **prendre —**, to look out, to take care.
garder, to keep.
gare, *f.* railway station.
gâteau, *m.* cake.
gâter, to spoil.
gauche, *f.* left-hand. **à gauche**, to *or* on the left.
geler, to freeze.
gêner, to inconvenience.
général, *m.* general.
généreux, -se, generous.
genou, *m.* knee.
gens, *m. or f.*, people.
gentil, -le, pretty, neat, nice, amiable.
géographie, *f.* geography.
giberne, *f.* cartridge-pouch.
gibier, *m.* game.
glace, *f.* ice.
gloire, *f.* glory.
gorge, *f.* throat.
goût, *m.* taste.
goûter, to taste, to lunch.
gouvernante, *f.* governess.
grâce, *f.* charm, favor. — **à**, thanks to. **de —**, pray, I pray you.
gracieux, -se, graceful.
grammaire, *f.* grammar.
grand, -e, large, tall, great.
grandir, to grow up.
grand-père, *m.* grandfather.
grange, *f.* barn.

---

general, général, *m.*
generous, généreux, **-se.**
genius, génie, *m.*
gentle, doux, douce; gentil, gentille.
gentleman, monsieur, *m.*
geography, géographie, *f.*
George, Georges, *m.*
German, allemand, **-e.**
Germany, l'Allemagne, *f.*
to get, avoir, recevoir. — **here**, arriver. — **rid**, se défaire. — **up**, se lever.
ghost, revenant, *m.*
gift, cadeau, *m.*
girl, fille, *f.*
to give, donner. — **back**, rendre. — **me**, donnez-moi.
given, donné, **-e.** — **back**, rendu.
glad, bien aise.
Glasgow, Glasgow, *m.*
glass, verre, *m.*
glory, gloire, *f.*
glove, gant, *m.*
to go, aller. — **away**, s'en aller, partir. — **out**, sortir. — **to bed**, se coucher. — **without**, se passer de.
gold, or, *m.*
gone, allé, **-e**, parti, **-e.**
gone out, sorti, **-e.**
good, bon, bonne; (*in conduct*), sage. **to be so good as**, avoir la bonté de.
governess, gouvernante, *f.*
government, gouvernement, *m.*
grammar, grammaire, *f.*
grand, magnifique.
grandfather, grand-père, aïeul, *m.*

gras, grasse, fat.
grave, grave, severe.
gravement, gravely.
gravure, *f.* engraving.
grec, grecque, Greek.
grêle, *f.* hail.
grelotter, to shiver.
grenade, *f.* pomegranate.
grenadier, *m.* grenadier.
grenouille, *f.* frog.
gronder, to growl, to scold.
groom, *m.* lackey.
gros, grosse, stout, big, large, rough.
grosseur, *f.* size.
guère (ne *before verb*), scarcely, hardly.
guérir, to cure.
guerre, *f.* war.
Guillaume, *m.* William.

(*Aspirate* h *is indicated by* ').
habile, clever.
habilement, skilfully.
habit, *m.* coat.
habitant, *m.* inhabitant.
habitation, *f.* habitation.
habiter, to dwell in, to live in.
habitude, *f.* habit.
habitué, *m.* frequenter.
habituer, to accustom.
'haïr, to hate.
haleine, *f.* breath.
'haricots, *m.* beans.
'hasard, *m.* chance; **par —**, perchance; I suppose.
'haut, *m.* height, top.
'haut, -e (*adj.*), high, tall; (*adv.*), loud.
'hauteur, *f.* height.

---

grateful, reconnaissant, -e.
great, grand, -e.
greatcoat, paletot, *m.*
greatness, grandeur, *f.*
Greek, grec, grecque.
green, vert, -e.
on what ground, à quel titre.
to grow up, grandir.
to guarantee, garantir.
guardian, tuteur, *m.*
to guess, deviner.
guest, invité, *m.*
to guide, mener.
guilty, coupable.

habit, habitude, *f.*
had (*part.*), eu.

The Hague, La Haye.
hair, cheveu, *m.*
half, demi, -e, la moitié.
half-hour, demi-heure, *f.*
hand, main, *f.*
handkerchief, mouchoir, *m.*
handsome, beau, belle.
to happen, arriver, se passer.
happy, heureux, -se.
hard, dur, -e; fort, -e; difficile.
hardly, à peine.
harmonious, harmonieux, -se.
hat, chapeau, *m.*
to have, avoir. **will you —**, voulez-vous?
he, il, lui. **he who**, celui qui.
head, tête, *f.*
health, santé, *f.*

La 'Haye, The Hague.
'Henri, *m.* Henry
hériter, to inherit.
heure, *f.* hour, o'clock; **tout à l'heure**, just now.
heureusement, happily.
heureux, -se, happy, fortunate.
'hibou, *m.* owl.
hier, yesterday. — **soir**, last night.
histoire, *f.* history, story.
hiver, *m.* winter.
'hollandais, -e, Dutch.
hommage, *m.* homage.
homme, *m.* man.
honnête, honest, civil, respectable.
honnêteté, *f.* kindness, courtesy.
'honte, *f.* shame.
'honteux, -se, ashamed, shameful.
horrible, horrible.
horriblement, dreadfully.
hôte, *m.* host; occupant.
hôtel, *m.* hotel, mansion.

---

to hear, entendre. **to hear it said**, entendre dire.
heart, cœur, *m.* **with all my heart**, de tout mon cœur.
heaven, ciel, *m.*
heavy, lourd, -e.
heedless, étourdi, -e.
heedlessness, étourderie, *f.*
height, hauteur, *f.*
to help, aider.
Henry, Henri, *m.*
her (*pron.*), elle, **la**. **to her**, lui. (*adj.*), son, sa, ses.
here, ici.
here is, *or* **here are**, voici.
herself, se, elle-même.
hesitation, hésitation, *f.*
to hide, cacher. **to — one's self**, se cacher.
high, haut, -e.
him, le, lui. **to him**, lui.
himself, se, lui-même.
his (*adj.*), son, sa, ses; (*pron.*), le sien, la sienne, les siens, les siennes.
historian, historien, *m.*
history, histoire, *f.*
hold! tenez!
holiday, congé, *m.*; **jour de congé**, *m.*
Holland, la Hollande.
at home, à la maison; chez . . .
honey, miel, *m.*
honor, honneur, *m.*
to hope (*before a future*), espérer; (*before a pres. or past*), aimer à croire, aimer à penser.
horse, cheval, chevaux, *m.*
on horseback, à cheval.
horse-shoe, fer à cheval, *m.*
hot, chaud, -e.
hotel, hôtel, *m.*
hour, heure, *f.*
house, maison, *f.* **at the — of**, chez.
how, comment, comme, que. — **long?** combien de temps? depuis quand? — **many?** — **much?** combien?

hôtel de ville, city hall.
'huit, eight.
'huitième, eighth.
humeur, *f.* temper.
humide, damp, moist.

ici, here.
ignorer, to be ignorant of.
il, he, it.
il y a, there is, there are.
île, *f.* island.
illustre, famous.
ils, they.
s'imaginer, to fancy.
imiter, to imitate.
immense, immense.
impatient, -e, impatient.
impératrice, *f.* empress.
impertinence, *f.* impertinence.
impertinent, *m.* impertinent fellow.
impitoyable, pitiless.
important, -e, important.
il importe, it is important.
impossible, impossible.
impur, -e, impure.
inattendu, -e, unexpected.
incliner, to bend. **s'incliner**, to bow.
incroyable, incredible.
indiquer, to indicate.
indiscrétion, *f.* indiscretion.
indispensable, indispensable.
indisposé, -e, indisposed.
infâme, infamous, disgraceful.
inférieur, -e, lower.
infiniment, infinitely.

---

however, pourtant, cependant.
humanity, humanité, *f.*
hundred, cent.
hundredth, centième.
hunger, faim, *f.* **to be hungry**, avoir faim.
hurry, to be in a, être pressé.

I, je; moi.
ice, glace, *f.*
idle, paresseux, **-se**.
if, si.
ill (*adj.*), malade; (*adv.*), mal. **to be —**, être malade, se porter mal.
illness, maladie, *f.*
illustrated, illustré, -e.
illustrious, illustre.
imaginary, imaginaire.
immediately, tout de suite.
impertinent, impertinent, **-e**.
important, important, -e.
to be important, importer.
impossible, impossible.
impudence, impudence, *f.*
in, à, dans; en.
inch, pouce, *m.*
incredible, incroyable.
indeed, bien.
indefinite, indéfini, -e.
indifference, indifférence, *f.*
indispensable, indispensable.
indisposed, indisposé, -e.
indisputable, incontestable.
to induce, engager (à).
industrious, laborieux, **-se**.
infinite, infini, -e.

infortune, *f.* misfortune.
ingrat, -e, ungrateful.
injustement, unjustly.
inquiet, -ète, uneasy, troubled.
inquiéter, to annoy. **s'inquiéter**, to trouble one's self, to be uneasy.
inscrire, to write down.
insecte, *m.* insect.
instant, *m.* moment.
instruire, to teach. **s'instruire**, to learn.
instruit, -e, wise.
insulter, to insult.
intelligence, *f.* intelligence.
intention, *f.* meaning.
interdire, to forbid.
intéressant, -e, interesting.
intéresser, to interest.
intérêt, *m.* interest.
interpeller, to speak to.
interrompre, to interrupt.
inutile, useless.
invitation, *f.* invitation.
invité, *m.* guest.
inviter, to invite.
Irlande, *f.* Ireland.
irrésolu, -e, irresolute.
Italie, *f.* Italy.
Italien, -ne, Italian.

j' *stands for* **je.**
Jacques, *m.* James.
jalousie, *f.* jealousy; blind.
jaloux, -se, jealous.
jamais, ever. **ne . . . jamais**, never.
jambe, *f.* leg. **à toutes —**, at full speed.
janvier, *m.* January.
Japon, *m.* Japan.
jardin, *m.* garden. **— des Plantes**, public garden.

---

inhabitants, les habitants, *m.*
ink, encre, *f.*
inkwell, encrier, *m.*
innocence, innocence, *f.*
insect, insecte, *m.*
to insist, exiger.
insolence, insolence, *f.*
instant, instant, *m.*
instead of, au lieu de.
to insult, insulter.
to intend, compter.
interest, intérêt, *m.*
interesting, intéressant, **-e.**
to interfere, se mêler de.
to intimidate, intimider.
into, dans.
to invite, inviter.
iron, fer, *m.*
it, il, le, la, lui. **of it**, en. **to it**, y. **it is the tenth**, c'est le dix. **it is I**, c'est moi; **it is they**, ce sont eux. **it is said**, on dit. **that's it**, c'est ça.
Italian, italien, **-ne.**
Italy, l'Italie, *f.*
its, son, sa, ses.

James, Jacques, *m.*
Jane, Jeanne, *f.*
January, janvier, *m.*
Japan, Japon, *m.*

jardinier, *m.* gardener.
jaune, yellow.
je, I.
Jean, *m.* John.
Jeanne, *f.* Jane.
jeter, to cast, to throw.
jeu, *m.* game, play.
jeudi, *m.* Thursday.
jeune, young.
jeûner, to fast.
jeunesse, *f.* youth.
joie, *f.* joy.
joindre, to join, to meet.
joli, **-e**, pretty.
joue, *f.* cheek.
joué, **-e**, played.
jouer, to play.
jouir de, to enjoy.
joujou, *m.* toy.
jour, *m.* day.
journal, **-aux**, *m.* newspaper.
journée, *f.* day.
jovial, **-e**, jovial.
joyeux, **-se**, cheerful.
juillet, *m.* July.
juin, *m.* June.
jumeau, *m.*, **jumelle**, *f.*, twin.
jurer, to swear.
jusqu'à, as far as, till.
juste, just. **tout —**, exactly.
justement, just, exactly.

kilogramme, *m.* kilogram.
kilomètre, *m.* kilometer.

l' *stands for* **le** *or* **la.**
la, the; her, it.
là, there.
laborieux, **-se**, industrious.
lâche, cowardly.
laconisme, *m.* conciseness.
laid, **-e**, ugly.

---

jealous, jaloux, **-se**.
jest, plaisanterie, *f.*
jewel, bijou, *m.*
John, Jean, *m.*
journey, voyage, *m.*
July, juillet, *m.*
June, juin, *m.*
just (*adj.*), juste; (*adv.*), justement. **to have —**, venir de. **— now**, tout à l'heure.
justice, justice, *f.*

to keep, garder.
key, clef, *f.*
to kill, tuer.
kilogram, kilogramme, *m.*
kind, bon, bonne.
to kindle, allumer.
kindness, bonté, *f.*
king, roi, *m.*
to kiss each other, s'embrasser.
kitchen, cuisine, *f.*
knife, couteau, *m.*
to knock, frapper.
to know, connaître, savoir.

to labor, travailler.
labor, travail, *m.*
laborious, laborieux, **-se.**
lace, dentelle, *f.*

laine, *f.* wool.
laisser, to let, to allow, to leave, to let alone. — **tranquille**, to let alone. — **tomber**, to drop.
lait, *m.* milk.
lampe, *f.* lamp.
lancer, to throw.
langue, *f.* tongue, language.
languir, to languish.
lapin, *m.* rabbit.
laquelle, which.
large, broad.
largeur, *f.* breadth.
larme, *f.* tear.
las, lasse, tired.
latin, -e, Latin.
laver, to wash.
le, the; him, it.
leçon, *f.* lesson.
lecture, *f.* reading.
léger, légère (*adj.*), light.
légume, *m.* vegetable.
lendemain, *m.* next day.
lentement, slowly.
léopard, *m.* leopard.
lequel, laquelle, lesquels, lesquelles, which.
les, the, them.
lest, *m.* ballast.

---

ladder, échelle, *f.*
lady, dame, *f.* **young lady**, jeune fille, jeune personne, demoiselle, *f.*
lamb, agneau, *m.*
lamp, lampe, *f.*
land, terre, *f.*
landlord, propriétaire, *m.*
language, langue, *f.*, langage, *m.*
large, grand, -e; gros, -se.
last, dernier, dernière. — **month**, le mois dernier. — **evening**, hier soir. — **night**, cette nuit. **at last**, enfin.
late, tard, -e. **to be — in**, tarder à.
Latin, latin, -e.
to laugh, rire.
laughed (*part.*), ri.
law, loi, *f.*
lawyer, avocat, *m.*
laziness, paresse, *f.*
lazy, paresseux, -se.
to lead, mener. — **to**, amener. — **back**, ramener. — **away**, emmener.
leaf, feuille, *f.*
to learn, apprendre.
learned, instruit, -e.
learnt, appris, -e.
at least, du moins. **at the —**, au moins.
leather, cuir, *m.*
to leave (*go away*), partir; (*leave behind*), laisser; quitter.
left (*adj.*), gauche.
leg, jambe, *f.*
to lend, prêter.
length, longueur, *f.*
lent, prêté, -e.
leopard, léopard, *m.*
less *adj.*, moindre; *adv.*, moins.
lesson, leçon, *f.*
lest, de peur que, de crainte que; (*after verbs expressing fear*), que.

lettre, *f.* letter.
leur (*pron.*), to them. (*adj.*), their. **le —, la —, les leurs**, theirs, their.
lever, to raise. **se —**, to rise, to get up.
lèvre, *f.* lip.
libraire, *m.* bookseller.
libre free, disengaged, at liberty.
lieu, *m.* place. **au — de**, instead of.
lieue, *f.* league.
lieutenant, *m.* lieutenant.
ligne, *f.* line.
linge, *m.* linen.
lion, *m.* lion. **lionne**, *f.* lioness.
lire, to read.
lisière, *f.* verge, border.
lit, *m.* bed.
litre, *m.* liter = 1⅞ *pints*.
livre, *m.* book.
livre, *f.* pound.
livrée, *f.* livery.
loger, to lodge.
loi, *f.* law.
l'on *stands for* **on**, one, people.
loin, far. **— de**, far from. **de —**, from afar.
loisir, *m.* leisure.
Londres, *m.* London.
long, longue, long. **le — de**, through, along.
longtemps, a long time, long.
longueur, *f.* length.
lorsque, when, while.
louer, to praise.
louer, to hire, to rent.
loueur de chevaux, *m.* stable-keeper.
Louis, *m.* Louis.

---

to let, laisser; (*a house*), louer.
letter, lettre, *f.*
liberty, liberté, *f.* **at —**, libre.
library, bibliothèque, *f.*
life, vie, *f.*
light (*adj.*), léger, légère.
light (*noun*), lumière, *f.*
to light, allumer.
like (*adj.*), pareil, -le; (*adv.*), comme.
to like, aimer.
to be like, ressembler (à).
likely, probable, vraisemblable.
lily-of-the-valley, muguet, *m.*
linen, linge, *m.*
lion, lion, *m.*, lionne, *f.*
lip, lèvre, *f.*
to listen, écouter.
little (*adj.*), petit, -e; (*adv.*), peu.
to live, demeurer; vivre. **live in**, habiter.
lively, vif, vive.
living, vie, *f.*
to lock, fermer à clef.
London, Londres, *m.*
long, long, longue. **a — time**, longtemps.
no longer, ne . . . plus.
to look, avoir l'air. **— at**, regarder. **— for**, chercher.
to lose, perdre.
lost, perdu, -e.
Louis, Louis, *m.*
to love, aimer.
low, bas, basse.
luck, chance, *f.*

louis, *m.* louis, twenty francs.
Louise, *f.* Louise.
loup, *m.* wolf.
lourd, **-e**, heavy.
lu, **-e**, read.
lucratif, **-ve**, lucrative.
lueur, *f.* gleam, flash, light.
lui, he, to him, to her, to it. **lui-même**, himself. **de lui-même**, of his own accord.
luire, to shine, to glitter.
lumière, *f.* light.
lundi, *m.* Monday.
lune, *f.* moon.
lunettes, *f.* spectacles.
lutte, *f.* struggle.
lutter, to struggle, to fight.

m' *stands for* **me.**
M. *stands for* **Monsieur**, Sir, Mr.
ma, my.
Madame, *f.* Madam, Mrs.
Mademoiselle, *f.* Miss.
magasin, *m.* shop, store.
magnanime, magnanimous.
magnifique, magnificent.
mai, *m.* May.
main, *f.* hand; **donner la —**, to shake hands.
maint, **-e**, many, many a.
maintenant, now, by this time. **— que**, now that.
mais, but, why!
maison, *f.* house. **à la —**, at home.
maître, *m.* teacher, master.
maîtresse, *f.* mistress.
majesté, *f.* majesty.
mal, *m.* harm, evil.
mal (*adv.*), ill, badly. **de — en pis**, from bad to worse. **se porter —**, to be sick.
malade, ill, sick; (*n.*), patient.
maladie, *f.* illness.
malentendu, *m.* misunderstanding.
malgré, in spite of.
malheur, *m.* misfortune.
malheureusement, unfortunately.
malheureux, **-se**, unhappy, unfortunate.
malin, **maligne**, cunning, clever, sly.
malle, *f.* trunk.
maman, *f.* mamma.
manchon, *m.* muff.
mangé, **-e**, eaten.
manger, to eat.
manière, *f.* way, manner; **— de voir**, point of view.

---

mad, fou, folle.
made, fait, **-e**.
magnanimity, magnanimité, *f.*
magnificent, magnifique.
maid-servant, bonne, *f.*
to make, faire. **— haste**, se dépêcher.
malignant, malin, maligne.
mamma, maman, *f.*
man, homme, *m.*
manners, manières, *f. plur.*
many, beaucoup. **as — as**, autant que. **too —**, trop.
many a, maint, **-e**.

manquer, to miss, to fail. — **de**, to lack, to be in need of.
marbre, *m.* marble.
marchand, *m.* dealer, merchant.
marchander, to bargain for.
marche, *f.* step.
marcher, to walk, to march; to go to work.
mardi, *m.* Tuesday.
maréchal, *m.* marshal.
le Maroc, Morocco.
mars, *m.* March.
matin, *m.* morning.
mauvais, bad. — **sujet**, bad boy, bad fellow.
me, me, to me, myself, to myself.
méchant, -e, naughty, wicked.
mécontent, -e, displeased.
mécontenter, to displease.
médecin, *m.* doctor.
meilleur, -e, better (*adj.*).
mêler, to mix; **se — de**, to meddle with.
même, same, even. **de —**, likewise.
mémoire, *f.* memory, remembrance.
menace, *f.* threat.
menacer, to threaten.
ménager, to save, to spare.
ménagerie, *f.* menagerie.
mener, to take to, to lead.
mensonge, *m.* deceit, lie.
mentir, to lie, speak falsely.
menton, *m.* chin.
mer, *f.* sea.
merci, thank you.
mercredi, *m.* Wednesday.
mère, *f.* mother.
mériter, to merit.
mes, my.
Mesdames, *f.* ladies, Mesdames.
Mesdemoiselles, *f.* Misses, the Misses.
message, *m.* message.
Messieurs, *m.* sirs, gentlemen.
mesure, *f.* measure.
métal, *m.* metal.
métier, *m.* trade, profession.
mètre, *m.* meter.

---

marble, marbre, *m.*
March, mars, *m.*
to march, marcher.
market, marché, *m.*
to marry, épouser.
Mary, Marie, *f.*
master, maître, *m.*
match, allumette, *f.*
May, mai, *m.*
it may be, il se peut, il est possible.
me, me, moi.
meadow, pré, *m.*, prairie, *f.*
to mean, vouloir dire.
meaning, intention, *f.*
meat, viande, *f.*
to meddle with, se mêler de.
to meet, rencontrer. **to go to —**, aller au devant de.
to mend, raccommoder.
merchant, négociant, *m.*
merry, gai, -e.
metal, métal, *m.*
meter, mètre, *m.*

mettre, to put, to put on. **se — à**, to go to, to set about.
le Mexique, Mexico.
midi, *m.* noon; south.
miel, *m.* honey.
le mien, la mienne, les miens, les miennes, mine.
mieux, better (*adv.*). **faire de son —**, to do one's best.
mil, one thousand (*used in dates only*).
milieu, *m.* middle. **au — de**, in the middle of, among.
militaire, *m.* soldier.
mille, *m.* thousand; mile.
milliard, *m.* a billion.
million, *m.* million.
Miltiade, *m.* Miltiades.
ministre, *m.* minister.
minuit, *m.* midnight.
minute, *f.* minute.
miroir, *m.* mirror.
mis, mise, put, dressed.
misérable, miserable; wretch.
misère, *f.* misery.
Mlle. *stands for* **Mademoiselle**, Miss.
Mlles. *stands for* **Mesdemoiselles**, Misses, the Misses.
MM. *stands for* **Messieurs**, gentlemen, Messrs.
Mme. *stands for* **Madame**, Madam, Mrs.
Mmes. *stands for* **Mesdames**, ladies.
modèle, *m.* model.
moderne, modern.
modiste, *f. or m.*, milliner.
mœurs, *f.* manners, customs.
moi, I, me, to me, as for me. **à moi!** help! **moi-même**, myself.
moindre, less. **le —**, least.
moins, less, fewer. **à — que**, unless. **au —**, at the least. **du —**, at least.
mois, *m.* month. **le — dernier**, last month.

Mexico, le Mexique.
Middle Ages, moyen âge, *m.*
midnight, minuit, *m.*
mile, mille, *m.*
milk, lait, *m.*
milliner, modiste, *m. or f.*
million, million, *m.*
mine, le mien, la mienne, les miens, les miennes.
minister, ministre, *m.*
minute, minute, *f.*
mirror, miroir, *m.*
misery, misère, *f.*
misfortune, malheur, *m.*
to mislay, égarer.
Miss, Mademoiselle *or* Mlle., *f.*
mistake, faute, *f.*
to be mistaken, se tromper.
mistress, maîtresse, *f.*
to mock, se moquer de.
modern, moderne.
moment, moment, *m.*
Monday, lundi, *m.*
money, argent, *m.*
monkey, singe, *m.*
Mont Blanc, le Mont Blanc.
month, mois, *m.* **in the — of**, au mois de.

moitié, à moitié, *f.* half.
moment, *m.* moment. **moments perdus**, spare moments.
mon, ma, mes, my.
monde, *m.* world. **beaucoup de —**, many people. **personne au —**, nobody in the world. **tout le —**, everybody.
Monsieur, Sir, Mr., gentleman.
mont, *m.* hill.
les monts Rocheux, Rocky Mountains.
montagne, *f.* mountain.
monter, to go up, to carry up; to ride.
montre, *f.* watch.
montrer, to show, to point to.
se moquer de, to sneer at, laugh at.
morceau, *m.* piece.
mordre, to bite.
morsure, *f.* bite.
mort, *f.* death.
mort, -e (*part.*), dead.
mot, *m.* word.
mou, (mol), molle, soft.
mouche, *f.* fly.
mouchoir, *m.* handkerchief.
mourant, -e, dying.
mourir, to die.
mousseline, *f.* muslin.
moutarde, *f.* mustard.
mouton, *m.* sheep.
mouvement, *m.* movement.
mouvoir, to move, to stir.
moyen, *m.* means, way. **— âge**, *m.* Middle Ages.
muet, -ette, mute, silent.
mugir, to bellow, to roar.
muguet, *m.* lily-of-the-valley.
mur, *m.* wall.
mûr, -e, ripe.
mûrir, to ripen.
musée, *m.* museum.
musicien, *m.* musician.
musique, *f.* music.

---

moon, lune, *f.*
more, plus, davantage. **no more**, ne . . . plus.
morning, matin, *m.*
mortal, mortel, mortelle.
the most, plupart, *f.*
mother, mère, *f.*
mountain, montagne, *f.*
mouse, souris, *f.*
mouth, bouche, *f.*
movement, mouvement, *m.*
Mr., Monsieur *or* M., *m.*
Mrs., Madame *or* Mme., *f.*
much, beaucoup; fort. **so —**, autant. **too —**, trop.
muff, manchon, *m.*
museum, musée, *m.*
music, musique, *f.*
musician, musicien, *m*
muslin, mousseline, *f.*
must, il faut que; devoir.
mute, muet, -ette.
mutton, mouton, *m.*
my, mon, ma, mes.
myself, moi-même.
mystery, mystère, *m.*

naître, to be born. **faire —**, to produce, to give rise to.
Napoléon, *m.* Napoleon.
nature, *f.* nature.
naturel, -le, natural.
naufrage, *m.* shipwreck. **faire —**, to be wrecked.
n'est-ce pas. *See* **être.**
ne . . . pas, not.
ne . . . personne, nobody, no one.
ne . . . plus, no longer.
ne . . . que, only, nothing but.
né, née, born.
nécessaire, necessary.
négociant, *m.* merchant.
neige, *f.* snow.
net, nette, clean.
nettoyer, to clean.
neuf, nine.
neuf, neuve, new-made.
neuvième, ninth.
neveu, *m.* nephew.
nez, *m.* nose.
ni . . . ni, neither . . . nor.
nièce, *f.* niece.
noir, -e, black.
nom, *m.* name.
nombre, *m.* number.
nombreux, -se, numerous.
nommer, to name.
non, no. **ni moi —**, **plus**, nor I either.
nord-ouest, northwest.
nos, our.
notre (*adj.*), our.
le nôtre, la —, les nôtres (*pron.*), ours.
se nourrir de, to live on.
nous, we, us, to us; ourselves, to ourselves. **nous-mêmes**, ourselves.
nouveau, nouvel, nouvelle, new. **de —**, again.

---

nail, clou, *m.*
name, nom, *m.*
to name, nommer.
napkin, serviette, *f.*
Napoleon, Napoléon, *m.*
naughty, méchant, **-e.**
near, près de.
nearly, presque.
necessary, nécessaire.
to be necessary, falloir.
neck, cou, *m.*
to need, avoir besoin de; falloir de.
needle, aiguille, *f.*
to neglect, négliger.
neighbor, voisin, *m.*; voisine, *f.*
neither . . . nor, **ni . . . ni.**
nephew, neveu, *m.*
Nero, Néron, *m.*
never, ne . . . jamais.
new (*another*), nouveau, nouvelle.
new-made, neuf, neuve.
news, nouvelles, *f. plur.*
newspaper, journal, *m.*
next, prochain, **-e.**
nice, gentil, gentille.
niece, nièce, *f.*
night, nuit, *f.* **at —**, le soir. **last —**, cette nuit.
nine, neuf.
nineteen, dix-neuf.

nouvelle, *f.* report; (*plur.*), news.
novembre, *m.* November.
nu, nue, bare.
nuire, to injure.
nuit, *f.* night. **cette —**, last night (*from* 12 *till this morning*).
nul, nulle (*adj.*), no.
nulle part, nowhere.

obéir, to obey.
objet, *m.* object.
obligé, -e, obliged.
obliger, to oblige.
obscur, -e, obscure, dark.
observer, to observe, to keep.
obtenir, to obtain.
occasion, *f.* opportunity.
occupé, -e, busy, engaged.
occuper, to occupy.
octobre, *m.* October.
odeur, *f.* smell.
œil, *m.* (*pl.* **yeux**), eye.
œuf, *m.* egg.
offenser, to offend.
offert, -e, offered.
office, *m.* office, duty. **bons offices**, kind offices.
officier, *m.* officer.
offre, *f.* offer.
offrir, to offer.

---

ninety, quatre-vingt-dix.
ninth, neuvième.
no, non, ne . . . pas, ne . . . point. — **longer**, — **more**, ne . . . plus. — **one**, personne . . . ne. — **money**, pas d'argent.
no (*adj.*), nul, nulle.
nobody, personne . . . ne.
noise, bruit, *m.*
noon, midi, *m.*
nor, ni. — **I either, ni moi non plus.**
north, nord, *m.*
nose, nez, *m.*
not, ne . . . pas. — **at all**, pas du tout, point. — **yet**, pas encore.
note, billet, *m.*
note-book, cahier, *m.*
nothing, ne . . . rien.
to notice, remarquer.
novel, roman, *m.*
November, novembre, *m.*
now, à présent, maintenant.
nowhere, nulle part.
number, chiffre, *m.*; nombre, *m.*
numerous, nombreux, -se.

oath, serment, *m.*
to obey, obéir (à).
to oblige, obliger.
obstinate, obstiné, -e.
to obtain, obtenir.
October, octobre, *m.*
of, de; du; de la; des.
offence, faute, *f.*
offer, offre, *f.*
offered, offert, -e.
office, bureau, *m.*
officer, officier, *m.*
often, souvent.
old, vieux, vieil, vieille.

oiseau, *m.* bird.
ombrelle, *f.* parasol.
omettre, to omit.
omnibus, *m.* omnibus.
on, one, people, we, you, they.
oncle, *m.* uncle.
ont, have (*third person pl.*).
onze, eleven.
onzième, eleventh.
opéra, *m.* opera.
opération, *f.* operation.
s'opposer (à), to object to.
or, *m.* gold.
oracle, *m.* oracle.
orageux, -se, stormy.
orange, *f.* orange.
ordinaire, common. **à l'—**, as usual.
ordonner, to order.
ordre, *m.* order.
oreille, *f.* ear. **boucle d', —**, *f.* ear-ring.
orphelin, *m.* orphan.
oser, to dare.
ôter, to take off *or* away.
ou, or.
où, where. **par —**, which way?
oublier, to forget.
oui, yes. **je crois que —**, I think so.
ours, *m.* bear.
outre, beyond, besides.
ouvert, -e (*adj.*), open; (*part.*), opened.
ouverture, *f.* opening.
ouvrage, *m.* work, book.
ouvrier, *m.* workman.
ouvrir, to open.

---

to omit, omettre.
omnibus, omnibus, *m.*
on, sur. **on** *before a day or date is not translated.*
once, une fois. **at —**, tout de suite.
one (*adj.*), un, une; (*pron.*), on, l'on. **no one**, personne . . . ne. **the one**, celui, celle.
one's self, se, soi.
only (*adj.*), seul, -e; (*adv.*), seulement, ne . . . que.
to open, ouvrir.
opened, ouvert, -e.
opera, opéra, *m.*
opportunity, occasion, *f.*
to oppose, opposer.
or, ou.
orange, orange, *f.*
order, ordre, *m.*
to order, ordonner, commander.
ordered, commandé, -e.
in order that, afin que, pour que.
other (*different*), autre; (*additional*), encore un(e).
otherwise, autrement.
our, notre, nos.
ours, le nôtre, la nôtre, les nôtres.
ourselves, nous, nous-mêmes.
out, hors. **to go —**, sortir; **to set —**, partir.
to owe (*ought*), devoir.
owl, hibou, *m.*
own, my own, le mien.
overcoat, pardessus, *m.*
ox, bœuf, *m.*

page, *f.* page.
paille, *f.* straw.
pain, *m.* bread.
paire, *f.* pair.
paix, *f.* peace.
palais, *m.* palace; palate.
pâle, pale.
panier, *m.* basket.
pantoufle, *f.* slipper.
papier, *m.* paper. — **à lettres**, note paper.
paquet, *m.* parcel, bundle.
par, by, through; *before words expressing time*, a *or* an. — **ici**, this way, in this direction.
paraître, to appear. **vient de —**, just published.
parapluie, *m.* umbrella.
parbleu ! upon my word !
parc, *m.* park.
parce que, because.
parcourir, to go over, to run through.
par-dessous, under.
par-dessus, over.
pardessus, *m.* overcoat.
pardon, *m.* pardon; excuse me!
pardonner, to forgive.
pareil, **-le**, like, alike, such.
parent, *m.* parent, relative.
paresseux, **-se**, lazy, idle.
parfaitement, perfectly, quite.
par ici, this way.
parier, to wager.
parisien, **-enne**, Parisian.
parlé, **-e**, spoken.
parlement, *m.* parliament.
parler, to speak.
parmi, among.
parole, *f.* word.
part, *f.* part, share. **de ma (ta, sa) —**, from me (thee, him, her). **quelque —**, somewhere. **nulle —**, nowhere.
parti, **-e**, gone away, departed, set out, left.
particularité, *f.* peculiarity.
en particulier, privately.
partie, *f.* part; party, excursion.
partir, to set out, to leave.
partout, everywhere.
parvenir, to reach, succeed.

---

to pack, emballer.
package, paquet, *m.*
pain, douleur, *f.*
painful, douloureux, **-se**.
paint, couleur, *f.* — **brush**, pinceau, *m.*
to paint, peindre.
painter, peintre, *m.*
painting, tableau, *m.*; peinture, *f.*
pair, paire, *f.*
palace, palais, *m.*
pamphlet, brochure, *f.*
paper, papier, *m.*; journal, *m.*
parasol, ombrelle, *f.*
parcel, paquet, *m.*
pardon, pardon, *m.* **to ask —**, demander pardon.
to pardon, pardonner.
parents, parents, *m.*
Parisian, parisien, **-enne**.
park, parc, *m.*
parlor, salon, *m.*
part, partie, *f.*

pas (*adv.*), not, not any. *See* **ne.**
pas, *m.* step.
passage, *m.* passage.
passer, to spend; to hand; to escape, to go, to pass. **se —**, to take place, occur. **se — de**, to do without. **— chez**, to call on.
pasteur, *m.* pastor.
patiner, to skate.
pauvre, poor.
payer, to pay (for).
pays, *m.* country.
paysan, *m.* peasant.
pécore, *f.* silly goose.
peigne, *m.* comb.
peigner, to comb.
peine, *f.* trouble, labor, grief. **à —**, scarcely, just. **donnez-vous la —**, **prenez la —**, please.
peintre, *m.* painter.
pendant, during, for. **— que**, during, while.
pénible, painful.
pensée, *f.* thought.
penser, to think.
pension, *f.* boarding-school.
percher, to perch.
perdre, to lose.
perdu, -e, lost.
père, *m.* father.
permettre, to permit.
permission, *f.* permission.
Perses, *m.* Persians.
personnage, *m.* personage.
personne, *f.* person, people, any one. **jeune —**, *f.* young lady. **ne . . . personne**, *m.* nobody, no one. **— au monde**, nobody in the world.
persuader, to persuade.
petit, -e, little, small, short.
peu, *m.* few, a little. **avant —**, before long.
peu, little, few, not very. **— à —**, by degrees, gradually. **à — près**, about, nearly.
peuple, *m.* people, nation.

---

to part, séparer. **— from each other**, se séparer.
to pass, passer. **to come to —**, se passer.
passage, passage, *m.*
patience, patience, *f.*
to pay for, payer.
peace, paix, *f.*
pear, poire, *f.*
peasant, paysan, *m.*
pen, plume, *f.*
pencil, crayon, *m.*
pen-holder, porte-plume, *m.*
pen-knife, canif, *m.*
people, gens; on, l'on. **so many —**, tant de monde.
pepper, poivre, *m.*
to perceive, apercevoir.
perfectly, parfaitement.
perhaps, peut-être.
perishable, périssable.
permission, permission, *f.*
to permit, permettre.
person, personne, *f.*
personage, personnage, *m.*
to persuade to, décider **à.**

peur, *f.* fear. **avoir —**, to be afraid. **de — de**, for fear of.
peut-être, perhaps.
philosophie, *f.* philosophy.
phosphorique, phosphorescent.
photographie, *f.* photograph.
phrase, *f.* sentence.
pièce, *f.* piece; (*theat.*), play.
pied, *m.* foot. **à —**, on foot.
pierre, *f.* stone.
pierreux, **-se**, stony.
piéton, *m.* pedestrian.
se piquer de, to pride one's self.
pire, worse.
pis (*adv.*), worse.
pitié, *f.* pity.
place, *f.* place, situation; seat.
placer, to place.
plaie, *f.* wound.
plaindre, to pity. **se —**, to complain.
plaire, to please. **se —**, to enjoy. **s'il vous plaît**, if you please.
plaisir, *m.* pleasure.
plancher, *m.* floor.
plante, *f.* plant.
planter, to plant.
plein, **-e**, full, open.
pleuré, **-e**, wept, cried.
pleurer, to weep.
pleuvoir, to rain.
pluie, *f.* rain.
plume, *f.* feather, pen.
la plupart, most.
plus, more. **ne . . . plus**, not again, no more, no longer. **de — en —**, more and more. **— tôt**, sooner.
plusieurs, several.
plutôt, rather.
pluvieux, **-se**, rainy.
poche, *f.* pocket.
poids, *m.* weight.
poignet, *m.* wrist.
point, *m.* point.
ne . . . point, not, not at all.
poire, *f.* pear.
poisson, *m.* fish.
poitrine, *f.* chest, breast.
poivre, *m.* pepper.

---

philosophy, philosophie, *f.*
photograph, photographie, *f.*
physician, médecin, *m.*
to pick up, ramasser.
picture, tableau, *m.*
piece, morceau, *m.*; pièce, *f.*
pin, épingle, *f.*
to pinch, serrer; blesser.
pine-apple, ananas, *m.*
to pity, plaindre.
place, place, *f.*; lieu, *m.*
to place, placer.
plate, assiette, *f.*
play, jeu, *m.*
to play, jouer.
plaything, joujou, *m.*
pleasant, agréable, aimable.
please, veuillez (*with infin.*).
to please, plaire, faire plaisir à. **if you —**, s'il vous plaît.
pleased with, content (-e) de.
pleasure, plaisir, *m.*
plenty, beaucoup.
pocket, poche, *f.*

poli, **-e** (*adj.*), polite.
poliment, politely.
politesse, *f.* politeness.
pomme, *f.* apple. — **de terre**, *f.* potato.
pont, *m.* bridge.
bien portant, well.
porte, *f.* door.
porté, **-e**, carried.
porte-monnaie, *m.* purse.
porte-plume, *m.* pen-holder.
porter, to carry, to bear, to wear, to put. — **à**, to take to. **se** —, to be.
portière, *f.* door.
portrait, *m.* portrait.
poser, to place, to put down.
posséder, to possess.
possible, possible.
poste, *m.* post, station.
poste, *f.* post-office.
pot, *m.* pot, jug. — **de terre**, earthen pot.
pouce, *m.* thumb, inch.
poupée, *f.* doll.
pour, for, to, in order to.
pourquoi, why.
poursuivre, to pursue.
pourtant, yet, however.
pourvoir, to provide.
pourvu que, provided.
pousser, to push; to utter.
poussière, *f.* dust.
pouvoir, to be able.
pré, *m.* meadow.
précieux, **-se**, precious.
précisément, exactly.
préférable, preferable.
préférer, to prefer.
premier, **-ère**, first, former.
prendre, to take, catch. — **garde**, to beware, take care.
prenez, take.
préparer, to prepare.
près de, near, beside, closely, on the point of.
présence, *f.* presence.
présent, *m.* present. **à** —, now.
présenter, to show, to present.
président, *m.* president.
présider, to preside over.

---

pocket-book, porte-monnaie, *m.*
policeman, sergent (*m.*) de ville.
politè, poli, -e.
politely, poliment.
poor, pauvre; (*bad*), mauvais, -e.
pope, pape, *m.*
portrait, portrait, *m.*
positively, définitivement.
to possess, posséder.
possible, possible.
post, poste, *m.*
posterity, postérité, *f.*
post-office, poste, *f.*
potato, pomme de terre, *f.*
pound, livre, *f.*
to praise, louer.
precious, précieux, -euse.
to predict, prédire.
to prefer, préférer, aimer mieux.
preferable, préférable.
to prepare, préparer.
present, cadeau, présent, *m.*
president, président, *m.*

presque, almost.
prêt, prête, ready.
prêté, lent.
prétendre, to pretend.
prêter, to lend.
prêteur, *m.* **prêteuse**, *f.* lender.
prêtre, *m.* priest.
prévenir, to warn.
prévenu, -e, warned.
prévoir, to foresee.
prier, to pray, to beg.
prière, *f.* prayer, entreaty.
prince, *m.* prince.
princesse, *f.* princess.
principal, principaux, principal.
printemps, *m.* spring.
pris, -e, taken.
prison, *f.* prison.
prisonnier, *m.* prisoner.
prix, *m.* prize; price, value.
prochain, -e, next. **le mois —**, next month.
prodigieusement, greatly.
professeur, *m.* professor.
profit, *m.* benefit.
profond, -e (*adj.*), deep.
profondeur, *f.* depth.
proie, *f.* prey.
promenade, *f.* walk; ride.
promener, to take out to walk **se —**, to take a walk.
promesse, *f.* promise.
promettre, to promise.
promis, -e, promised.
promptement, quickly.
prononcer, to pronounce, utter.
propos, *m.* talk.
proposition, *f.* proposal.
propre à, fit for.
propriétaire, *m.* landlord.
propriété, *f.* property.
protection, *f.* patronage.
protéger, to protect.
prouver, to prove.
proverbe, *m.* proverb.
provoquer, to provoke.
prudence, *f.* prudence.

---

to pretend, prétendre.
pretty (*adj.*), joli, -e.
price, prix, *m.*
priest, prêtre, *m.*
prince, prince, *m.*
princess, princesse, *f.*
principal, principal, -e.
principle, principe, *m.*
prize, prix, *m.* **to gain a —**, gagner *or* remporter un prix.
probity, probité, *f.*
professor, professeur, *m.*
to promise, promettre.
promised, promis, -e.
to pronounce, prononcer.
proof, preuve, *f.*
proper, convenable.
to be proper, convenir.
property, propriété, *f.*
in proportion as, à mesure que.
proposal, proposition, *f.*
to propose, proposer.
to protect, protéger.
protection, protection, *f.*
proud, fier, fière.
to prove, prouver.
proverb, proverbe, *m.*

la Prusse, Prussia.
prussien, -ne, Prussian.
pu, been able.
public, publique, public.
puis, then.
puisque, since, as.
puissant, -e, mighty.
punir, to punish.
punition, *f.* punishment.
pupitre, *m.* desk.

qu' *stands for* **que**.
quand, when. **depuis —**, how long.
quant à, as for.
quarante, forty.
quart, quarter, fourth. — **d'heure**, quarter of an hour.
quartier, *m.* quarter. **Quartier Latin**, the Latin Quarter, *a part of Paris in which many colleges and schools are situated.*
quatorze, fourteen.
quatre, four.
quatre-vingts, eighty.
quatre-vingt-dix, ninety.
quatrième, fourth.
que (*pron.*), whom, which, that; (*interr.*), what.
que (*conj.*), than, as, since; how; let.
quel, quels, quelle, quelles, what, which.
quelconque (*after the noun*), whatever.
quelque (*adj.*), some, any. — **chose**, something. — **part**, somewhere. — **temps**, sometime.
quelque (*adv.*), however, whatever.
quelqu'un, somebody. **quelques-uns**, a few.
quelquefois, sometimes.
se quereller, to quarrel.
qu'est-ce que . . .? what?
question, *f.* question.
queue, *f.* tail. **faire —**, to stand in line.
qui, who, which, that; (*interr. or after prep.*), who, whom.
quinzaine, *f.* fortnight.
quinze, fifteen.
quitter, to leave.

---

provided that, pourvu que.
to provide for, pourvoir à.
province, province, *f.*
Prussia, la Prusse.
Prussian, prussien, -ne.
public, public, publique.
punctuality, exactitude, *f.*
to punish, punir.
punishment, punition, *f.*
pupil, élève, *m. or f.*
purse, porte-monnaie, *m.*
to pursue, poursuivre.
put, mis, -e, placé, -e.
to put, placer, mettre; — **up** (*at a hotel*), descendre.

to quarrel, se quereller.
quarter (*the 4th part*), quart, *m.*
quarter (*district*), quartier, *m.*

quoi, which, what. **de quoi**, wherewith.
quoique, although.

raconter, to relate, to tell.
rafraîchir, to refresh.
rageur, **-se**, passionate.
raide, stiff.
raison, *f.* reason. **avoir —**, to be right.
raisonnable, reasonable, sensible.
ramage, *m.* warbling.
ramasser, to pick up.
ramener, to bring back.
rang, *m.* rank.
ranger, to range, to arrange.
rapidement, quickly.
rappeler, to remind, to recall.
rare, rare.
rat, *m.* rat.
recevoir, to receive.
recherché, **-e**, sought after.
réciproquement, reciprocally.
réclamer, to claim.
recogner, to draw back.
recommander, to recommend, to order.
recommencer, to begin again.
récompense, *f.* reward.
récompenser, to reward.
reconnaissant, **-e**, grateful.
reconnaître, to recognize.
se recoucher, to go to bed again.
reçu, **-e**, received.
recueillir, to harvest.
reculer, to go back.
redemander, to ask back *or* again.
réduire, to reduce.
réfléchir, to reflect.
réforme, *f.* reform.
refuser, to refuse.
regagner, to get back to.

---

queen, reine, *f.*
question, question, *f.*
quite, tout à fait, tout.

rabbit, lapin, *m.*
railroad, chemin de fer, *m.*
railway-carriage, wagon, *m.*
railway station, gare, *f.*
rain, pluie, *f.*
to rain, pleuvoir.
rainy, pluvieux, **-se**.
rare, rare.
raspberry, framboise, *f.*
rat, rat, *m.*
to read, lire.
read, lu, **-e**.
ready, prêt, prête.
really, vraiment.
reason, raison, *f.*
reasonable, raisonnable.
to receive, recevoir.
received, reçu, **-e**.
reciprocally, réciproquement.
to reckon, compter.
to recommend, conseiller.
red, rouge ; *of hair*, roux, rousse.
to reflect, réfléchir.
to refuse, refuser.

régal, *m.* treat.
regard, *m.* look; (*plur.*), glances, eyes.
regarder, to look at; to concern.
régiment, *m.* regiment.
règle, *f.* rule.
régler, to settle.
régner, to reign.
regretter, to regret.
régulier, **-ère**, regular.
reine, *f.* queen.
réjouir, to rejoice.
relever, to lift up, to push up.
relire, to read again.
reluire, to shine, glitter.
remarquable, remarkable.
remarquer, to notice.
remercier, to thank.
remettre, to put on again; to send.
remords, *m.* remorse.
remplir, to fill, to fulfil.
remporter, to carry back; to win.
remuer, to move.
renard, *m.* fox.
se rencogner, to get into a corner.
rencontrer, to meet.
rendre, to render, to make, to return, to restore, to yield. — **visite**, to pay a visit. **se** —, to surrender one's self.
rendu, **-e**, given back; returned.
renoncer, to renounce.
rentes, *f. pl.* income, property.
rentrer, to enter, to return; to come home again.
répandre, to spread.
repartir, to set off again; to answer.
repas, *m.* meal.
se repentir, to repent.
répéter, to repeat.
réplique, *f.* reply. **sans** —, without replying, at once.
répondre, to answer.
réponse, *f.* answer.
se reposer, to rest one's self.
reprendre, to resume; to reply.
représentation, *f.* representation, show.
réprimer, to repress, to curb.
reprocher, to reproach.

---

to regret, regretter.
regular, régulier, régulière.
to reign, régner.
to relate, raconter.
relative, parent, *m.*
to remain, rester.
remained, resté, **-e**.
remarkable, remarquable.
remedy, remède, *m.*
to remember, se souvenir (de).
remembrance, souvenir, *m.*
to remind, rappeler.
to remit, remettre.
to renounce, renoncer (à).
to repeat, répéter.
reply, réponse, *f.*
to reply, répondre.
report, bruit, *m.*
representation, représentation, *f.*
to reproach for, reprocher à.
to resign, se démettre.

république, *f.* republic.
respect, *m.* respect. **manquer de —**, to be disrespectful.
respectueusement, respectfully.
ressemblant, **-e**, a good likeness.
ressembler, to resemble.
ressortir, to go out again.
reste, *m.* remainder. **du —**, however, after all.
resté, **-e**, remained, stayed.
rester, to remain, to stay.
résulter, to follow.
rétabli, **-e**, recovered.
se rétablir, to be restored to health.
retenir, to engage, to keep.
retentir, to resound.
retirer, to withdraw, draw back.
retour, *m.* return. **de —**, returned, back again.
retourner, to return, to go back.
retrouver, to find, to find again.
réussir, to succeed, to be successful.
réveiller, to awaken.
revenant, *m.* ghost.
revenir, to come back.
revenu, **-e**, come back, returned.
revoir, to see again.
le Rhin, the Rhine.
rhume, *m.* cold.
ri, laughed.
riant, **-e**, laughing.
riche, rich.
richement, richly.
rien, nothing.
rire, *m.* laughter.
rire (*v.*), to laugh.
rive, *f.* bank, shore.
rivière, *f.* river.
robe, *f.* dress, robe.
roi, *m.* king.
rôle, *m.* character, part.
roman, *m.* novel, romance.
rompre, to break.

---

resistance, résistance, *f.*.
respect, respect, *m.* **to fail in —**, manquer de respect à.
rest (*remainder*), reste, *m.*
to rest, se reposer.
to resume, reprendre.
to return (*to give back*), rendre; (*to come back*), revenir; (*to go back*), retourner.
returned (*come back*), revenu, -e; (*given back*), rendu, -e.
revolution, révolution, *f.*
reward, récompense, *f.*
to reward, récompenser.
Rhine, le Rhin.
ribbon, ruban, *m.*
rich, riche.
to ride, monter. **— horseback**, monter à cheval. **to go riding**, aller à cheval.
right, droit, -e, juste. **to be —**, avoir raison.
ring, bague, *f.*
to ring, sonner.
ripe, mûr, -e.
to ripen, mûrir.
to rise, se lever.
river, rivière, *f.*; fleuve, *m.*

rond, -**e**, round.
rose, *f.* rose.
rouge, red.
rougir, to blush.
rouler, to roll.
route, *f.* road, way.
roux, **rousse**, red.
royal, -**e**, royal.
royaume, *m.* kingdom.
ruban, *m.* ribbon.
rue, *f.* street.
ruine, *f.* ruin.
ruisseau, *m.* stream.
ruse, *f.* cunning, trick.
la Russie, Russia.

s' *stands for* **se**; *before* **il** *or* **ils**, *for* **si**.
sa, his, her, its.
sable, *m.* sand.
sac, *m.* bag. **sac de nuit**, *m.* travelling-bag.
sacrifier, to sacrifice.
sage, wise, good.
saint, -**e**, holy.
saisir, to seize.
saison, *f.* season.
sale, dirty.
salir, to soil.
salle, *f.* hall, room. — **à manger**, dining-room. — **de classe**, *f.* classroom.
salon, *m.* drawing-room, parlor.
samedi, *m.* Saturday.
sang, *m.* blood.
sanglant, -**e**, bloody.
sans, without, but for.
santé, *f.* health.
sauf, except.
sauvage, wild.
sauver, to save.
savamment, cunningly.
savant, -**e**, learned.
savoir, to know.
savon, *m.* soap.

---

road, route, *f.*; chemin, *m.*
roasted, rôti, -e.
Rome, Rome, *f.*
roof, toit, *m.*
room, chambre, *f.*; salle, *f.*
rose, rose, *f.*
round, rond, -e.
rule, **ruler**, règle, *f.*

to sacrifice, sacrifier.
sad, triste; chagrin, -e.
safely, sans accident.
said, dit.
salad, salade, *f.*
salt, sel, *m.*
same, même.
sand, sable, *m.*
satisfied, content, -e.
Saturday, samedi, *m.*
savage, sauvage, *m.*
Savoy, la Savoie.
scandal, scandale, *m.*
scarcely, à peine, ne . . . guère.
scarf, écharpe, *f.*
scenery, paysage, *m.*
school, école, *f.* **at** —, à l'école. **boarding**-—, pension, *f.*

la Saxe, Saxony.
scandaleux, -se, scandalous.
scélérat, *m.* scoundrel.
scène, *f.* scene, incident.
science, *f.* science.
sculpture, *f.* sculpture.
se, himself, to himself; herself, to herself; one's self, to one's self; themselves, to themselves.
sec, sèche, dry.
sécher, to dry up.
second, -e (*adj.*), second.
seconde, *f.* second (*of time*).
secouer, to shake.
secourir, to assist.
secret, *m.* secret.
secret, secrète (*adj.*), secret, hidden.
secrètement, secretly.
seigneur, *m.* lord.
la Seine, the Seine.
seize, sixteen.
sel, *m.* salt.
selon, according to.
semaine, *f.* week.
semblant, *m.* appearance.
sembler, to appear, to seem. **ce me semble**, it seems to me.
sens, *m.* sense, meaning.
sentier, *m.* path.
sentiment, *m.* feeling.
sentir, to feel; to smell.
séparer, to separate. **se —**, to part.
sept, seven.
septembre, *m.* September.
septième, seventh.
sergent, *m.* sergeant.
sérieux, -se, serious.
serment, *m.* oath.
serpent, *m.* serpent.
serrure, *f.* lock.
service, *m.* service.

---

science, science, *f.*
scissors, ciseaux, *m. pl.*
to scold, gronder.
Scotland, l'Ecosse, *f.*
scoundrel, scélérat, *m.*
sculpture, sculpture, *f.*
sea, mer, *f.*
seashore, at the, au bord de la mer.
season, saison, *f.*
seated, assis, -e.
second, second, -e; deuxième.
second (*of time*), seconde, *f.*
secret, secret, *m.*
secret (*adj.*), secret, secrète.
to see, voir.
see! tenez!
to seek, chercher.
to seem, sembler.
seen, vu, -e.
to seize, saisir.
selfish, égoïste.
to sell, vendre.
to send, envoyer.
sentence, phrase, *f.*
September, septembre, *m.*
seriously, sérieusement.
serpent, serpent, *m.*
servant, bonne, *f.*; domestique, *m. or f.*
to serve, servir.
service, service, *m.*

serviette, *f.* napkin, towel.
servir, to serve. **se — de**, to use.
ses, his, her, its.
seul, **-e**, alone.
seulement, only.
sévère, severe.
sévèrement, severely.
si, if, so; yes. **si fait**, yes, indeed !
siège, *m.* seat; siege.
le sien, les siens, la sienne, les siennes, his, hers, its.
siffler, to whistle.
sifflet, *m.* a whistle.
signe, *m.* sign, signal.
signer, to sign.
sillons, *m. plur.* plains, fields.
simple, simple, foolish.
simplement, simply, merely.
sincère (*adj.*), sincere.
singe, *m.* monkey.
sire, *m.* sire.
sitôt, so soon.
six, six.
sixième, sixth.
sœur, *f.* sister.
soi, one's self, himself, herself.

---

to set out, partir.
seven, sept.
seventeen, dix-sept.
seventh, septième.
seventy, soixante-dix.
several, plusieurs.
severely, sévèrement.
shall. I — buy it, je l'achèterai. **He — do it**, je veux qu'il le fasse. **— I buy some?** faut-il en acheter? **I — come at once**, je vais venir tout de suite.
shame, honte, *f.*
sharp, aigu, **-ë**.
she, elle. **she who**, celle qui.
sheep, mouton, *m.*; brebis, *f.*
to be shipwrecked, faire naufrage.
shoe, soulier, *m.*
shop, magasin, *m.*
to go shopping, faire des emplettes.
shore, bord, *m.*
short, court, **-e**, petit, **-e**.
shoulder, épaule, *f.*
to show, montrer. **— me**, montrez-moi.
shut, fermé, **-e**.
to shut, fermer.
sick, malade.
silent, muet, muette.
silk, soie, *f.*
silver, argent, *m.*
simple, simple.
simply, simplement.
since, depuis; puisque.
sincere, sincère.
to sing, chanter.
sir, monsieur, *m.*
sister, sœur, *f.*
sister-in-law, belle-sœur, *f.*
to sit, s'asseoir.
sitting, assis, **-e**.
situation, place, *f.*
six, six.
sixteen, seize.
sixth, sixième.

soie, *f.* silk.
soif, *f.* thirst. **avoir —**, to be thirsty.
soigner, to nurse.
soir, *m.* evening. **ce —**, this evening, to-night. **hier —**, last evening.
soirée, *f.* evening; evening party.
soixante, sixty.
soixante-dix, seventy.
soldat, *m.* soldier.
soleil, *m.* sun.
somme, *f.* sum.
sommeil, *m.* sleep. **avoir —**, to be sleepy.
son, *m.* sound.
son, sa, ses, his, her, its.
sonder, to probe.
songer, to think.
sonnette, *f.* bell.
sont, are, belong. **sont à**, belong to.
sort, *m.* fate.
sortant, -e, going out, retiring.
sorti, -e, gone out.
sortir, to go out, to issue.
sot, sotte, foolish, stupid.
sou, *m.* cent; sou, *five centimes.*
soudain, suddenly.
souffler, to blow.
souffrir, to suffer; to allow.

---

sixty, soixante.
to skate, patiner.
sky, ciel, *m.*
to slander, calomnier, médire de.
slate, ardoise, *f.*
slave, esclave, *m. or f.*
to sleep, dormir. **to be sleepy**, avoir sommeil.
sleepless night, une nuit blanche.
slept, dormi.
slice, tranche, *f.*
slipper, pantoufle, *f.*
small, petit, -e.
to smell, sentir.
to smoke, fumer.
snake, serpent, *m.*
snow, neige, *f.*
so, si; (*after a transitive verb*), le; (*after an intransitive*), ainsi. **— many, — much**, tant. **— soon**, sitôt. **— long as**, tant que. **— do I**, moi aussi.
soap, savon, *m.*
soft, mou, molle.
to soil, salir.
sold, vendu, -e.
soldier, soldat, *m.*
some, du, de la, de l', des; en; quelque, quelques-uns.
somebody, quelqu'un.
something, quelque chose. **— else**, autre chose.
sometime, quelque temps.
sometimes, quelquefois.
somewhat, un peu, assez.
somewhere, quelque part.
son, fils, *m.*
song, chanson, *f.*
soon, bientôt.
sooner, plus tôt.
sorrowful, chagrin, -e.

souhaiter, to wish; to hope.
soulier, *m.* shoe.
soupçon, *m.* suspicion.
soupe, *f.* soup.
souper (*v.*), to sup.
souper, *m.* supper.
sourd, **-e** (*adj.*), deaf.
sourire, *m.* smile.
sourire (*v.*), to smile.
souris, *f.* mouse.
sous, under, below, beneath.
sous-officier, non-commissioned officer.
soutenir, to bear, to maintain, to uphold.
se souvenir, to remember.
souvenir, *m.* token.
souvent, often.
spectacle, *m.* sight, play.
splendeur, *f.* splendor, brightness.
station, *f.* station.
studieux, **-se**, studious.
stupide, stupid.
subitement, suddenly.
subtilité, *f.* subtlety.
succès, *m.* success.
sucre, *m.* sugar.
sud, *m.* south.
suffire, to suffice.

---

sorry, fâché, triste, chagrin, **-e**.
to be —, être fâché de.
soul, âme, *f.*
soup, soupe, *f.*
south, midi, *m.*, sud, *m.*
Spain, l'Espagne, *f.*
Spanish, espagnol, **-e**.
to speak, parler.
to spend, passer.
in spite of, malgré.
splendid, magnifique, superbe.
spoken, parlé, **-e**.
spoon, cuiller, *f.*
spring, printemps, *m.*
to sprain, démettre.
square (*adj.*), carré, **-e**.
staircase, escalier, *m.*
stake, to be at stake, y aller de.
to stand still, ne pas bouger.
standing, debout.
to start for, partir pour.
station, gare, *f.*
to stay, rester.
stayed, resté, **-e**.
in his stead, à sa place.
steamboat, bateau (*m.*) à vapeur.
steel, acier, *m.*
stick, canne, *f.*
still, encore.
store, magasin, *m.*
stormy, orageux, **-se**.
story, histoire, *f.* (*of a house*), étage, *m.*
stout, gros, grosse.
straight, droit, **-e**.
strange, étrange.
stranger, étranger, *m.*
straw, paille, *f.*
strawberry, fraise, *f.*
stream, ruisseau, *m.*
street, rue, *f.*
strength, force, *f.*
to strike, frapper.
strong, fort, **-e**.
studious, studieux, **-se**.

la Suisse, Switzerland.
suite, *f.* train; what follows. **tout de —**, at once, directly.
suivant, -e, following.
suivre, to follow.
sujet, sujette, subject.
supercherie, *f.* deceit, swindle.
supérieur, -e, superior.
supplier, to implore.
supporter, to support.
supposer, to suppose.
sur, on, upon.
sûr, -e, sure, certain.
surpris, -e, surprised.
sursaut, *m.* start. **en —**, with a start.
surtout, above all.

ta, thy.
table, *f.* table.
tableau, *m.* picture.
tablette, *f.* tablet.
tâcher, to try.
taille, *f.* figure, build.
taire, to say nothing about, to be silent. **se —**, to hold one's tongue, keep quiet.
talent, *m.* talent.
tandis que, while.
tant, so much, so many. **— soit peu**, however little.
tante, *f.* aunt.
tantôt, by and by; sometimes.
tard, -e, late.
tarder à, to be late in, to delay.
tasse, *f.* cup.

---

to study, étudier.
subject, sujet, *m.*
subject (*adj.*), sujet, sujette.
to submit, soumettre.
to succeed, réussir.
such, pareil, -le; tel, telle.
to suffer, souffrir.
suffering, souffrant, -e.
sugar, sucre, *m.*
sum, somme, *f.*
summer, été, *m.*
sun, soleil, *m.*
Sunday, dimanche, *m.*
support, appui, *m.*
to support, appuyer.
to suppose, supposer.
sure, sûr, -e, certain, -e.
to surprise, surprendre.
to surrender, se rendre.
to sweep, balayer.
sweet, doux, douce; parfumé, -e.
Switzerland, la Suisse.
sword, épée, *f.*

table, table, *f.*
tailor, tailleur, *m.*
to take, prendre. **— to**, mener, conduire. **— a walk**, se promener. **— after**, tenir de. **— away**, enlever. **— off**, ôter.
taken, pris, prise.
talent, talent, *m.*
to talk, parler.
talkative, causeur, -euse.
tall, grand, -e.
tea, thé, *m.*
to teach, enseigner (à), apprendre.

te, thee, to thee; thyself, to thyself.
tel, telle, such. **un —**, such a.
tellement, so much so.
témoigner, to show, to express.
tempête, *f.* tempest, storm.
temps, *m.* time; weather. **à —**, in *or* on time. **combien de —**, how long. **de — en —**, now and then.
tendre (*v.*), to hold out, to stretch.
tenez! see here! I say! stop a moment.
tenir, to hold, to keep. **— compte**, to take into consideration.
tenter, to attempt; to tempt.
terme, *m.* term, expression; end.
terminer, to end.
terrain, *m.* soil, ground.
terre, *f.* land, earth; **par —**, on the floor.
terrible, awful; **enfant —**, plague of a child, nuisance.
territoire, *m.* territory.
tes, thy.
tête, *f.* head.
thé, *m.* tea.
théâtre, *m.* scene, theatre.
thème, *m.* exercise.
Thérèse, *f.* Theresa.
le tien, la tienne, les tiens, les tiennes, thine.
tiens! there! I say! indeed!
tiers, *m.* a third.
tigre, *m.* tiger.
timide, timid, modest.
tiré, -e, drawn; shot.
tirer, to draw; to fire. **se tirer**, to get out.
tiroir, *m.* drawer.
toi, thou, thee, to thee. **toi-même**, thyself.

---

teacher, maître, *m.*; maîtresse, *f.*
to tear, déchirer.
to tear out, arracher.
to tell, raconter, dire à.
temper, humeur, *f.*
temple, temple, *m.*
ten, dix.
tender, tendre, délicat, -e.
tenth, dixième.
Thames, the, la Tamise.
than, que; (*before a number*), de.
to thank, remercier. **thank you**, merci. **thanks to**, grâce à.
that (*adj.*), ce, cet, cette. (*demon. pron.*), celui, celle; celui-là, celle-là; cela. (*rel. pron.*), qui (*nom.*), que (*acc.*). (*conj.*), que. **that's all**, voilà tout.
the, le, la, les.
theatre, théâtre, *m.*
thee, te, toi.
theft, vol, *m.*
their, leur, leurs.
theirs, le leur, la leur, les leurs.
them, les; eux, elles. **to —**, leur.
themselves, se; eux-mêmes, elles-mêmes.

toit, *m.* roof.
Tolède, *f.* Toledo.
tombé, **-e**, fallen.
tomber, to fall.
ton, **ta**, **tes**, thy.
ton, *m.* tone.
tonnerre, *m.* thunder.
tort, *m.* wrong. **avoir —**, to be wrong.
tôt, soon, early.
toujours, always, still.
tour, *m.* turn. **faire un —**, to take a turn.
tour, *f.* tower.

---

then (*afterwards*), ensuite, alors, puis; (*therefore*), donc.
there, là, y. **— is, are**, il y a, voilà. **— was, were**, il y avait.
therefore, donc.
these (*adj.*), ces. (*pron.*), ceux-ci, celles-ci.
they, ils, on. **— who**, ceux qui, celles qui.
thick, épais, -se.
thickness, épaisseur, *f.*
thimble, dé, *m.*
thine, le tien, la tienne, les tiens, les tiennes.
thing, chose, *f.*
to think, penser; trouver.
third, troisième. **a —**, un tiers.
thirst, soif. **to be thirsty**, avoir soif.
thirteen, treize.
thirty, trente.
this (*adj.*), ce, cet, cette; (*pron.*), celui-ci, celle-ci; ceci.
those (*adj.*), ces. (*pron.*), ceux, celles; ceux-là, celles-là.
thou, tu, toi.
though, quoique, cependant.
thousand, mille (**mil**, *in dates*).
thousandth, millième.
thread, fil, *m.*
to threaten, menacer.
three, trois.
throat, gorge, *f.*
to throw, jeter.
thumb, pouce, *m.*
thunder, tonnerre, *m.*
Thursday, jeudi, *m.*
thus, ainsi; *at the beginning of a sentence*, aussi.
thy, ton, ta, tes.
thyself, te, toi-même.
tiger, tigre, *m.*
till, jusqu'à; (*conj.*), jusqu'à ce que (*with subj.*).
time, temps, *m.*; fois, *f.* **a long —**, longtemps. **by this —**, maintenant. **from — to —**, de temps en temps.
in time, à temps.
tin, fer-blanc, *m.*
tipsy, gris, grise.
tired, las, lasse; **fatigué**, **-e**; (*bored*), ennuyé, -e.
to, à, jusqu'à.
to-day, aujourd'hui.
together, ensemble.
told, dit, dite, raconté, **-e**.
to-morrow, demain.
tongue, langue, *f.*

tourment, *m.* torment.
tourmenter, to tease.
tourner, to turn round.
tousser, to cough.
tout, **-e**, **tous**, **toutes**, all, whole, every, everything.
tout (*adv.*), quite. — **à coup**, suddenly. — **à fait**, quite. — **à l'heure**, a little while ago, just now. — **au moins**, at the very least. — **de suite**, at once. — **en**, while. — **juste**, exactly.
traduire, to translate.
tragédie, *f.* tragedy.
tragique, tragic.
trahir, to betray.
trahison, *f.* treason, treachery.
train, *m.* train; style. **être en — de**, to be in the act of.
traîneau, *m.* sledge.
traîner, to drag. **se —**, to creep along, to trudge.
traiter, to treat, to serve. — **de**, to treat as *or* like.
tranche, *f.* slice.
tranquille, easy, calm, tranquil, in peace.
transporter, to carry, to take.
travail, **travaux**, *m.* work.
travaillé, **-e**, worked.
travailler, to work.
à travers, through, across.
traverser, to cross, to go across.
treize, thirteen.
tremblant, **-e**, trembling.
trembler, to shake, to shiver.
trente, thirty.
très, very; very much (*before a past part.*).
tressaillir, to tremble, to start.
tribune, *f.* gallery.
triste, sad, sorry.
trois, three.
troisième, third.
trompé, **-e**, mistaken, deceived.
tromper, to deceive. **se —**, to be mistaken.
trop, too much, too many, too. **de trop**, in the way.

---

to-night, ce soir.
too (*also*), aussi; (*before adj. or adv.*), trop. — **many**, — **much**, trop.
tooth, dent, *f.*
toward, vers.
town, ville, *f.*
toy, joujou, *m.*
trade, métier, *m.*
train, train, *m.*
to transmit, transmettre.
to travel, voyager.
treason, trahison, *f.*
to treat, traiter.
tree, arbre, *m.*
to tremble, trembler.
trembling, tremblant, **-e**.
trial, procès, *m.*
trifle, misère, *f.*; rien, *m.*
to trouble, déranger.
troubled (*adj.*), inquiet, **-ète**.
troublesome, fatigant, **-e**; ennuyeux, **-se**.
true, vrai, **-e**.
trunk, malle, *f.*
to trust, se fier à.

troupeau, *m.* flock.
trousses, *f.*, **à mes —**, at my heels.
trouvé, **-e**, found.
trouver, to find; to think; to like. **se —**, to be; to happen. **— bon**, approve, think fit. **— mauvais**, disapprove.
tu, thou.
tuer, to kill. **se tuer**, to kill one's self *or* each other.
tulipe, *f.* tulip.
tumulte, *m*, uproar.
turbot, *m.* turbot.
turc, **turque**, Turkish.
tuteur, *m.* guardian.

un, **une**, a, an, one. **l'un et l'autre**, both. **l'un l'autre**, each other.
uniforme, *m.* uniform.
univers, *m.* universe.
urgent, **-e**, urgent, pressing.
utile, useful.
utilement, usefully.

vaccine, *f.* vaccination.
vache, *f.* cow.
vague, *f.* wave.
en vain, in vain.
vaincre, to overcome, to conquer.

---

truth, vérité, *f.*
to try, essayer, tâcher de.
Tuesday, mardi, *m.*
tulip, tulipe, *f.*
Turkish, turc, turque.
turn, tour, *m.*
tutor, précepteur, *m.*
twelve, douze.
twenty, vingt.
twice, deux fois.
twin, jumeau, *m.*, jumelle, *f.*
two, deux.

ugly, vilain, -e.
umbrella, parapluie, *m.*
uncle, oncle, *m.*
under, sous.
uneasy, inquiet, inquiète.
unfortunate, malheureux, -se.
unfortunately, malheureusement.
ungrateful, ingrat, -e.
unhappy, malheureux, -se; mécontent, -e.
United States, les États-Unis, *m.*
unjustly, injustement.
unless, à moins que.
until, jusqu'à ce que.
unwell, malade.
upon, sur.
us, **to us**, nous.
use, usage, *m.*
useful, utile.
useless, inutile.
as usual, comme à l'ordinaire.

various, divers, -e, différent, -e.
vegetable, légume, *m.*
very, très, bien. **— much**, beaucoup. **— well!** eh bien!
to vex, fâcher.

vaincu, -e, vanquished, conquered.
vainqueur, *m.* conqueror.
valet, *m.* valet.
valeur, *f.* bravery; value.
valoir, to be worth. — **mieux**, to be better.
se vanter, to extol one's self *or* each other.
vaste, vast.
veiller, to watch; to lie awake.
velours, *m.* velvet.
vendre, to sell. **se —**, to be sold; to fetch (*a price*).
vendredi, *m.* Friday.
vendu, -e, sold.
vengeance, *f.* vengeance.
venir, to come. — **de**, to have just.
vent, *m.* wind.
venu, -e, come.
vérité, *f.* truth.
vermisseau, *m.* little worm.
verre, *m.* glass.
vers (*prep.*), towards.
vers, *m.* verse, line.
vert, -e, green.
vertu, *f.* virtue.
veuve, *f.* widow.
viande, *f.* meat.
victoire, *f.* victory.
victorieux, -se, victorious.
vider, to empty.
vie, *f.* life, living; 'good time.' **de ma vie**, as long as I live.
Vienne, *f.* Vienna.
vieux, vieil, vieille, old.
vif, vive, lively, quick, keen, alive.
vigne, *f.* vine.
vilain, -e, ugly, bad, wretched.
village, *m.* village.
ville, *f.* town, city.
vin, *m.* wine.
vingt, twenty.
vingtième, twentieth.
violer, to violate.
visage, *m.* face, look.
viser, to aim.
visite, *f.* visit.
visité, -e, visited.
visiter, to visit.
vite, quickly, quick.
vivement, sharply, eagerly, keenly.
vivre, to live.
voici, here is, here are.
voilà, there is, there are.
voir, to see.
voisin, *m.*, **voisine**, *f.* neighbor.
voisin, -e (*adj.*), next, near.
voiture, *f.* carriage.
voix, *f.* voice.
voler, to fly; to steal.
volontiers, willingly.
votre, vos, your.

---

victory, victoire, *f.*
Vienna, Vienne, *f.*
village, village, *m.*
to violate, trahir.
virtue, vertu, *f.*
visit, visite, *f.* **to pay a —**, rendre visite.
to visit, visiter, aller chez.
voice, voix, *f.*
voyage, voyage, *m.*

le vôtre, la —, les vôtres, yours.
voulez-vous, will you have? do you wish?
vouloir, to like, to wish, to will. — **bien,** to consent, to permit. **en — à,** to have a grudge against. — **dire,** to mean.
vous, you, to you; yourself, to yourself; yourselves, to yourselves. **vous-même,** yourself.
voyage, *m.* voyage, journey.
voyager, to travel.
voyageur, *m.* traveller.
vrai, -e, true. **c'est —,** it is true.
vraiment, truly, really.
vu, -e, seen.
vue, *f.* sight.

wagon, *m.* railway carriage.
whist, *m.* whist.

---

to wait for, attendre.
walk, promenade, *f.* **to take a —,** se promener. **to go out for a —,** aller faire une promenade.
to walk, aller à pied. — **lame,** boiter.
want, besoin, *m.* **to be in —,** avoir besoin; falloir. **to —,** vouloir.
war, guerre, *f.*
warm, chaud, -e. **to be —,** avoir chaud.
to wash, laver.
to waste, perdre.
watch, montre, *f.*
to watch, regarder.
water, eau, *f.*
to water, arroser.
way, chemin, *m.*
we, nous; on.
to wear, porter.
weather, temps, *m.* **in this cold —,** par le froid qu'il fait.
Wednesday, mercredi, *m.*
week, semaine, *f.*
to weep, pleurer.
to welcome, accueillir.
well, bien. **to be —,** se porter bien.
what, quel, quelle; quels, quelles; ce qui, ce que.
whatever, quelconque (*after the noun*).
when, quand, lorsque; (*interr.*), quand.
where, où.
which, *rel. pron.* (*nom.*) qui, (*acc.*) que; (*interr. pron. after prep. or followed by* of), lequel, laquelle; lesquels, lesquelles. **from —, of —,** duquel, de laquelle; desquels, desquelles; dont. **to —,** auquel, à laquelle; auxquels, auxquelles. (*interr. adj.*), quel.
while, en (*with pres. part.*), pendant que, tandis que.
whist, whist, *m.*
to whistle, siffler.
whistle, siffler, *m.*

y, there; to it, to them; to him, to her; in it, in them.
yeux, *m.* (*plur. of* **œil**), eyes.
zéro, *m.* zero, nought.

white, blanc, blanche.
who, qui.
whoever, qui que.
whole, tout, -e; tous, toutes.
whom, que; (*after prep.*), qui.
why? pourquoi?
why! mais!
wicked, méchant, -e.
wide, large.
width, largeur, *f.*
wife, femme, *f.*
wild, féroce, sauvage.
William, Guillaume, *m.*
to be willing, vouloir (bien).
willingly, volontiers.
will you have? voulez-vous?
to win, gagner; remporter.
wind, vent, *m.*
window, fenêtre, *f.*
wine, vin, *m.*
winter, hiver, *m.*
wise, sage.
to wish, désirer, souhaiter, vouloir.
with, avec.
without, sans.
wolf, loup, *m.*
woman, femme, *f.*
wonderful, merveilleux, -se.
wood, bois, *m.*
wooden, de bois.
wool, laine, *f.*
word, mot, *m.* **in a —**, en un mot.
work, ouvrage, *m.*; travail, *m.*
to work, travailler.
workman, ouvrier.
world, monde, *m.*
worse, plus mauvais, pire.
to be worth, valoir.
worthy, digne.
to wound one's self *or* **each other**, se blesser.
wrist, poignet, *m.*
to write, écrire.
writer, écrivain.
written, écrit, -e.
to be wrong, avoir tort.
wrought, travaillé, -e.

yard, cour, *f.*
year, an, *m.*; année, *f.* **last —**, l'année dernière, *f.*
yellow, jaune.
yes, oui; si.
yesterday, hier.
yet (*again, still*), encore; (*however*), pourtant.
you, vous; on.
young, jeune. **— lady**, jeune fille, demoiselle, *f.*
your, votre, vos. **yours**, le vôtre, la vôtre, les vôtres.
yourself, vous, vous-même.
yourselves, vous, vous-mêmes.
youth, jeunesse, *f.*

zero, zéro, *m.*

INDEX.

Numbers refer to pages.

à, contraction with definite article, 35; repetition, 32; denoting use, 264; other uses, 268; with the infinitive after certain verbs, 225.
accents, 1, 2.
acquérir, conjugation, 334.
active voice, 330.
adjectives, agreement in gender, 24; in number, 29; qualifying two or more nouns, 30; formation of feminine, 24, 125–129; of plural, 29, 67; comparison, 41, 94, 253; demonstrative, 43, 44, 46; numeral, 48, 51; possessive, 27, 28; interrogative, 107; indefinite, 248; position, 47, 87, 92, 134, 251; list of those which change their meaning with their position, 351; verbal, 230.
adverbs, formation, 252, 353; comparison, 253; position, 130, 253; of quantity, 76.
age, ways of expressing, 114.
ago, 54, 109.
aller, conjugation, 110; idiomatic uses, 153, 220, 237.
s'en aller, conjugation, 237.
alphabet, 1.
année, contrasted with *an*, 235.
another, how expressed, 58, note.
any, before a noun, 80; exceptional uses of, 85, 87; without a noun, 80.
apercevoir and s'apercevoir, 152.
apostrophe, use, 2.
article, definite: contraction with *à*, 35; with *de*, 37; before proper names, 166, 167; before nouns of weight, measure, or number, 170; in general statement, 71, 166; omission, 166, 167; repetition, 32; used as possessive adjectives, 134, 169; with titles, etc., 170; with adjectives used as nouns, 170; partitive article, 80, 85, 87, 171; indefinite, 21, 171.
as, in a comparison, 58.
assaillir, conjugation, 334.
s'asseoir, conjugation, 254.
as soon as, with the future, 104.
aussi, in comparisons, 94.
aussitôt que, with future, 104.
autre and encore, 58.
auxiliary verbs, conjugation, 308–319.
avant, distinguished from *devant*, 56.
avoir, conjugation in full, 308; idiomatic use, 133, 134.

battre, conjugation, 244.
better, translation, adjective, 41; adverb, 117, 253.
bien, followed by *des*, 76; position, 130, 253; comparison, 117.
boire, conjugation, 270.
bon, different meanings, 351; comparison, 94.
bouger, without *pas* or *point*, 256.
brave, different meanings, 351.

Numbers refer to pages.

capital letters, use of, 15, 16; with days and months, 53.
cardinal, *see* **numbers**.
ce, cet, cette, ces, 43.
ceci, cela, 47.
cedilla, 2.
celui, celle, ceux, celles, 45, 46.
cent, use of, 49.
-cer, verbs ending in, 184.
certain, different meanings, 351.
cesser, used without *pas*, 256.
c'est and ce sont, 96, 97, 122.
chez, 56.
-ci, 46.
cinq, pronunciation, 33.
collective nouns, with singular or plural verb, 234.
college examinations, selected sentences, 279.
color, adjectives of, 47.
commun, different meanings, 351.
comparison of adjectives, 41, 94; of adverbs, 253.
compound tenses, 157.
conditional, formation and use, 136, 137; after *si*, 215.
conduire, conjugation, 244.
conjugation, 59; first, 60; second, 69; third, 74; fourth, 82; peculiarities in first, 180–185; table of formation of tenses, 242; table of terminations, 320; of regular verbs in full, 322–329; of irregular verbs, 334–347.
conjunctions, used with the subjunctive, 204; may be changed to a preposition to avoid the use of the subjunctive, 228.
conjunctive pronouns, 143.
connaître, conjugation, 202; distinguished from *savoir*, 207.
consonants, 7.
countries, names of, with or without the article, 166, 167.
courir, conjugation, 229.
craindre, conjugation, 200; with or without *ne* before the subjunctive, 200.
de crainte que requires *ne* with the subjunctive, 205.
croire, conjugation, 195, 336; when used with subjunctive, 194.
croître, conjugation, 336.
cueillir, conjugation, 336.

dans, with names of places, 167; in expressions of time, 269.
dates, 52, 108.
davantage, when to be used, 212.
days of the week, 53.
de, repetition, 32; contraction with definite article, 35, 37; after words of quantity, 72, 76; for some or any, 80, 85, 87, 171; after partitive expressions, 171; after *plus* in comparisons, 94; with the infinitive after certain verbs, 222; meaning "by," 260; meaning "with," 261; other uses, 261.
definite article, *see* **article**.
demi, agreement, 52, 109 (*e*).
demonstrative adjectives, 43, 44, 46; pronouns, 45, 46, 47.
depuis, meaning, 174; distinguished from *pendant*, *pour*, and *dès*, 269.
dernier, after the noun, 53; different meanings, 351.
dès, meaning, 269.
dès que, with future, 104.
devant, distinguished from *avant*, 56.
devoir, conjugation, 75; translation, 238.
diæresis, 2.
dimensions, 114.
diphthongs, 5.
dire, conjugation, 116.
disjunctive pronouns, 56, 96, 142.
dix, pronunciation, 33.

Numbers refer to pages.

do, as an auxiliary, 31.
dont, use, 120.
dormir, conjugation, 243.
du, contraction of *de* and *le*, 37.
dû, past participle of *devoir*, 75.

écrire, conjugation of, 226.
elision, 2.
empêcher, used with or without *ne*, 200.
en (pronoun), meaning and position, 78, 80, 160, 163.
en (preposition), use with names of places, 166; with present participle, 231; in expressions of time, 269.
encore and **autre**, 58.
envoyer, future and conditional, 185.
et, used with numerals, 48.
être, present indicative, 24, 25, 29, 30; conjugation in full, 314; auxiliary use, 54, 158.
exercises for review, 272.
expressions for class room use, 17–19.

faire, conjugation, 112; idiomatic uses, 112, 239; meaning "to get" or "to have done," 238.
falloir, conjugation, 212; used in the sense of "must," 188, 228; in the sense of "need," 228.
faux, different meanings, 351.
fear, verbs expressing, followed by the subjunctive, with or without *ne*, 200.
feminine, of adjectives, 24, 125, 128; of nouns, 305.
se flatter, conjugation, 332.
formation of tenses, 242.
fractions, 51.
from, before names of places, 167.
fuir, conjugation, 340.
furieux, different meanings, 351.
future tense, formation and conjugation, 102; use, 104, 137; after *quand*, etc., 104; when not to be used after *si*, 137; expressed by *aller* to indicate immediate action, 237.

galant, different meanings, 351.
gender, 21; rule for determining, 299.
gentil, different meanings, 352.
-ger, verbs ending in, 184.
grand, different meanings, 352.

haut, different meanings, 352.
have, when translated by *faire*, 238; by *devoir*, 238; by *venir de*, 226.
her, as adjective, 27; as pronoun, 56, 62, 142, 143.
hers (pronoun), 39.
heure, used to express time, 108.
his, as adjective, 27; as pronoun, 39.
honnête, different meanings, 352.
how, how many, how much, when rendered by *que*, 252.
how long, ways of translating, 174.
huit, pronunciation of, 33; no elision of preceding vowel, 2.
hyphen, 2; in numbers, 48; in verbs, 22.

i final, elision of, 2.
il s'en faut, 257.
il y a, distinguished from *voilà*, 40; ago, 54, 109; duration of time, 257.
imperative, formation, 61; position of personal pronoun with, 62, 144, 146.
imperfect indicative, formation and conjugation, 89; use, 89, 177, 178.
imperfect subjunctive, formation, 210; conjugation, 210; use, 209.

impersonal verbs, used with the subjunctive, 189; with the infinitive, 223.
in, before names of places or countries, 166; after a superlative, 95.
indefinite adjectives, 248.
indefinite article, *see* **article.**
indefinite pronouns, 248.
infinitive mood, 219; compared with the subjunctive, 227; compared with the present participle, 231; used without a preposition, 219, 220; used with the preposition *à*, 225; used with the preposition *de*, 222.
interrogative adjectives, 107.
interrogative adverbs, order after, 140.
interrogative pronouns, 99, 116, 123, 247.
irregular verbs, table of conjugations, 334.
it, as subject, 25, 96, 97; as object, 62, 143, 160.

jamais, 85; with infinitive, 253.
jour, distinguished from *journée*, 235.

know, *savoir* and *connaître* compared, 207.

le, la, les, *see* **article.**
le (pronoun), 62, 143; meaning "so," 148, 149.
lequel, 116, 119.
leur, as adjective, 27; as pronoun, 39, 143.
liaison, 14, 15.
linking of words, *see* **liaison.**
lire, conjugation, 231.
l'on, use, 83, note 2.
lorsque, with future, 104; *lorsque* and *quand*, 104.
lui, after a preposition, 56, 143; after a verb, 144.
luire, conjugation, 244.

malgré, 56.
matin, distinguished from *matinée*, 235.
mauvais, different meanings, 352; comparison, 94.
may, translation, 220.
méchant, different meanings, 352.
mettre, conjugation, 223.
mien, 39.
mil, 49.
mille, use of, 49.
moi, use, 143.
à moins que, with the subjunctive, 205.
mon, before a feminine beginning with a vowel or *h* mute, 28.
monsieur, madame, mademoiselle, as mark of respect, 141, 258.
months, names of, 53.
more, translation, 41, 212.
mortel, different meanings, 352.
mourir, conjugation, 229.
mouvoir, conjugation, 342.
multiplication tables, 50.
must, implying supposition, 238; meaning necessity or obligation, 228, meaning "must have," 228.

naître, conjugation, 244.
names of places, with or without the article, 166, 167.
nasal vowels, 6.
ne, 26, without *pas* or *point*, 256; with *ni . . . ni*, 86; *ne . . . que*, 85, 258; after verbs of fearing or preventing, 200.
negation, 256; *see* **ne.**
neither, 86.
neuf, pronunciation, 33; distinguished from *nouveau*, 129.
ni . . . ni, 86.
not, *see* **ne.**
notre, 27.

Numbers refer to pages.

nôtre, 39.
nouns, collective, 234; formation of plural, 26, 67; plural of compound nouns, 304; gender of, 299; nouns of quantity, 72; of material, 74; used in a general sense, 71, 166.
nouveau, distinguished from *neuf*, 129.
nuire, conjugation, 244.
numbers, cardinal, 48; formation of ordinal, 34, 51; with *et*, 48; with a hyphen, 48.

obéir, object, 71.
offrir, conjugation, 243.
on, use of, 83, 244; when changed to *l'on*, 83, note 2.
on, omitted in French, 53.
only, translation, 258.
onze, no elision before, 2.
ordinals, *see* **numbers**.
oser, without *pas* or *point*, 256.
où, relative use, 119.
oui and **si**, 258.
ouvrir, conjugation, 243.

participle, past, as adjective, 233; agreement after *être*, 54, 158, 233; agreement after *avoir*, 65, 233; of reflexive verbs, 158.
participle, present, 59, 230; compared with infinitive, 231.
partir, conjugation, 243.
partitive article, 80, 85, 87.
pas, omission, 256; precedes the infinitive, 253.
passive form, translation, 244; conjugation, 330.
past anterior, conjugation, 178, 243; use, 178.
past definite, 177; use, 178.
past indefinite, exercises on, 31; distinguished from past definite, 177.
past participle, *see* **participle**.
pauvre, different meanings, 352.
pendant, distinguished from *depuis* and *pour*, 174, 269.
personal pronouns, *see* **pronouns**.
personne, position, 131; in partitive sense, with *de*, 248.
petit, different meanings, 352; comparison, 94.
peu s'en faut, 257.
peur (*avoir*), followed by the subjunctive with or without *ne*, 200; *de peur que*, 205.
piece, *morceau*, and *pièce*, 73.
places, names of, with or without the article, 166, 167.
plaindre, conjugation, 243.
plaire, conjugation, 244.
plaisant, different meanings, 353.
pleuvoir, conjugation, 212.
plupart (*la*), with plural verb, 234; followed by *des*, 72.
pluperfect indicative, 157; subjunctive, 215.
plural: nouns, 26, 67; compound nouns, 304; adjectives, 29, 67; article, 26.
plus with infinitive, 253.
possessive adjectives, 27; repetition of, 32.
possessive case, 29.
possessive pronouns, 39.
pour, distinguished from *depuis* and *pendant*, 269; with the infinitive, 220.
pouvoir, conjugation, 220; without *pas*, 256; distinguished from *savoir*, 237.
premier, with names of rulers and with dates, 52.
prendre, conjugation, 243.
prendre garde, followed by the subjunctive with or without *ne*, 200.
prepositions, *à*, *de*, *depuis*, *dès*, *en*, *dans*, *pour*, etc., 260–269.

près de, 56.
present indicative, first conjugation, 60; second conjugation, 69; third conjugation, 74; fourth conjugation, 82; use, 59, 174.
present participle, *see* **participle.**
present subjunctive, formation, 191; use, 188–217.
preterite, *see* **past definite.**
primitive tenses, 242.
pronominal verbs, 151, 155; conjugation, 151, 331; used with *être* in compound tenses, 158; used instead of English passive, 244.
pronoun, conjunctive, 143; demonstrative, 45, 46, 47; disjunctive, 56, 96, 142; indefinite, 248; interrogative, 99, 116, 123, 247; personal, 142–165; possessive, 39; relative, 42, 99, 119, 120, 122, 247.
pronunciation, 3–12; syllables, 12; words for practice, 12–14; linking of words, 14, 15.
propre, different meanings, 353.
punctuation, 16.

quand, with the future, 104; *quand* and *lorsque*, 104.
que, elision of *e*, 41, 42; cannot be omitted, 42; used to avoid the repetition of other conjunctions, 217; with the subjunctive, 217; used for "how!," "how much!," 252; used for "why!," 257.
quel, 107.
question, form of, 22; first singular, 60; noun subject, 25.
qui, does not admit elision, 42. *See* **pronoun**, interrogative and relative.
quoique, with the subjunctive, 204.

reciprocal verbs, conjugation, 332; definition, 155.
reflexive verbs, conjugation and definition, 151, 331.
relative pronoun, 42, 99, 119, 120, 247.
review exercises, 272.
rien, position of, 131; in partitive sense with *de*, 248.
rire, conjugation of, 232.

savoir, conjugation, 115; used negatively without *pas*, 256; subjunctive of softened assertion, 215; distinguished from *pouvoir*, 237; distinguished from *connaître*, 207.
se, 143, 158.
seasons, 112.
sentir, conjugation, 243.
sept, pronunciation of, 33.
seul, different meanings, 353; with the subjunctive, 202.
si (*so*), 42; in comparisons, 94; meaning "yes," 258.
si, conjunction, 137, 204; elision of *i*, 137.
sien, 39.
six, pronunciation of, 33.
so, translation, 42.
soi, 249.
soir, distinguished from *soirée*, 235.
some, before a noun, 80; exceptional uses, 85, 87; without a noun, 80.
son, before a feminine beginning with a vowel or *h* mute, 28.
subject, repeated when of different persons, 140; in interrogative sentences, 25.
subjunctive mood, 188; formation and conjugation of the present, 191; after impersonal verbs, 189; after negative or interrogative verbs, 194; after verbs

of emotion, 197; in adjective clauses and after superlatives, 202; after certain conjunctions, 204; compared with the indicative, 188; compared with the infinitive, 227; formation and conjugation of the imperfect, 210; sequence of tenses, 209; subjunctive in independent clauses, 214; used for imperative, 215; pluperfect as a past conditional, 215.
suivre, conjugation, 242.
superlative, formation, 94; with *c'est* or *ce sont*, 96; when placed after its noun requires the article to be repeated, 94; with the subjunctive, 202.
syllables, division of, 12.

t, euphonic, 22.
tenir, conjugation, 217.
tenses, primitive, 242; derivation, 242; compound, 157.
than, 41; when translated by *de*, 94; by *que . . . ne*, 254; or by *que de*, 220.
that, relative pronoun, 42; demonstrative adjective, 43; demonstrative pronoun, 45, 47; conjunction, 217; must always be expressed, 42.
them, 56, 62, 143.
they, 142, 143.
this, demonstrative adjective, 43; demonstrative pronoun, 45, 47.
tien, 39.
time, translation of time of day, 108.
titles of sovereigns, 52.
ton, before a feminine beginning with a vowel or *h* mute, 28.
tout, position, 58, 131; variable as an adverb, 249; used with *en* and present participle, 231.
triste, different meanings, 353.
trouver, meanings, 61, 198.

union of words, 14, 15.

vaincre, conjugation, 346.
valoir, conjugation, 346.
venir, conjugation, 217; idiomatic use of, 226.
verbal adjectives, 230.
verbs, conjugation: auxiliary, 308; irregular, 334; reciprocal, 332; reflexive, 331; regular, 320.
vêtir, conjugation, 346.
vilain, different meanings, 353.
vingt, final *t*, 49.
vivre, conjugation, 244.
voilà, distinguished from *il y a*, 40.
voir, conjugation, 120.
votre, 27.
vôtre, 39.
vouloir, conjugation, 197; with *bien*, 198.
vous, use, 22; agreement of adjective and past participle, 26.
vowels, simple, 3; compound, 5; nasal, 6.

we, used indefinitely, 83.
weather, ways of expressing, 112, 239.
week, days of the, 53.
what, adjective, 107; interrogative pronoun, 123, 247; relative pronoun, 122.
which, adjective, 107; interrogative pronoun, 116; relative pronoun, 42, 247.
who, relative pronoun, 42, 99, 247; interrogative pronoun, 99, 247.
whom, 42, 99, 247.
whose, interrogative, 100; relative, 120.

y, meaning, 160; position, 161, 163
-yer, verbs ending in, 184.

First French Course

By C. A. CHARDENAL. 16mo, cloth, 274 pages. Price, 60 cents.

Second French Course

French Syntax and Reader, by C. A. CHARDENAL. 16mo, cloth, 250 pages. Price, 60 cents.

French Exercises for Advanced Pupils

By C. A. CHARDENAL. Revised by the late Professor DELPHINE DUVAL, of Smith College. 16mo, cloth, 258 pages. Price, 90 cents.

THIS revision of Chardenal's French Exercises contains all the essential rules of French Syntax, in clear, concise form, and a valuable list of idiomatic verbs and phrases, in which English idioms are rendered by the corresponding French idioms.

Readings from French History

Edited by Professor O. B. SUPER, Dickinson College, Carlisle, Pa. 16mo, cloth, 324 pages. Price, $1.00.

THE choice of the selections has been determined by their suitableness to the reading ability of pupils in high schools and colleges. In order that the selections may be interesting, complete episodes have, so far as possible, been given. The extracts will furnish the student a good idea of the style and manner of the best French historians. With but one exception the selections are arranged in chronological order.

The selections are as follows: —

Thierry, Conquête de l'Angleterre.
Barante, Jeanne Darc.
Louis Blanc, Situation du Peuple avant la Révolution.
Michelet, Prise de la Bastille.
Lamartine, Discours de Vergniaud.
Mignet, Chute de Robespierre.
Lanfrey, Le Décret de Berlin et l'Entrevue de Tilsit.
Ségur, Napoléon à Moscou.
Thiers, Napoléon à Sainte-Hélène.
Guizot, Histoire de la Civilisation en Europe.

Preparatory French Reader

With Notes and Vocabulary. By the late GEORGE W. ROLLINS, of the Public Latin School, Boston. 16mo, cloth, 314 pages. Price, 90 cents.

THIS reader is intended to follow the selections ordinarily found in the beginning book. It includes stories by Ortoli, Laboulaye, Jules Lemaitre, Julie Lavergne, and others, and among the poems are selections from La Fontaine, Victor Hugo, Béranger, Casimir Delavigne, and Théophile Gautier. The historical pieces, with Napoleon, Louis XVI, and Marie Antoinette as dominant figures, will interest young pupils in a fascinating period of French History. They are *La Retraite de Moscou* by Marbot, *Le Mort de Louis XVI* by Duruy, *Les Premiers Jours du Règne de Louis XVI* and *L'Échafaud* by Imbert de St. Amand. The Drama is represented by *Le Voyage de M. Perrichon*.

The reader contains a table of the irregular verbs.

The Ça Ira Series of French Plays

Edited by Professor B. W. WELLS. 6 volumes, 16mo, cloth. Each, 36 cents.

THIS series contains plays adapted to advanced classes in high schools and to college students. The introductions give brief biographies of the authors and helpful comment on their work. The notes explain peculiarities of idiom, allusions to social and political customs, to literature, and to history. The books are particularly convenient in form and excellent in typography and binding. The series contains the following plays: —

Moi, par Labiche et Martin.
Gringoire, par Théodore de Banville, et **L'Été de la Saint-Martin**, par Meilhac et Halévy.
La Question d'Argent, par Alexandre Dumas, *fils*.
La Camaraderie, par Eugène Scribe.
Le Luthier de Crémone, et **Le Trésor**, par François Coppée.
Le Fils de Giboyer, par Emile Augier.

A German Reader for Beginners

With Notes and Vocabulary. By Professor H. C. G. BRANDT, Hamilton College, Clinton, N.Y. 12mo, cloth, 420 pages. Price, $1.25.

THIS book is intended for high school pupils toward the end of the first or at the beginning of the second year of German. It contains in the following order: —

Selections from Greek Mythology,	Selections from German Mythology,
Folk Stories,	Songs and Ballads,
Short Poems,	A Short Play,
Mediæval Tales,	Historical Prose.

The advantage of a reader like Brandt's is that it familiarizes the pupil with prose and poetry of various sorts, and is so well graded as to facilitate progress to the reading of difficult German.

In the vocabulary and in the first sections of the text, special attention has been drawn to the accent, a subject too generally neglected in the instruction of beginners, and cognate words in the vocabulary have been indicated by distinctive type.

The notes treat briefly of each author and his works.

A Grammar of the German Language

Designed for advanced students. By Professor H. C. G. BRANDT, Hamilton College, Clinton, N.Y. Seventh Edition, with an Appendix, containing Full Inflections, and a List of Strong and Irregular Verbs. 12mo, half leather, 321 pages. Price, $1.25.

THIS book furnishes a rigidly scientific treatment of German Grammar and is therefore designed for mature students.

A First Book in German

By Professor H. C. G. BRANDT. 12mo, cloth, 269 pages. Price, $1.00.

LIKE the author's German Grammar, the First Book approaches the subject from the scientific side and is best suited to mature students.

A German Grammar for Beginners

By PAUL V. BACON. Revised and entirely rewritten from Lange's German Method for Beginners. 12mo, cloth, 422 pages. Price, $1.25.

THIS is a beginning book which introduces easy reading from the first, along with the usual drill in grammar. The object is to stimulate interest, to economize vocabulary, and to give unity to the first year work.

Distinguishing features of the Grammar are: —

I. Complete stories, full of interest, connected with the grammatical exercises and using the same words. The first is about the school, the second about the home, and so many cognates are used that reading may be begun as soon as the alphabet is learned. There are 105 pages of this reading matter, including poems from Goethe, Heine, and Uhland. The stories are simple and delightful and make use of every-day words. They will attract the young pupil and enliven the grammar drill. The correlation of stories and grammar makes possible a small working vocabulary.

II. Systematic drill on grammar, each topic being treated in a group of five lessons. The language of the rules is especially simple.

III. Every fifth lesson is a review, and in addition three complete lessons are devoted to a review of the first half of the book and seven to the whole book. These reviews are twenty-three in number.

IV. Attractive material for memorizing. Each lesson begins with a proverb, idiom, or short poem, to be committed to memory. These include selections from Goethe, Schiller, Heine, Rückert, Scheffel, Müller, and many others.

V. Practical Exercises, consisting of German sentences illustrating the principles of grammar, followed by English sentences to be put into German. There are also conversational exercises based on the stories.

VI. Exercises in writing connected German prose, beginning with the fifteenth lesson.

Im Vaterland: A Reader for Pupils in their First or Second Year of German

By PAUL V. BACON. 12mo, cloth, 430 pages. Price $1.25.

"TO give the American student a better understanding and appreciation of Germany and the Germans; to furnish him with an adequate vocabulary of colloquial idioms; to point out and explain differences between German and American customs; in short, to broaden and deepen the American's knowledge and love of the German language, music, poetry, and people; these are the aims of *Im Vaterland*."

Distinctive features of this remarkable book are:

I. Dialogues on thirty-six different subjects (such as the German Empire, The Imperial Family, In School, At a Store, Berlin University, The Army, The Hotel, In a Theatre, At a Station, In a Train, etc.). These give the pupil a knowledge of German customs and prepare him for appreciative and intelligent travel in Germany.

II. Illustrations from photographs of German scenes, buildings, paintings, churches, and castles. Besides forty-nine of these illustrations there are six maps, including a two-page colored map of the German Empire.

III, Songs, with music arranged for high school pupils. There are twenty-seven characteristic German songs from sixteen different composers.

IV. Poems — thirty-six of them — ranging from the thirteenth to the twentieth century, especially adapted for memorizing.

V. Notes on all idioms and grammatical difficulties. They serve also to supplement the text. For example, they contain a complete list of the German States, an outline of a gymnasial course of study, biographies of the authors mentioned in the book, and kindred matters.

VI. Composition exercises on each chapter of the dialogues.

VII. A vocabulary made with unusual care, and including all the idioms used in the book.

VIII. A full, practical index of persons and of topics.

Allyn and Bacon's Series of German Texts

THIS is the most attractive and convenient series of German texts on the market. They contain complete notes and vocabularies, together with exercises for retranslation into German. These exercises are based on the text and afford excellent material for review as well as practice in composition. The prices will seem reasonable when the general excellence is considered. The following volumes are now ready: —

GRIECHISCHE HEROENGESCHICHTEN.

By BARTHOLD GEORG NIEBUHR. Edited by GEORGE E. MERKLEY. 16mo, cloth, 128 pages. Price, 50 cents.

MÄRCHEN.

By JAKOB and WILHELM GRIMM. Edited by GEORGE E. MERKLEY. 16mo, cloth, 140 pages. Price, 50 cents.

L'ARRABBIATA.

By PAUL HEYSE. Edited by PAUL V. BACON. 16mo, cloth, 126 pages. Price, 50 cents.

HÖHER ALS DIE KIRCHE.

By WILHELMINE VON HILLERN. Edited by J. B. E. JONAS, of Brown University, Providence, R.I. 16mo, cloth, 150 pages. Price, 50 cents.

IMMENSEE.

By THEODORE STORM. Edited by E. A. WHITENACK, of the State Normal School, Peru, Neb. 16mo, cloth, 116 pages. Price, 50 cents.

GERMELSHAUSEN.

By FRIEDRICH GERSTÄCKER. Edited by R. A. VON MINCKWITZ, of the De Witt Clinton High School, New York City. 16mo, cloth, 122 pages. Price, 50 cents.

DER NEFFE ALS ONKEL.

By FRIEDRICH VON SCHILLER. Edited by Professor C. F. RADDATZ, of the Baltimore City College. 16mo, cloth, 147 pages. Price, 50 cents.

DIE JOURNALISTEN.

By GUSTAV FREYTAG. Edited by EDWARD MANLEY, of the Englewood High School. 16mo, cloth, 272 pages. Price, 60 cents.

Allyn and Bacon's German Texts — *Continued*

DER ZERBROCHENE KRUG and DAS WIRTSHAUS ZU CRANSAC.

By JOHANN HEINRICH DANIEL ZSCHOKKE. Edited by EDWARD MANLEY, of the Englewood High School, Chicago. 16mo, cloth, 169 pages. Price, 50 cents.

DER SCHWIEGERSOHN.

By RUDOLF BAUMBACH. Edited by W. W. FLORER and E. H. LAUER, of Ann Arbor, Mich. 16mo, cloth, 262 pages. Price, 60 cents.

DAS EDLE BLUT and DER LETZTE.

By ERNST VON WILDENBRUCH. Edited by W. W. FLORER, of Ann Arbor, Mich. 16mo, cloth, 000 pages. Price, 00 cents.

A German Method for Beginners

By FRANZ J. LANGE. 12mo, cloth, 287 pages. Price, $1.00.

THIS is a beginning German book which aims at stimulating interest by giving the pupils easy reading from the very first. The exercises are based on the reading and use the same words. The grammar is designedly brief.

The Student's Manual of Exercises

For translating into German, with Full Vocabulary, Notes, References, and General Suggestions. By Professor A. LODEMAN, Michigan State Normal School, Ypsilanti. 12mo, cloth, 87 pages. Price, 50 cents.

Selections for German Prose Composition

With Notes and a Complete Vocabulary. By Professor HORATIO S. WHITE, Harvard University. 16mo, cloth, 180 pages. Price, 90 cents.

THIS book has been planned for students who have completed about two years of college work, as well as for those who have reached a more advanced stage of study. The selections contain many references to German literature and life.

The New Composition-Rhetoric: Edition of 1911

By Professors F. N. SCOTT, of the University of Michigan, and J. V. DENNEY, of Ohio State University. 12mo, cloth, 480 pages. Price, $1.20.

THIS book embodies the best features of former editions of the Composition-Rhetoric and the Composition-Literature. It is intended for the higher classes in academies and high schools, and is especially suited to follow the authors' Elementary English Composition.

Throughout the work the aim is to keep the student's powers of construction and criticism in proper adjustment. The simple, fundamental principles that underlie both composition and the appreciation of literature are discovered inductively by the study of numerous selections, and are at once applied in the student's practice. A striking feature of the work is its emphasis upon oral composition.

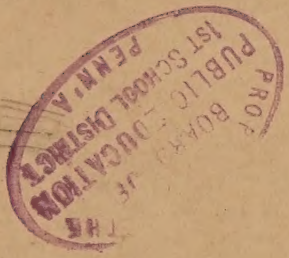
The chapters are: I. Units of Composition. II. How Compositions Grow. III. Paragraphs. IV. Sentences. V. Words. VI. The Forms of Prose Discourse. VII. Description. VIII. Narration. IX. Exposition. X. Argumentation. XI. Poetry. XII. Figures of Speech. Appendices: *A*. Directions for Written Work. *B*. Capitals and Punctuation. *C*. Common Faults with Marks used in Correcting Them.

The topics suggested for themes cover a wide range of interests. They are drawn not only from literature, but from student life and, in particular, from the vocations toward which certain classes of students are naturally tending. Composition is regarded as a social act, and the student is therefore constantly led to think of himself as writing or speaking for a specified group of readers or hearers.

The aim and method of the book are easily stated, but the qualities which make it different from others — its strong and abundant vitality, its wealth of inspiration, its unfailing stimulus to the pupil — are not so readily described; they will be thoroughly understood by teachers who are familiar with any of the work of the authors.

au - oh.

Sew - coudre.
Slowly - lentement.
I do not know - Je ne sais pas.



GEO. G. LOWER,
2342 W. TIOGA STREET,
PHILA., PA.